

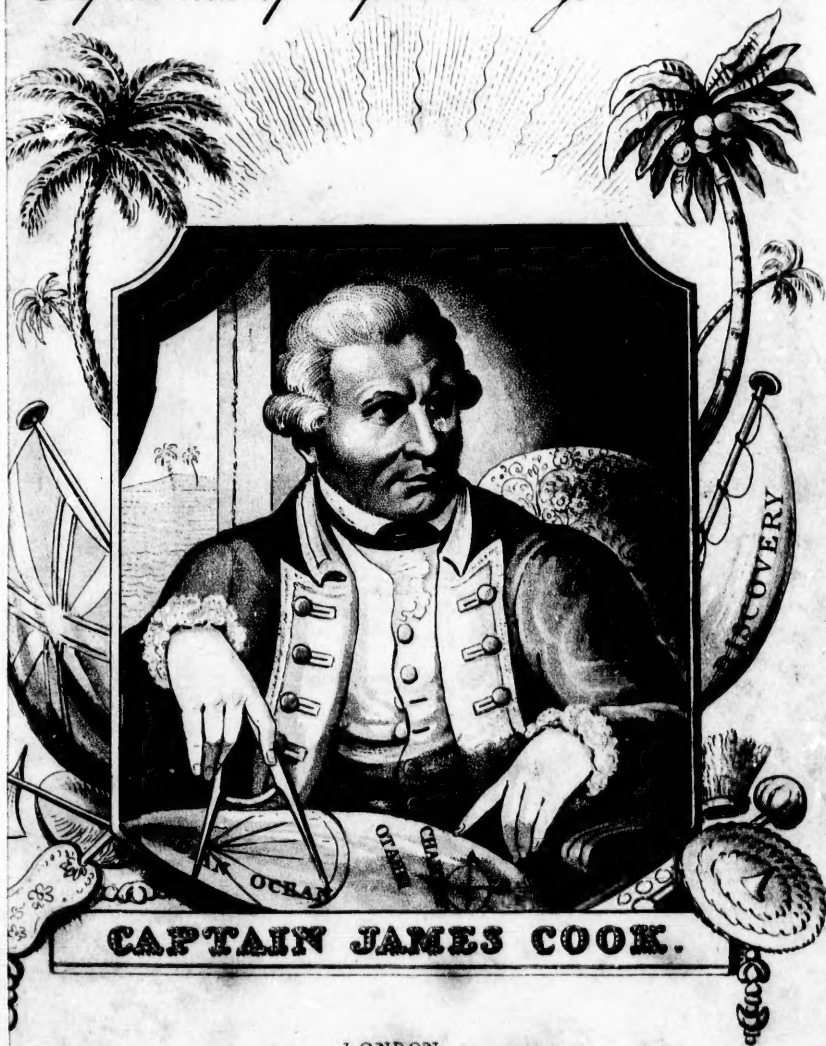
FRONTISPIECE.



*Sir Joseph Banks preventing the Assassination
of Tubourai, Tamaide's Wife.*

CAPTAIN JAMES COOK'S
Voyages
ROUND THE WORLD.

*with Accounts of the
Expeditions of Captains Parry, Franklin, &c.*



LONDON.

Printed & Published by Jacques & Wight, Newington Butts 1824.

THE
VOYAGES
OF
CAPTAIN JAMES COOK

Round the World ;

COMPREHENDING
A HISTORY OF THE SOUTH SEA ISLANDS,
&c. &c.

IN TWO VOLUMES.

VOL. I.

'Tis to the virtues of such men, man owes
His portion in the good, that heav'n bestows.



LONDON :
PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY JAQUES AND WRIGHT,
18, PATERNOSTER ROW.

1825.

NW
970P
C171
1st-3d
Lond.
1825
v.1

VOYAGES

CAPTAIN JAMES COOK

round the world

A HISTORY OF THE SOUTH SEA ISLANDS

IN TWO VOLUMES

VOL. I

LONDON:

PRINTED AND PUBLISHED BY JAMES WRIGHT

1825

A

NARRATIVE

OF

CAPT. COOK'S VOYAGES

ROUND THE WORLD.

VOYAGES may be considered as one of the great sources of useful and interesting knowledge. They offer an ample field for the attention of readers, and afford a rich fund of pleasure to those who delight in spending their leisure hours in rational enjoyments.

Distinguished as this country is for its able navigators, it acquires no inconsiderable accession of fame in the name of Cook, whose voyages we purpose to detail. He was of humble origin, and served as an apprentice to the sea service in the coal trade. Afterwards entering as a volunteer into the navy, he became noticed by Captain (afterwards Sir Hugh) Palliser, in whose ship he served. Captain Cook is allowed to have been one of the ablest circumnavigators this or any other country ever produced. And his death by the savages of Owhyhee, while prosecuting his third voyage round the world, must be universally deplored. His attention to the health of his ship's company, whereby they were preserved from that fatal malady the scurvy, which heretofore used to make such ravages among seamen on long voyages, has been most beneficial to mankind.

The voyage which is the subject of our present narrative, was undertaken by order of King George III. for the improvement of science. It having been calculated that the planet Venns would pass over the sun's disk in 1769, the Royal Society presented a memorial to government, requesting that a vessel might be fitted out to convey proper persons to observe the transit in the other hemisphere. Captain Cook, then a lieutenant in the navy, was selected, and a vessel fitted up with every requisite for barter and for making discoveries in the South Seas.

Mr. Banks, who was afterwards created a baronet, and chosen President of the Royal Society, possessed of an opulent fortune and a friend of science, embarked with Captain Cook, animated by the wish of enlarging the bounds of knowledge. Dr. Solander, a learned Swede, who had studied under Linnæus, and held a situation in the British Museum, also joined the expedition. Mr. Banks also took two draughtsmen with him, and a secretary and four servants at his own individual charge. Several other gentlemen of eminence in different sciences also were appointed; and altogether such an assemblage of talent was embarked in this expedition as gave promise of most salutary consequences.

It was from the knowledge obtained of New Holland by these Voyages that a settlement has since been made for transporting convicts and which now rises into importance as a colony. It was these Voyages also which gave rise to the settlement of Missionaries for the propagation of the glad tidings of the gospel at Otaheite and other islands of the South Seas, and which is now spreading the blessings of civilized life among them.

A vessel of 370 tons, which had been built for the coal trade, was appointed, having on board 10 carriage and 12 swivel guns, with abundance of ammunition. This vessel was well supplied with articles for barter with the savage nations they expected to visit, and all manner of

stores for so long a voyage, and sailed from Deptford the 30th of July 1768.

At Madeira they unfortunately lost Mr. Weir the master's mate, who in heaving the anchor fell overboard and was drowned. At Rio de Janeiro they took in a fresh supply of provisions and all other necessary supplies, and left that place on the 8th of December 1768.

On the 11th they hooked a shark. It proved to be a female. When opened they took six young ones out of it, five of which were alive, and swam briskly in a tub of water, but the sixth appeared to have been dead some time. From this time they met with no material occurrence till the 22nd, when they discovered numerous birds of the prosillaria kind, in latitude 39 deg. 37 min. south, and longitude 49 deg. 16 min. west: they also discovered great numbers of porpoises of a singular species, about 15 feet in length, and of an ash colour. On the 23rd they observed an eclipse of the moon; and about seven o'clock in the morning, a small white cloud appeared in the west, from which a train of fire issued.

On the 3rd of January they saw the appearance of land, which they mistook for Pepy's island and bore away for it, but it was one of those deceptions which sailors call a fog bank. On the 14th they entered the streight of Le Maire, but were driven out again with great violence, the tide being against them: at length however they got anchorage in a small cove, the entrance to which the captain named St. Vincent's Bay. Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks went on shore, returning about nine in the evening, with upwards of an hundred different plants and flowers, which none of the European botanists had taken notice of.

On the 18th they came to an anchor in twelve fathom water, upon coral rocks, before a small cove, at the distance of about a mile from the shore: two of the natives came down upon the beach, as if they expected that the

strangers would land; but as there was no shelter, the ship got under sail again, and the Indians retired. The same afternoon they came to an anchor in the bay of Good Success. The captain went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, to search for a watering place, and confer with the Indians. These gentlemen proceeded above one hundred yards before the captain, when two of the Indians that had seated themselves, rose up, and as a token of unity threw away a small stick which they had in their hands. They afterwards returned to their companions, who had remained at some distance behind, and made signs to their guests to advance, whom they received in a friendly manner. In return for their civility, some ribbands and beads were distributed among them. Thus a confidence was established, and the rest of the English party joined and conversed with them in an amicable manner. Capt. Cook and his friends took three of them to the ship, clothed them and gave them provisions, part of which they carried on shore. They refused to drink rum or brandy, intimating by signs that it burned their throats. None of these people exceeded five feet ten inches in height, but their bodies appeared large and robust, though their limbs were small. They had broad flat faces, high cheeks, noses inclining to flatness, wide nostrils, small black eyes, large mouths, small, but indifferent teeth, and straight black hair, falling down over their ears and foreheads, the latter being generally sheared with brown and red paints, and like all the original natives of America, they were beardless. Their garments were the skins of seals and guanicoes, which wrapped round their shoulders. The men likewise wore on their heads a bunch of yarn, which fell over their foreheads, and was tied behind with the sinews or tendons of some animals. Many of both sexes were painted on different parts of their bodies with red, white, and brown colours, and had also three or four perpendicular lines

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19
20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29
30
31
32
33
34
35
36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43
44
45
46
47
48
49
50
51
52
53
54
55
56
57
58
59
60
61
62
63
64
65
66
67
68
69
70
71
72
73
74
75
76
77
78
79
80
81
82
83
84
85
86
87
88
89
90
91
92
93
94
95
96
97
98
99
100



Engraved by J.F. Read.

Natives of Terra Del Fuogo.

Pub^d by Jacques & Wright, Newington Buttes.

pricked across their cheeks and noses. The women had a small string tied round each ankle, and each wore a flap of skin fastened round the middle. They carried their children upon their backs, and were generally employed in domestic labours and drudgery.

Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Mr. Buchan, and attendants set out with a view of going into the country and returning in the evening. The morning had been very fine, but the weather afterwards became wild and disagreeable: the blast of wind was strong, and the snow fell thick; nevertheless they pursued their route in the hope of finding a better road, so that when they had crossed was swampy. An accident then occurred which greatly disconcerted them: Mr. Banks was struck with a fit, and it was absolutely necessary to stop and kindle a fire, such as were kindled sometimes in haste; but Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and Mr. MacKenzie proceeded, and attained the point they had in view, where they found a great variety of plants that gratified their curiosity and repaid their toil. On returning to the company amidst the snow, which now fell in great abundance, they found Mr. Buchan much recovered. It was now about eight in the evening, and the attendants, knowing from experience that extreme cold when joined with fatigue occasioned a seizure that is not easily resisted, instructed his friends to keep in motion, however disagreeable it might be to them. His words were, "When you sit down will sleep, and whoever sleeps will wake no more." Every one seemed accordingly armed with resolution; but, on a sudden, the cold became so very intense as to throw on the most dreadful effects. It was remarkable, that the doctor himself, who had so forcibly rebuked the weakness of his party, was the first person to succumb to the repetition. In place of the most earnest intreation, he lay down amidst the snow, and it was with difficulty they kept him awake. One of the black servants

became also weary and faint, and was on the point of following his example. Mr. Buchan was therefore detached with a party to make a fire at the first commodious spot they could find. Mr. Banks and four more remained with the doctor and Richmond the black, who with the utmost difficulty were persuaded to come on; but, when they had traversed the greatest part of the swamp, they expressed their inability of going any farther. When the black was told that if he remained there he would soon be frozen to death, his reply was, that he was so exhausted with fatigue, that death would be a relief to him. Dr. Solander said he was not unwilling to go, but that he must first take some sleep, acting contrary to the opinion which he himself had delivered. Thus resolved, they both sat down, supported by some bushes, and in a short time fell asleep. Intelligence now came from the advanced party, that a fire was kindled about a quarter of a mile farther on the way. Mr. Banks then awakened the doctor, who had almost lost the use of his limbs, though it was but a few minutes since he sat down; nevertheless, he consented to go on: but every measure taken to relieve the black proved ineffectual; he remained motionless, and they were obliged to leave him to the care of a sailor and the other black servant, who appeared to be the least hurt by the cold, and they were to be relieved as soon as two others were sufficiently warmed to supply their places. The doctor with much difficulty, was got to the fire. A party who were sent to relieve the companions of Richmond, returned without having been able to find them, and what rendered the mortification still greater was, that a bottle of rum (the whole stock of the party) could not be found, and was judged to have been left with one of the three that were missing.

A fall of snow continuing for near two hours, there now remained no hopes of seeing the three absent persons again. About twelve o'clock, however, a great shouting was heard

at a distance, when Mr. Banks and four others went forth and met the sailor, who had just strength enough left to walk. He was immediately sent to the fire, and they proceeded to seek for the other two. They found Richmond upon his legs, but incapable of moving them; the other black was lying senseless upon the ground. All endeavours to bring them to the fire were fruitless; nor was it possible to kindle one upon the spot on account of the snow that had fallen, and was falling, so that there remained no alternative, and they were compelled to leave the two unfortunate negroes to their fate, after they had made them a bed of the boughs of some trees, and covered them over thick with the same. As all hands had been employed in endeavouring to move these poor blacks to the fire, and had been exposed to the cold for near an hour and a half in the attempt, some of them began to be afflicted in the same manner as those whom they went to relieve. Briscoe, another servant of Mr. Banks, in particular, began to lose his sensibility. At last they reached the fire, and passed the night in a very disagreeable manner.

The party that set out from the ship consisted of twelve; two were already judged to be dead, and it was doubtful whether the third would be able to return on board; Mr. Buchan, a fourth, seemed to be threatened with a return of his fits. The ship they reckoned at a long day's journey, through an unfrequented wood, in which they might probably be bewildered till night, and, having been equipped only for a journey of a few hours, they had not a sufficiency of provisions left to afford the company a single meal.

At daybreak on the 17th nothing presented itself to view but snow, and the blasts of wind were so frequent and violent, that their journey seemed to be impracticable. However, about six in the morning, they had a dawn of hope by discovering the sun, through the clouds, which gradually diminished. Before they set out, messengers were

dispatched to the unhappy negroes; who returned with the melancholy news of their death. A breeze springing up about eight o'clock, added to the influence of the sun, began to clear the air, and hunger prevailing over every other consideration, induced them to set forward on their journey about ten in the morning. To their great astonishment and satisfaction, in about three hours they found themselves on the shore, and much nearer to the ship than their most sanguine expectations could have suggested; and found that instead of ascending the hill in a direct line, they had made a circle almost round the country. On their return, they received such congratulations from those on board, as can more easily be imagined than expressed.

On the 20th Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander again went on shore and collected a number of shells and plants, hitherto unknown. After dinner, they went to visit an Indian town, about two miles up the country, situated on a small hill, over shaded with wood, and consisting of about a dozen huts, constructed without art or regularity, composed of a few poles, inclining to each other in the shape of a sugar-loaf, which were covered on the weather side with grass and boughs, and on the other side a space was left open, which served at once for a fire-place and a door. A little grass served for beds and chairs; their utensils were a basket for the hand, a satchel to hang upon the back, and a bladder of water, out of which they drank through a hole near the top. This town was inhabited by a tribe of about fifty men, women and children. Their bows and arrows were constructed with neatness and ingenuity, being made of wood highly polished, and the point, which was either glass or flint, very skillfully fitted. These latter substances were observed among them unwrought, as also cloth, rings buttons, &c. from whence it was concluded that they sometimes travelled to the northward, as no ship, for years past, had touched at this part of Terra del Fuego. They did not shew any surprise at the sight of fire arms, but appeared to be well

acquainted with their use. They did not appear to have any form of government, or any ideas of subordination; but seemed as the outcasts of men; passing their lives in wandering in a forlorn manner over dreary wastes; their only food was shell-fish, which on any one spot must soon be exhausted; nor had they the rudest implement of art, not even so much as was necessary to dress their food. Reader, be thankful to God that he hath cast your lot in a land where temporal comforts abound—where education is so universal—where the knowledge of himself is so prevalent.

On January the 26th they took their departure from Cape Horn, and the weather being very calm, Mr. Banks sailed in a small boat to shoot birds, when he killed some sheerwaters, and some large albatrosses. The latter proved to be very good food. Notwithstanding the doubling of Cape Horn is represented as a very dangerous course, and it is generally thought that passing through the streight of Magellan is less perilous, yet the Endeavour doubled it with as little danger as she would the North Foreland on the Kentish coast; the heavens were fair, the wind temperate, the weather pleasant, and being near shore, they had a very distinct view of the coast. Mr. Banks killed above sixty Birds in one day; also two forest flies, such as had never yet been described; he also found a cuttle-fish of a species different from those generally known in Europe. This fish had a double row of talons, resembling those of a cat, which it could put forth or withdraw at pleasure. When dressed, it made excellent soup. On the 25th, a young marine, about twenty, threw himself overboard, on account of a quarrel about a piece of seal skin, which he took by way of frolic; but being charged with it as a theft, he took the accusation so much to heart, that in the dusk of the evening he threw himself into the sea, and was drowned.

On the 4th of April, about 10 o'clock, Peter Briscoe, servant to Mr. Banks, discovered land to the south, at the distance of about three or four leagues. Capt. Cook imme-

diately gave orders to sail for it, when they found an island of an oval form, having a lagoon or lake in the centre, that extended over the greater part of it. The surrounding border of the land was low and narrow in many places, especially towards the south, where the beach consisted of a reef of rocks. Three places on the north side had the same appearance, so that in the whole the land seemed to resemble several woody islands. To the west was a large clump of trees, and in the centre two cocoa-nut trees. When within a mile of the north side, no bottom could be found at 180 fathom, nor any good anchorage. Several of the natives were discovered on shore; they appeared to be tall, with heads remarkably large, which probably some bandage might have increased. Their complexion was of the copper colour, and their hair was black. Some of these people were seen abreast of the ship, holding poles or pikes of twice their own height. They appeared also naked, but when they retired, on the ship's passing by the islands, they put on a light coloured covering. Some clumps of palm-trees served them for habitations, which at a distance appeared like hilly grounds, and the view of the groves was a very agreeable one.

On the 5th, they continued their course with a favourable wind, and about three o'clock discovered land to the westward. It was low, in form resembling a bow, and in circumference seemed to be ten or twelve leagues. Its length is about three or four leagues, and its width about two hundred yards. The beach was flat, and seemed to have no other herbage upon it than sea weeds. The resemblance of a bow was preserved in the arch and cord forming the land, while the intermediate space was taken up by water. The arch, in general, was covered with trees of various verdure and different heights. This island, from the smoke that was discovered, appeared to be inhabited, and was named Bow Island.

On the 10th, after a tempestuous night, the Endeavour

came in sight of Osnaburgh Island, called by the natives Maitea. This island is circular, about four miles in circumference, partly rocky, and partly covered with trees.

On the 11th they made Otaheite, or as Capt. Wallis had named it, King George the Third's Island. The calms prevented their approaching it till the morning of the 12th, when a breeze sprung up, and several canoes were seen making towards the ship. Few of them, however, would come near, and those who did could not be persuaded to come on board. They brought with them young plantains and branches of trees, which were handed up the ship's side, and by their desire, were stuck in conspicuous parts of the rigging, as tokens of peace and friendship. After this the crew purchased their commodities, consisting of cocoa-nuts, bananas, bread-fruit, apples and figs, which were very acceptable.

They lay off and on all night, and in the morning of the 13th they entered Port Royal Harbour, in the Island of Otaheite, and anchored within half a mile of the shore. Many of the natives came off immediately in their canoes, and brought with them bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, apples, and some hogs, which they bartered for beads and other trinkets with the ship's company. The tree which bears the bread-fruit is about the size of a horse chesnut: its leaves are near a foot and a half in length, in shape oblong, and very much resembled those of the fig tree. The fruit is not unlike the cantaloupe melon; it is inclosed in a thin skin, and its core is as large as a man's thumb. The substance of this fruit is somewhat like that of new bread, and as white as the blanched almond. It must be roasted, and when eaten it has a sweetish taste.

Amongst those who came on board the Endeavour, was an elderly man, named Owahaw, known to Mr. Gore and others who had visited the island with Capt. Wallis. Owahaw being considered by our gentlemen as a very useful man, they studied to please him, and to gratify all his wishes.

Several necessary rules were now drawn up to be observed by every person on board for the better establishing a regular trade with the natives. The substance of the rules were, "That in order to prevent quarrels and confusion, every one of the ship's crew should endeavour to treat the inhabitants of Otaheite with humanity, and by all fair means to cultivate a friendship with them. That no officer, seaman, or other person, belonging to the ship, excepting such only who were appointed to barter with the natives, should trade, or offer to trade, for any kind of provision, fruit, or other produce of the island, without having express leave so to do. That no person should embezzle, trade, or offer to trade, with any part of the ship's stores : and, that no sort of iron, or any thing made of iron, or any sort of cloth, or other useful articles in the ship, should be given in exchange for any thing but provision." These necessary rules were signed by Capt. Cook, and, being his orders, to the non-observance of them were annexed certain penalties, besides the punishment according to the usual custom of the navy.

When the ship was properly secured, Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went on shore, with a party under arms, and their friend the old Indian. They were received by some hundreds of the natives with awe and reverence, who exchanged the tokens of peace, and offered to conduct them to a spot of ground which would be more convenient for them to occupy, than that where they landed. They now took a circuit of about four miles through groves of the bread-fruit and cocoa-trees. Intermingled with these were the dwellings of the natives, which consisted of huts without walls. In the course of their journey they found but few fowls or hogs, and understood that none of their conductors, nor any of the people they had hitherto seen, were persons of rank in the island. Those of our crew, who had before been at Otaheite in the Dolphin, were likewise of opinion, that the queen's residence had been removed, as no traces of it were now to be discovered.



Sir Joseph Banks, F.R.S.

London Published by Jacques & Wright 13. Pall Mall.

Next day, in the morning, before they could leave the ship, several canoes came about her filled with people, whose dress denoted them to be of the superior class. Two of these came on board, and each fixed upon a friend: one of them chose Mr. Banks, and the other Capt. Cook. The ceremonials consisted of taking off their clothes in great part, and putting them upon their adopted friends. This compliment was returned by the gentlemen presenting them with some trinkets. They then made signs for their new friends to go with them to the place of their abode; and the latter, desirous of being acquainted with the people, and finding out a more convenient harbour, accepted the invitation, and went with them, accompanied by Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Capt. Cook, and others. They landed in two boats at the distance of about three miles, among a great number of the natives, who conducted them to a large habitation, where they were introduced to a middle-aged man, named Tootahah. When they were seated, he presented to Mr. Banks a cock, a hen, and a piece of perfumed cloth, which compliment was returned by a present from Mr. Banks. They were then conducted to several other large dwellings, wherein they walked about with great freedom. Walking afterwards along the shore, they met another chief, named Tubourai Tamaide, with whom they settled a treaty of peace, in the manner before described. The chief gave them to understand, that he had provisions at their service, if they chose to eat, which he produced and they dined heartily upon bread-fruit, plantains, and fish. In the course of this visit, Dr. Solander having missed an opera-glass, complaint was made to the chief, which interrupted the convivial party. This complaint was enforced by Mr. Banks starting up, and striking the butt-end of his musket against the ground, which alarmed the Indians so much, that all of them ran precipitately out of the house, except the chief and a few others of the superior class. The chief observed, with an air of probity, that he would endeavour to recover it, adding, that

if this could not be done, he would make compensation, by giving as much new cloth as should be thought equal to the value. The case however was brought in a little time, and the glass itself soon after. After this adventure was amicably terminated, they returned to the ship about six o'clock in the evening.

On Saturday the 15th, in the morning, several of the chiefs appeared to be much concerned, and came on board, bringing with them hogs, bread-fruit, and other refreshments, for which they received linen, beads, and other trinkets. The Captain, attended by Mr. Banks, and some of the other gentlemen, went on shore to fix on a proper spot to erect a fort for their defence, during their stay, and the ground was marked out for that purpose; a great number of the natives looking on, and behaving in the most peaceable manner.

Mr. Banks and his friends having seen few hogs and poultry in their walks, they suspected that they had been driven up the country; for which reason they determined to penetrate into the woods, the tent being guarded by a petty-officer and a party of marines. On this excursion several of the natives accompanied them. While on their march they were alarmed by the discharge of two pieces fired by the guard of the tent. Owhaw calling together the Captain's party, dispersed all the Indians, except three, who in token of their fidelity broke branches of trees, according to their custom, and whom it was thought proper to retain. When they returned to the tent, they found that an Indian had snatched away one of the centinel's musquets, and a young midshipman, who commanded the party, was so imprudent as to give the marines orders to fire, and many of the natives were wounded; but as the offender had not fallen, they pursued him and shot him dead. Mr. Banks was quite displeased at this conduct; but as what had passed could not be recalled, nothing remained but to endeavour to accommodate matters with the Indians. Accordingly

through the mediation of an old man, several of the natives were prevailed on to come over to them, and to give the usual tokens of friendship. The next morning, however, they saw but a few of the natives on the beach, and none on board, from whence it was concluded that the treatment they had received the former day was not yet forgotten, and the English were confirmed in this opinion by Owhaw's having left them. In consequence of these circumstances, the captain brought the ship nearer to the shore, and moored her in such a manner as to make her broad-side bear on the spot which they had marked out for erecting the fort. In the evening the captain and some of the gentlemen going on shore, the Indians came round them, and trafficked with them as usual.

On the 17th they had the misfortune to lose Mr. Buchan. The same day they received a visit from Tubourai Tamaide and Tootahah, who brought with them some plantain branches, and till these were received, they would not venture on board. The fort began to be erected on the 18th. Some of the company were employed in throwing up intrenchments, whilst others were busied in cutting fascines, and pickets, in which work the Indians assisted them. The natives brought down such quantities of bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts this day, that it was necessary to refuse them, and to let them know that none would be wanting for two days. Mr. Banks slept for the first time on shore this night. None of the Indians attempted to approach his tent; he had however the precaution to place centinels about it, for its defence.

A sort of market was now established without the lines of the fort, which was tolerably well supplied, and Tubourai Tamaide was a frequent guest to Mr. Banks and the other English gentlemen. He was the only native that attempted to use a knife and fork, being fond of adopting European manners. Mr. Monkhouse the surgeon, being abroad on his evening walk, reported that he had seen the

body of the man who had been shot from the tent. It was deposited in a shed, close to the house where he had resided when alive. The body lay on a bier, the frame of which was wood, supported by pillars about five feet high, and covered with a mat, over which lay a white cloth; by its side lay a wooden mace, and towards the head two cocoa-shells; towards the feet was a bunch of green leaves, and small dried boughs tied together, and stuck in the ground, near which was a stone about the size of a cocoa-nut; here were also placed a young plantain tree, and the stem of a palm-tree was stuck up on the outside of it, upon which was placed a cocoa-shell filled with water. At the side of one of the posts there hung a little bag with some roasted pieces of bread-fruit. The natives were not pleased at his approaching the body, their jealousy appearing plainly in their countenances and gestures.

On the 22nd they were entertained by some of the musicians of the country, who performed on an instrument somewhat resembling a german-flute, but the performer blew through his nostril instead of his mouth, and others accompanied this instrument, singing only one tune. Some of the Indians brought their axes to grind and repair, most of which they had obtained from Capt. Wallis and his people in the Dolphin; but a French one occasioned a little speculation, and at length, upon inquiry, it appeared to have been left here by M. de Bougainville.

On the 25th, several knives being missed, Mr. Banks, who lost his among the rest, accused Tubourai Tamaide of having taken it, which, as he was innocent, occasioned him a great deal of unmerited anxiety. He made signs, while the tears started from his eyes, that if he had been guilty of such a theft as was imputed to him, he would suffer his throat to be cut. But though he was innocent, it was plain that the natives in general were very much addicted to thieving, as though Mr. Banks's servant had mislaid the knife in question, yet the rest were produced in a rag, by one of the natives.

On the 26th the guns, which were six swivels, were mounted on the fort, which caused the Indians great trouble, and several of the fishermen removed, fearing, notwithstanding all the marks of friendship that had been shewn to them by our people, they should be fired at from the fort. The next day, Tubourai Tamaide came with three women, and a friend, to dine at the fort, and after dinner returned to his own house. In a short time after he came back to complain of a butcher, who had threatened to cut his wife's throat, because she would not barter a stone hatchet for a nail. It appearing clearly that the offender had infringed one of the rules enjoined by the captain for trading with the natives, he was flogged on board in their sight. When the first stroke had been given, they interfered, and intreated that the culprit might be untied; but when this favour was denied them, they shewed strong signs of concern, and burst into tears.

Mr. Molineux, master of the Endeavour, seeing a woman whose name was Oberea, he declared she was the same person, whom he judged to be the queen of the island, when he was there with Capt. Wallis. The eyes of every one were now fixed on her, of whom so much had been said by the crew of the Dolphin, and in the account given of her by the captain. With regard to her person, she was tall, and rather large made; she was about forty years of age, her skin white, and her eyes had great expression in them; she had been handsome, but her beauty was now upon the decline. An offer was made to conduct her on board the ship, which she accepted. Many presents were made her, particularly a child's doll, which she viewed very attentively. Capt. Cook accompanied her on shore, and when they landed, she presented him with a hog and some plaintains, in return for his presents, which were carried to the fort in procession, Oberea and the captain bringing up the rear. In the way they met Tootahah, who, though not king, seemed to be at this time invested with sovereign authority. He

no sooner saw the doll, than he discovered strong symptoms of jealousy; nor could any method be found of conciliating his friendship, but that of complimenting him with a baby also.

On the 30th, Tomio came in great haste to our tents, and taking Mr. Banks by the arm, told him, that Tubourai Tamaide was dying, owing to somewhat that had been given him by our people, and intreated him instantly to go to him. Accordingly Mr. Banks went, and found the Indian very sick. He had been vomiting, and had thrown up a leaf, which they said contained some of the poison. Mr. Banks having examined the leaf, found it was tobacco, which the Indian had begged of some of the ship's company. He ordered him to drink of cocoa-nut milk, which soon restored him.

On the 1st of May a chief dined with us who had dined on board some time before, accompanied by some of his women who used to feed him. He now came alone; at dinner, the captain helped him to some victuals, supposing that he would have dispensed with the ceremony of being fed; but the chief never attempted to eat, and would have gone without his dinner, if one of the servants had not fed him. They took the astronomical quadrant and other instruments on shore that afternoon; and when they wanted to make use of the quadrant the next day, it was missing, a matter the more extraordinary, as a centinel had been placed the whole night within a few yards of the place where it was deposited, and the instrument had never been taken out of the case. A strict search was made in and about the fort, and a considerable reward offered in order to obtain it again; but all proving fruitless, Mr. Banks, accompanied by Mr. Green and some other gentlemen, set out for the woods, where they thought they might probably get some tidings of what was stolen. In their way, they met with Tubourai Tamaide and some of the natives, who was made to understand that they had lost the quadrant, and that as some of his country-

men must have taken it, they insisted upon being shewn the place where it was concealed. After some inquiry, the instrument was recovered, and it was found that it had received no real injury, though it had been taken to pieces.

When they returned in the evening, they were much surprised to find Totahah under confinement in the fort, while a crowd of the natives surrounded the gate, discovering marks of the greatest anxiety for the fate of their chief. The occasion of his detention originated from the conduct of the Indians; who, alarmed at Capt. Cook's having gone up the country with an armed party, most of the natives left the fort that evening, and one of the canoes attempted to quit the bay. The lieutenant who commanded on board the ship, having it in charge not to suffer any canoe to depart, sent a boat to detain her, but she no sooner approached than the Indians jumped into the sea. Tootahah being of the number, was taken and sent to the officer who commanded at the fort, who concluded he should do right to detain him prisoner, while the poor chief thought of nothing but being put to death, till Capt. Cook caused him to be liberated, to the great joy of his countrymen. But the natives were still inclined to bear this affair in their minds, and as a proof of it, they neglected to supply the market with provisions. Mr. Banks walking into the woods, heard great murmurings concerning the treatment of Tootahah, who, as they said, had been ill used and beaten, though Mr. Banks declared he was quite ignorant of his having received such treatment.

The chief now sent for such hogs to be restored as he had left behind him, at first intending them as a present, which by this time, perhaps, he did not think the English had merited; but they refused to send them unless he would come himself, thinking by an interview to promote a reconciliation; and this they were the more desirous of, as they were told it would be a fortnight before he would pay them a visit.

On the 3rd, provisions were extremely scarce, as the

markets continued to be ill supplied on the account already mentioned ; and it was not without difficulty, that Mr. Banks got a few baskets of bread-fruit from Tubourai Tamaide. Tootahah on the 4th sent for an axe and a shirt in return for the hogs, which were accordingly promised to be brought him the next day. He sent again early in the morning of the 5th, and Mr. Banks and the doctor set out in the pinnace, taking with them one of Tootahah's people and soon reached Eparre, where he resided. When they arrived, they found a number of natives waiting for them on shore, and were conducted directly to the chief, the people, notwithstanding the offence they had so lately taken, shouting out in their language, "Tootahah is your friend." He was sitting under a tree, and some old men were standing about him. Having made signs for them to be seated, he asked for the axe, which was then given him by Capt. Cook, as also the shirt and a broad-cloth garment, which latter he put on, and was well pleased with the present. They were afterwards conducted to a large court yard on one side of the chief's house, where they were entertained with wrestling after the manner of the country. He himself sat at the upper end of the area, having several of his principal men on each side of him, who appeared as judges of the sport, which was as follows :

Ten or twelve combatants entered the area, and after many simple ceremonies of challenging, they engaged, each endeavouring to throw his antagonist by mere strength : they seized each other by the hand, or other parts of the body ; grappling, without the least art, till one, by having a greater hold, or stronger muscular force, threw his antagonist on his back. The conquest was applauded by the old men with a few words repeated in a kind of tune, and with three huzzas. After one engagement another succeeded : if the combatants could not throw each other in the space of a minute, they parted, either by consent, or the intervention of their friends. A man with a stick officiated as master of the ceremonies,

keeping order among the people, and those of them who pressed forward he struck with his stick very smartly. During these athletic sports, another party of men performed a dance, for the space of a minute, but neither of these parties took the least notice of each other, their attention being wholly fixed on their own endeavours to please and conquer.

At the conclusion of this entertainment, not unlike the wrestling-matches of remote antiquity, they were told, that some hogs and a large quantity of bread-fruit were preparing for dinner, but their host, instead of setting his two hogs before them, ordered one of them to be carried into the boat. Here they thought to have enjoyed their good cheer, but at the desire of Tubourai Tamaide they proceeded as far as the ship: however, they were at last gratified with the promised repast, of which the chief and his friends had a liberal share. This friendly reconciliation operated on the natives like a charm: for it was no sooner known that Tubourai Tamaide was on board, than provisions of all kinds were brought to the fort in great plenty.

By this time our forge was set up and at work, which afforded a new subject of admiration to the Indians, and to Capt. Cook an additional opportunity of conferring obligations on them, by permitting the smith, in his leisure hours, to convert the old iron, which they were supposed to have procured from the Dolphin, into various kinds of tools.

On the 10th they sowed, in ground properly prepared, seeds of melons and other plants, but none of them came up except mustard. Mr. Banks thought the seeds were spoiled by a total exclusion of fresh air, they having all been put into small bottles, and sealed up with rosin. They learnt this day, the Indians called the island Otaheite, the name by which it is now distinguished. They were not so fortunate in endeavouring to teach them their names; and, after repeated attempts to pronounce them, which proved fruitless, they had recourse to new ones of their own inven-

tion. Capt. Cooke they named Toote; Mr. Hicks, Hete. The master they called Boba, from his christian name Robert; Mr. Gore, Toarro; Dr. Solander, Toano; Mr. Banks, Tapane; and so on for the greater part of the ship's crew. These perhaps were significant words in their own language; and we are inclined to this opinion, because Mr. Monkhouse, who commanded the party that shot the man for stealing a musket, they named Matte, which was not merely an arbitrary sound, but in their language it signified dead.

On the 13th, Tubourai Tamaide offended Mr. Banks by snatching his gun out of his hand, and firing it in the air; an action which much surprised that gentleman, as he imagined him totally ignorant of the use of it. As the ignorance of the people of those countries in regard to this particular, must cause them to fear their guests, Mr. Banks made a serious matter of what, probably, the other meant only as a joke; and, not without threats, gave him to understand, that to touch the piece was a high insult. The offender made no reply, but set out immediately, with his family, for Eparre. Great inconvenience being apprehended from this man, and as in many instances he had been particularly useful, Mr. Banks determined to follow him. He set out the same evening from the fort, accompanied by Mr. Molineux, and found him in the middle of a large circle of people, the picture of extreme grief, which was also visible in the countenances of his attendants. One of the women expressed her trouble in the same manner as Terapo had done upon another occasion. Mr. Banks lost no time in endeavouring to put an end to all animosity. The chief was soothed into confidence, and a double canoe being got ready, they all returned together to the fort before supper; and as a pledge of sincere reconciliation, both he and his wife passed the night in the tent of Mr. Banks.

On Monday the 15th, Tubourai Tamaide was detected in a theft; Mr. Banks had a good opinion of this chief, but

a basket of nails, left in the corner of the tent, proved irresistible. He confessed the fact of having stolen four nails, but when restitution was demanded, Tamaide said the nails were at Eparre. High words passed, and the Indian produced one of the nails, and was to be forgiven on restoring the rest; but his virtue was not equal to the task, and he withdrew himself as usual, when he had committed an offence.

On the 25th, Mr. Banks seeing Tubourai Tamaide and his wife Tomio at the tent for the first time since the former had been detected in stealing the nails, he endeavoured to persuade him to restore them, but all his efforts were in vain. As the gentlemen treated him with a reserve and coolness which he could not but perceive, his stay was short, and he departed in a very abrupt manner; nor could the surgeon persuade him to effect a reconciliation by bringing the nails.

On the 27th, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, Capt. Cook, and some others, set out in the pinnace to visit Tootahah, who had again removed to a place called Atahouro, six miles from his last abode; and not being able to go half way thither in a boat, it was almost evening before they arrived. Having made presents in due form, consisting of a yellow stuff petticoat, and other trifling articles, they were invited to supper, and to pass the night there. The party consisted of six only; but the place was crowded with a greater number than the houses and canoes could contain. Among the guests was Oberea, with her train of attendants. Mr. Banks having accepted of a lodging in Oberea's canoe, left his companions in order to retire to rest. Oberea had the charge of his clothes; but notwithstanding her care they were stolen, as were also his pistols, his powder horn, and several other things out of his waistcoat pockets. An alarm was given to Tootahah in the next canoe, who went with Oberea in search of the thief, leaving Mr. Banks with only his breeches and waistcoat on, and his musket uncharged. They soon returned, but without success, and Mr. Banks

thought proper to put up with the loss at present, and he then arose to go and find his companions. He found the hut where Capt. Cook and three other gentlemen lay, and they told him that they had lost their stockings and jackets. In effect Dr. Solander, who joined them the next morning, was the only one that escaped being robbed, and he had slept at a house that was a mile distant.

Preparations were now made for viewing the transit of Venus, and two parties were sent out to make observations from different spots, that in case of failing at Otahete, they might succeed elsewhere. They employed themselves in preparing their instruments, and instructing those gentlemen in the use of them who were to go out; and, on Thursday the first of June, they sent the long boat with Mr. Gore, Mr. Monkhouse (the two observers) and Mr. Sporing, a friend of Mr. Banks, with proper instruments to Eimayo. Others were sent to find out a spot that might answer the purpose, at a convenient distance from their principal station.

The party that went toward Eimayo, after rowing the greater part of the night, having hailed a canoe, were informed of a place by the Indians, which was judged proper for their observatory, where they fixed their tents. It was a rock that arose out of the water about 140 yards from the shore.

Saturday the 3d (the day of the transit) Mr. Banks, as soon as it was light, left them in order to go and get fresh provisions on the island. This gentleman had the satisfaction to see the sun rise without a cloud. The king, whose name was Tarrao, came to pay him a visit, and brought with him Nuna his sister. As it was customary for the people to be seated at their conferences, Mr. Banks spread his turban of Indian cloth, which he wore as a hat, upon the ground, and they all sat down. Then a hog and a dog, some coconuts, and bread-fruit were brought, being the king's present; and Mr. Banks sent for an adze, a shirt, and some

beads, which his majesty received with apparent satisfaction. The king, his sister, and three beautiful young women their attendants, accompanied Mr. Banks to the observatory, where he shewed them the transit of Venus, when that planet was upon the sun, and acquainted them, that to view it in that situation was the cause of his taking a voyage to those remote parts. Both the parties that were sent out to make observations on the transit, met with good success, though they differed more than might have been expected in their account of the contact. Mr. Green's account was as follows :

	MORNING.	Hours.	Min.	Sec.
The first external contact, or appearance of Venus on the sun		9	25	4
The first internal contact, or total immersion		9	44	4

	AFTERNOON.	Hours.	Min.	Sec.
The second internal contact, or beginning of the emersion		3	14	8
The second external contact, or total emersion		3	32	10
Latitude of the observatory, 17° 29' 15".				
Longitude, 149° 32' 30" W. of Greenwich.				

While the gentlemen and officers were busied in viewing the transit, some of the ship's company broke into the store-room, and stole a quantity of spike-nails. After a strict search the thief was found out; he was ordered to receive two dozen lashes, by way of example.

On the 4th the two parties sent out to observe the transit were absent; on which account they deferred keeping His Majesty's birth-day to the next day, the 5th, when it was celebrated, and several of the Indian chiefs partook of the entertainment, and drank His Majesty's health by the name of Kihiarago, the nearest imitation they could produce of King George.

The ceremony of burying their dead was performed on the 10th, and Mr. Banks was so desirous of being present, that he agreed to take a part in it, being informed that he could not be a spectator on any other condition. He went

accordingly to the place where the body was deposited, and was met by the relations of the deceased, and other persons. Tubourai Tamaide was the principal mourner, whose dress was whimsical, though not altogether ungraceful. Mr. Banks was obliged to quit his European dress, and had no other covering than a small piece of cloth that was tied round his middle; his body was blacked over with charcoal and water, as were the bodies of several others, and among them some females, who were no more covered than himself. The chief mourner uttered a prayer, when he approached the body, and repeated the words as he came up to his own house. The mourners proceeded along the shore, crossed the river, then entered the woods, passing several houses, which became immediately uninhabited, and during the rest of the procession, which continued for near half an hour, not an Indian was visible. Mr. Banks filled an office that they called Nineveh, and there were two others in the same character. When none of the other natives were to be seen, they approached the chief mourner, saying Imatata; then those who had assisted at the ceremony bathed in the river, and resumed their former dress.

On the 12th, complaint was made that the Indians had lost some of their bows and arrows, and strings of plaited hair; the affair was inquired into, and being well attested, the offenders received each two dozen lashes.

On the 14th, in the night, an iron coal-rake for the oven was stolen; and many other things at times having been conveyed away, the captain judged it of consequence to put an end to such practices, by making it their common interest to prevent it. He had given strict orders that the centinels should not fire upon the Indians, even if they were detected in the fact; but many depredations determined him to make reprisals. About twenty-seven of their double canoes with sails were just arrived, containing cargoes of fish; these the captain seized, and then gave notice that unless the rake, and all the other things that had been stolen,

were returned, the vessels should be burnt. This menace produced no other effect than the restitution of the rake. The captain however thought fit to give up the cargoes, as the natives were in great want of them.

About this time another event had nearly embroiled them with the Indians. The captain having sent a boat on shore to get ballast, the officer not meeting with what he wanted, began to pull down one of the mansions of the dead, which was opposed by the islanders. This was the only instance in which they offered to oppose us, except in the affair of the fort, which has been related.

On the 19th, in the evening, while the canoes were still detained, Oberea and several of her attendants paid the gentlemen a visit. She came from Tootahah's palace, in a double canoe, and brought with her a hog, bread-fruit, and other presents, among which was a dog; but not a single article of the things that had been stolen. Tupia undertook to kill and dress the dog, which he did by making a hole in the ground and baking it. It was esteemed a very good dish.

On the 21st, they were visited by many of the natives, who brought with them various presents. Among the rest was a chief, named Oamo. He had a boy and a young woman with him. The former was carried on a man's back, which was considered as a piece of state. Oberea and some of the Indians went from the fort to meet them, bare-headed, and uncovered as low as the waist, which the English judged to be marks of respect usually shewn to persons of high rank. When Oamo entered the tent, the young woman, though seemingly very curious, could not be prevailed upon to accompany him. The youth was introduced by Dr. Solander, but as soon as the Indians saw him, they took care to have him sent out.

Curiosity being raised by these circumstances, they made inquiry concerning the strangers, and were informed, that Oamo was the husband of Oberea, but that by mutual consent they had been for a considerable time separated, and

the boy and girl were their children. The former was called Terridiri: he was heir apparent to the sovereignty of the islands, and when he attained the proper age, was to marry his sister. Oamo was very inquisitive, asking a number of questions concerning the English, by which he appeared to be a man of understanding and penetration.

On the 23d, in the morning, one of the crew being missing, they were told he was at Eparre, Tootahah's residence in the wood, and one of the Indians offered to fetch him back. On his return, he said that he had been taken from the fort, and carried to the top of the bay by three men, who forced him into a canoe, after having stripped him, and conducted him to Eparre, where he received some clothes from Tootahah, who endeavoured to prevail on him to continue there. There was reason to conclude this account true; for the natives were no sooner acquainted with his return, than they left the fort with precipitation.

On June the 26th, early in the morning, Capt. Cook setting out in the pinnace with Mr. Banks, sailed to the eastward, with a view of circumnavigating the island. Coming to a large bay, the English gentlemen mentioned their design of going to the other side, but their Indian guide, whose name was Titubaola, said he would not accompany them, and also endeavoured to dissuade them from going; observing "That country was inhabited by people who were not subject to Tootahah, and who would destroy them all." They resolved however to put their design into execution, and on loading their pieces with ball, Titubaola ventured to go with them. Having rowed till it was dark, they reached a narrow isthmus which divided the island into two parts, which formed distinct governments. They landed in the district of a chief, called Maraitata, a name which signifies the burying place of men; his father was called Pahairede, that is, a stealer of boats: the people however gave the captain a very good reception, sold them a hog for a hatchet, and furnished them with provisions.

A crowd of the natives came round the English gentlemen, amongst whom however they met only two with whom they were acquainted. They afterwards advanced till they reached a district under the government of Waheatua. They proceeded on their journey, for a considerable way along the shore, till at last they were met by the chief, who had with him an agreeable woman, of about twenty-two years of age, who was called Toudidde. Her name was not unknown to the English, who had often heard of it; and she was supposed to bear the same rank here as Oberea bore in the other part of the island. The parts through which they now passed, appeared to be better cultivated than any of the rest, and the burial places were more in number. They were neat, and ornamented with carvings.

At about three miles distance, they found some of the natives whom they well knew, yet it was not without difficulty that they obtained a few cocoa-nuts before they departed. A little farther to the eastward they landed again, and were met by Mathiabo, a chief, with whom they were not at all acquainted. He supplied them with bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, and they purchased a hog of him for a glass-bottle, which he chose in preference to all the other articles presented before him. A turkey-cock and a goose were seen here, which were much admired by the natives, and were supposed to have been left there by Capt. Wallis's people. When they left the place, the chief piloted them over the shoals. In the evening they opened the bay on the north-west side of the island, and they met with a very friendly reception from the chief, whose name was Wiverou, who gave directions to some of his people to assist in dressing their provisions, which were very plentiful, and they supped at Wiverou's house in company with Mathiabo. Part of the house was allotted for them to sleep in, and soon after supper they retired to rest. Mathiabo having borrowed a cloak of Mr. Banks to serve as a coverlet when he lay down, made off with it. News of the robbery was brought

them by one of the natives, and they set out in pursuit of Mathiabo, but had proceeded only a little way before they were met by a person bringing back the cloak, which this chief had given up through fear.

On their return they found the house entirely deserted; and about four in the morning, the centinel gave the alarm that the boat was missing. Their situation now was extremely disagreeable. The party consisting of only four, with one musket and two pocket pistols, without a spare ball or a charge of powder. After remaining a considerable time, in a state of anxiety, the boat which had been driven away by the tide, returned; and Mr. Banks and his companions had no sooner breakfasted than they took their leave and set out on their return.

On Friday the 30th, they arrived at Otahorou, where they found their old acquaintance Tootahah, who received them with great civility, and provided them a good supper, and convenient lodging; and though they had been so shamefully plundered the last time they slept with this chief, they spent the night in the greatest security, none of their clothes nor any other article being missing the next morning. They returned to the fort at Port Royal Harbour on the first of July, having discovered the island, including both peninsulas, to be about 100 miles in circumference.

After their return from this tour, they were very much in want of bread-fruit, none of which they had been able to provide themselves with, as they saw but little in the course of their journey; but their Indian friends coming round them, soon supplied their want of provisions.

On the 3d, Mr. Banks made an excursion, in order to trace the river up the valley to its source, and to remark how far the country was inhabited along the banks of it. He took some Indian guides with him, and after having seen houses for about six miles, they came to one which was said to be the last that could be met with. The master presented them with cocoa-nuts and other fruits, and they pro-

ceeded on their walk. In the course of their journey, they often passed through vaults formed by rocky fragments, in which, as they were told, benighted travellers sometimes took shelter. Pursuing the course of the river about six miles farther, they found it banked on both sides by rocks almost 100 feet in height, and nearly perpendicular; a way however, might be traced up these precipices, along which their Indian guides would have conducted them, but they declined the offer, as there did not appear to be any thing at the summit which could repay them for the toil and dangers of ascending them. Mr. Banks sought in vain for minerals among the rocks, which were naked almost on all sides, but no mineral substances were found. The stones every where exhibited signs of having been burnt, which was the case of all the stones that were found while they staid at Otaheite; and both there and in the neighbouring islands, the traces of fire were evident in the clay upon the hills.

On the 4th, a great quantity of the seeds of water-melons, oranges, limes and other plants brought from Rio de Janeiro, were planted on each side of the fort, by Mr. Banks, who also plentifully supplied the Indians with them, and planted many of them in the woods. Some melons, the seeds of which had been sown on the first arrival of the English at the island, grew up and flourished before they left it.

Preparations were now made to depart. The carpenters being ordered to take down the gates and pallisadoes of the fort, to be converted into fire-wood for the Endeavour, one of the natives stole the staple and hook of the gate; he was pursued in vain, but the property was recovered, and returned by Tubourai Tamaide.

Between the 8th and 9th, two young marines one night withdrew themselves from the fort, and in the morning were not to be met with. Notice having been given the next day that the ship would sail that or the ensuing day, Capt. Cook

began to suspect that they designed to remain on shore; but as no means could be taken to recover them without running a risque of destroying the harmony subsisting with the natives, he resolved to wait a day, in hopes of their returning. But as they were still missing on the 10th in the morning, an inquiry was made after them, when the Indians declared that they did not purpose to return, having taken refuge among the mountains, where it was impossible for them to be discovered; and that each of them had taken a wife. In consequence of this, it was intimated to several of the chiefs that were in the fort with the women, among whom were Tubourai Tamaide, Tomio, and Oberea, that they would not be suffered to quit it till the deserters were produced. They did not shew any signs of fear or discontent, but assured the captain that the marines should be sent back. In the mean time Mr. Hicks was dispatched in the pinnace to bring Tootahah on board the ship, and he executed his commission without giving any alarm. Night coming on, Capt. Cook thought it not prudent to let the people, whom he had detained as hostages, remain at the fort; he therefore gave orders to remove them on board, which greatly alarmed them all, especially the females, who testified their apprehensions by floods of tears.

In the evening one of the marines was brought back by some of the natives, who reported that the other, and two of our men who went to recover them, would be detained till Tootahah was released. Upon this Mr. Hicks was immediately sent off in the long boat, with a strong body of men to rescue the prisoners; at the same time the captain told Tootahah that it was incumbent on him to assist them with some of his people, and to give orders in his name, that the men should be set at liberty, for that he would be expected to answer for the event. Tootahah immediately complied, and the party recovered the men without opposition.

On examining the deserters, it appeared that the Indians had told the truth, they having associated with two females,

with whom they intended to have remained in the island. Tupia, who had been prime minister to Oberea when she was at the pinnacle of her authority, and was also chief priest, consequently well acquainted with the religion of the country, had often expressed a desire to go with them whenever they continued their voyage.

On the 12th, in the morning, he came on board, with a boy about twelve years of age, his servant, named 'Taiyota, and earnestly requested the gentlemen on board, to permit him to accompany them. As it was thought he would be useful to them in many particulars, they unanimously agreed to comply with his request. Tupia then went on shore for the last time to bid farewell to his friends, to whom he gave several baubles, as parting tokens of remembrance.

Mr. Banks, after dinner, being willing to obtain a drawing of the Morai, which Tootahah had in his possession at Eparre, Capt. Cook accompanied him thither in the pinnace, together with Dr. Solander. Immediately upon landing they repaired to Tootahah's house, where they were met by Oberea and several others. A general good understanding prevailed. Tupia came back with them, and they promised to visit the gentlemen early the next day, as they were told the ship would then sail.

On the 13th, these friendly people came very early on board, and the ship was surrounded with a vast number of canoes, filled with Indians of the lower sort. Between eleven and twelve they weighed anchor and took their leave, weeping in an affectionate manner. Tupia supported himself through this scene with a becoming fortitude; tears flowed from his eyes, it is true, but the effort that he made to conceal them did him additional honour. He went with Mr. Banks to the mast head, and waving his hand, took a last farewell of his country. Thus they departed from Otaheite, after a stay of just three months.

According to Tupia's account, this island could furnish above six thousand fighting men. The produce is bread-

fruit, cocoa nuts, bananas, sweet potatoes, yams, jambu, a delicious fruit, sugar cane, the paper mulberry, several sorts of figs, with many other plants and trees, all which the earth produces spontaneously, or with little culture. They have no European fruits, garden-stuff, pulse, nor grain of any kind. The tame animals are hogs, dogs, and poultry; the wild ducks, pigeons, paroquets, and a few other birds. The only reptiles are rats, and not a serpent is to be seen. In the sea is a great variety of excellent fish, which constitutes their greatest luxury, and to catch them their chief employment.

The people in general are of a larger make than the Europeans. The males are mostly tall, robust, and finely shaped; the women of the higher class are about the size of our English ladies, but those of inferior rank are below our standard, and some of them very short. Their natural complexion is a fine clear olive, or what we call a brunett; their skin delicately smooth and agreeably soft. Their faces in general are handsome, and their eyes full of sensibility. Their teeth are remarkably white and regular, their hair for the most part black, and their breath is entirely free from any disagreeable smell. The men, unlike the original inhabitants of America, have long beards, which they wear in various shapes. Circumcision is generally practised among them from a motive of cleanliness, and they have a term of reproach with which they upbraid those who do not adopt this custom. Both sexes always eradicate the hair from their arm-pits, and they reproached our gentlemen with want of cleanliness, for neglecting to adopt such practice. Their motions are easy and graceful, and their behaviour, when unprovoked, affable and courteous. Contrary to the custom of most other nations, the women of this country cut their hair short, whereas the men wear it long, sometimes hanging loose upon their shoulders, at other times tied in a knot on the crown of the head, in which they stick the feathers of birds of various colours. A piece of cloth of the

manufacture of the country, is frequently tied round the head of both sexes in the manner of a turban, and the women plait very curiously human hair into long strings, which being folded into branches, are tied on the forehead by way of ornaments. They have a custom practised in many hot countries, of anointing their hair with cocoa nut oil, the smell of which is not very agreeable.

They stain their bodies by indenting or pricking the flesh with a small instrument of bone, cut into short teeth, which indentures they fill with a dark blue or blackish mixture, prepared from the smoke of an oily nut (burnt by them instead of candles) and water. This operation, called by the natives Tattaowing, is exceedingly painful, and leaves an indelible mark on the skin. It is usually performed when they are about ten or twelve years of age, and on different parts of the body: it is performed with an instrument having twenty teeth, and at each stroke blood issues. It is most painful, but both males and females are compelled to undergo the operation. They clothe themselves in cloth and matting of various kinds; the first they wear in fine, the latter in wet weather. These are in different forms, no shape being observed in the pieces, nor are they sewed together. The women of a superior class wear three or four pieces. One which is of considerable length, they wrap several times round the waist, and it falls down to the middle of the leg. Two or three other short pieces, with a hole cut through the middle of each, are placed one on another, and their heads coming through the holes, the long ends hang before and behind, both sides being open, by which means they have the free use of their arms.

The men's dress is very similar, differing only in this instance, that one part of the garment instead of falling below the knees, is brought between the legs. This dress is worn by all ranks of people, the only distinction being quantity in the superior class. At noon both sexes appear almost naked, wearing only a piece of cloth tied round the waist.

Their faces are shaded from the sun with small bonnets, made of cocoa nut leaves or matting, which they construct in a few minutes. The men sometimes wear a sort of wig of human or dog's hair, or of cocoa-nut strings woven on a single thread and hanging down behind. Both men and women wore ear-rings on one side, consisting of shells, stones, berries, or small pearls ; but they soon gave the preference to the beads brought by the Endeavour's company. The boys and girls go quite naked ; the first till they are seven or eight years old, the latter till they are about five.

The natives of Otaheite seldom use their houses but to sleep in, or to avoid the rain, as they eat in the open air, under the shade of a tree. Their clothes serve them for covering at night. There are no divisions or apartments ; the master and his wife repose in the middle, next the unmarried females, then the unmarried men, and in fair weather the servants sleep in the open air. The houses of the chiefs, however, differ in some particulars. There are some very small, and so constructed as to be carried in canoes : all sides of them are inclosed with the leaves of the cocoa-nut : the air nevertheless penetrates. In these the chief and his wife only sleep. There are also houses which are general receptacles for the inhabitants of a district, many of them being more than 200 feet in length, 40 in breadth, and 70 or 80 feet high. They are constructed at the common expence, and have an area on one side, surrounded with low palisadoes ; but, like the others, without walls.

The cookery consists chiefly in baking. When a chief kills a hog, which is but seldom, he divides it equally among his vassals. Dogs and fowls are more common food. When the bread-fruit is not in season, cocoa-nuts, bananas, plantains, &c. are substituted in its stead. They bake their bread-fruit in a manner which renders it somewhat like a mealy potatoe. Of this three dishes are made, by beating them up with bananas, plantains, or sour paste, which is called by them Mahie.

Sour paste is made by taking bread-fruit not thoroughly ripe, and laying it in heaps covered with leaves, by which means it ferments. The core is then taken out, and the fruit put into a hole lined with grass : it is then again covered with leaves, upon which large stones are placed ; this produces a second fermentation ; after which it grows sour, without any other change for a long time. They take it from this hole as they have occasion for it, and make it into balls. It is then rolled up in plantain leaves and baked. As it will keep for some weeks, they eat it both hot and cold. Their drink is generally confined to water, or the milk of the cocoa-nut, though some of them would drink so freely of our English liquors as to become quite intoxicated ; such instances, however, were occasioned more by ignorance than design, as they were never known to practise a debauch of this kind a second time. It was said that their chiefs sometimes became inebriated by drinking the juice of a plant called Ava, but of this not a single instance occurred during the time they remained on the island.

The chiefs eat generally alone, unless when visited by a stranger, who is permitted sometimes to be a mess-mate. They sit on the ground, and leaves of trees spread before them serve as a table-cloth. Their attendants, who are numerous, having placed a basket before the chiefs, containing their provisions, and cocoa-nut shells of fresh and salt water, seat themselves around them. They then wash their mouths and hands ; after which they eat a handful of bread-fruit and fish, dipt in salt water alternately, till the whole is consumed, taking a sip of salt water between almost every morsel. The bread-fruit and fish is succeeded by a second course, consisting of either plantains or apples, which they never eat without being pared. During this time a soft fluid of paste is prepared from the bread-fruit, which they drink out of cocoa-nut shells : this concludes the meal, and they wash their hands and mouths again as at the beginning. They eat an astonishing deal of food at a meal. Mr. Banks

and others saw one of them devour three fish of the size of a small carp, four bread-fruits, as large as a common melon, thirteen or fourteen plantains seven inches long, and above half as big round; to all which was added a quart of the paste, by way of drink, to digest the whole.

The inhabitants of this island, though apparently fond of the pleasures of society, have yet an aversion to holding any intercourse with each other at their meals; and they are so rigid in the observation of this custom, that even brothers and sisters have their separate baskets of provisions, and generally sit at a distance of some yards when they eat, with their backs to each other, and not exchanging a word during the whole time of their repast. The middle aged of superior rank go usually to sleep after dinner; but, which is somewhat remarkable, older people are not so indolent.

Music, dancing, wrestling, and shooting with the bow, constitute the greatest part of their diversions. Flutes and drums are the only musical instruments among them. Their drums are formed of a circular piece of wood, hollow at one end only, which is covered with the skin of a shark, and beaten with the hand instead of a stick. Their songs are extempore, and frequently in rhyme, but they consist only of two lines. These couplets are often sung by way of evening amusements, between sun-set and bed-time; during which interval they burn candles made of an oily nut, fixing them one above another upon a small stick which is run through the middle; some of these candles will burn a long time, and afford a good light.

Personal cleanliness is much esteemed among these Indians. Both sexes are particular in washing three times a day; when they arise, at noon, and before they go to rest. They are also cleanly in their clothes, so that no disagreeable effluvia are found to arise in the largest communities.

Cloth is the chief manufacture of Otaheite, and of this there are three sorts, which are made out of the bark of different trees, namely, the mulberry, the bread-fruit, and

a tree which bears some resemblance to the West-Indian wild fig tree. The first of these produces the finest cloth, which is seldom worn but by those of the first rank. The next sort is made of the bread-fruit tree, and the coarsest of that which resembles the wild fig tree. This last sort, though the coarsest, is manufactured only in small quantities. The following description will suffice for the reader's information.

The bark of the tree being stripped off, is soaked in water for two or three days; they then take it out, and separate the inner bark from the external coat, by scraping it with a shell, after which it is spread out on plantain leaves, placing two or three layers over one another, care being taken to make it of an equal thickness in every part. In this state it continues till it is almost dry, when it adheres so firmly that it may be taken from the ground without breaking. After this process, it is laid on a smooth board, and beaten with an instrument made for the purpose, of a compact heavy wood called Etoa. The instrument is about fourteen inches long, and about seven in circumference; is of a quadrangular shape, and each of the four sides is marked with longitudinal grooves or furrows, differing in this instance, that there is a regular graduation in the width and depth of the grooves on each of the sides; the coarser side not containing more than ten of these furrows, while the finest is furnished with above fifty. It is with that side of the mallet where the grooves are deepest and widest that they begin to beat their cloth, and proceeding regularly, finish with that which has the greatest number. By this beating, the cloth is extended in a manner similar to the gold that is formed into leaves by the hammer, and it is also marked with small channels resembling those that are visible on paper, but rather deeper; it is in general beat very thin; when they want it thicker than common, they take two or three pieces and paste them together with a kind of glue prepared from a root called Pea. This cloth becomes ex-

ceedingly white by bleaching, and is dyed of a red, yellow, brown or black colour : the first is exceedingly beautiful, and equal, if not superior to any in Europe.

Matting of various kinds is another manufacture in which they excel, in many respects, the Europeans. They make use of the coarser sort to sleep upon, and in wet weather they wear the finer : they excel in basket and wicker work ; both men and women employ themselves at it, and can make a great number of different patterns. They make ropes and lines of all sizes of the bark of the Poerou, and their nets for fishing are made of these lines : they make thread of the fibres of the cocoa-nut, with which they fasten together the several parts of their canoes ; the forms of which are various, according to the use to which they are applied. Their fishing-lines are esteemed the best in the world, made of the bark of the Erowa, a kind of nettle which grows on the mountains ; they are strong enough to hold the heaviest and most vigorous fish, such as bonettas and albicores ; in short, they are extremely ingenious in every expedient for taking all kinds of fish.

The tools which these people make use of for building houses, constructing canoes, hewing stones, and for felling, cleaving, carving, and polishing timber, consist of nothing more than an adze of stone and a chisel of bone, most commonly that of a man's arm, and, for a file or polisher, they make use of a rasp of coral and coral sand. The blades of their adzes are extremely tough, but not very hard ; they are of various sizes, those for felling wood weigh six or seven pounds, and others which are used for carving, only a few ounces ; they are obliged every minute to sharpen them on a stone, which is always kept near them for the purpose. The most difficult task they meet with in the use of these tools, is the felling a tree, which employs a great number of hands for several days together. The tree which is in general use is called Aoie, the stem of which is straight and tall. Some of the smaller boats are made of the bread-fruit

tree, which is wrought without much difficulty, being of a light spongy nature. Instead of planes, they use their adzes with great dexterity.

Their canoes are all shaped with the hand, the Indians not being acquainted with the method of warping a plank. Of these they have two kinds, one they call Ivahahs, the other Pahies: the former is used for short voyages at sea, and the latter for long ones. These boats do not differ either in shape or size, but they are in no degree proportionate, being from sixty to seventy feet in length, and not more than a thirtieth part in breadth. Some are employed in going from one island to another, and others used for fishing: there is also the Ivahah, which serves for war; these are by far the longest, and the head and stern are considerably above the body. These Ivahahs are fastened together, side by side, when they go to sea, at the distance of a few feet, by strong wooden poles, which are laid across them and joined to each side. A stage or platform is raised on the fore part, about ten or twelve feet long, upon which stand the fighting men, whose missile weapons are slings and spears. Beneath these stages the rowers sit, who supply the place of those who are wounded. The Pahies differ also in size, being from sixty to seventy feet long: they are also very narrow, and are sometimes used for fighting, but chiefly for long voyages. In going from one island to another, they are out sometimes a month, and often at sea a fortnight or twenty days; and if they had convenience to stow more provisions, they could stay out much longer. These vessels are very useful in landing, and putting off from the shore in a surf, for by their great length and high stern they landed dry, when the Endeavour's boats could scarcely land at all.

Their language is soft, abounding with vowels, and is easy to pronounce; the following specimen will enable the reader to form some notion of the language of these islanders.

Aheine, a woman	Midee, a child
Aree, a chief	Mutee, a kiss
Aouna, to-day	Neeheso, good night
Eahoo, the nose	Oowhau, the thighs
Eawow, to scold	Otaowa, yesterday
Eei, to eat	Pahie, a ship
Emoto, to box	Tane, a husband
Epanoo, a drum	Tattate hommanne maitai, a good-natured person
Epehe, a song	Tea, white
Erowroo, the head	Teine, a brother
Huaheine, a wife	Tooaheine, a sister
Itopa, to fall	Tooanahoe, you and I
Mahana, a day	Toonoah, a mole in the skin
Matau, the eyes	Wahoa, fire
Matte roah, to die	Waow, I.
Mayneenee, to tickle	
Mayoooo, the nails	

The care of the sick belongs to the priests, whose method of cure consists generally of prayers and ceremonies, which are repeated till the patients recover or die.

The religion of these islanders appears to be very mysterious; and, as the language adapted to it was different from that which was spoken on other occasions, they were not able to gain much knowledge of it. The Supreme Being they stile "The causer of earthquakes." They suppose that the chiefs and principal people will have the preference to those of lower ranks in a future state; and that the deity takes no particular cognizance of their actions.

In their form of government there is a sort of subordination resembling the early state of the nations of Europe when under the feudal system, which reserved authority to a small number, putting the rest entirely in their power. The Earee Rahie, or king, of which there are two here, one belonging to each peninsula, had great respect shewn them by all ranks.

Their weapons consist of slings, in the use of which they are extremely dexterous, and of long clubs, remarkably hard, with which they fight obstinately and cruelly, giving no quarter to their enemies in time of battle.

There is not any thing among them substituted for money, or a general medium by which every desirable object may be purchased or procured; neither can any permanent good be obtained by force or fraud.

On the 13th of July, 1768, after leaving the island of Otaheite, they sailed with a gentle breeze, and were informed by Tupia, that four islands which he called Huaheine, Ulietea, Otaha, and Bolabola, were at the distance of about one or two day's sail; and that hogs, fowls, and other refreshments, which had been very scarce, were to be got there in abundance.

On the 16th they sounded near the north-west part of the island of Huaheine, but found no bottom at 70 fathoms. Several canoes put off; but the Indians seemed fearful of coming near the ship, till the sight of Tupia removed their apprehensions. They then came along side, and the king of the island, with his queen, came on board. They seemed surprised at whatever was shewn them, but made no inquiries after any thing but what was offered to their notice. The king, whose name was Oree, as a token of amity, proposed exchanging names with Capt. Cook, which was readily accepted.

Having anchored in a small, but convenient harbour on the west side of the island, (called by the natives Owparre) the captain went on shore, accompanied by Mr. Banks and some other gentlemen, with the king and Tupia. The moment they landed Tupia uncovered himself as low as the waist, and desired Mr. Monkhouse to follow his example. Being seated, he began a speech, which lasted about twenty minutes; the king, who stood opposite to him, answering him in what seemed set replies. During this harangue, Tupia delivered, at different times, a handkerchief, a black

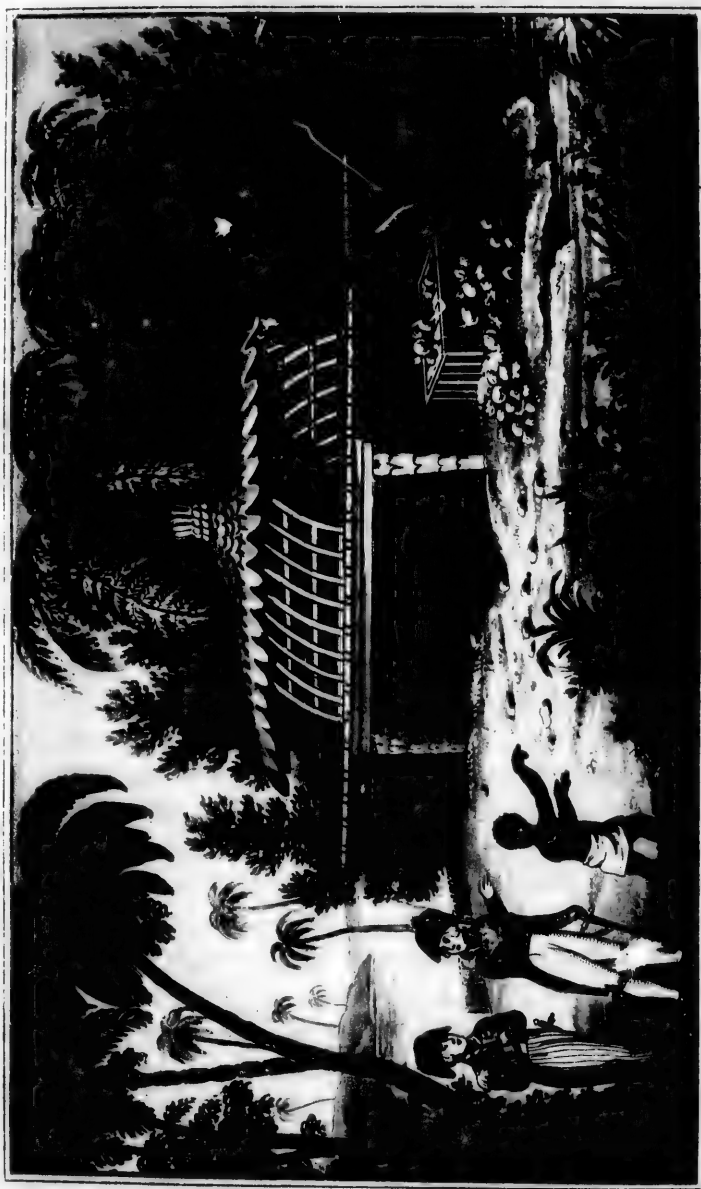
silk neckcloth, some plantains, and beads, as presents to their Father, or deity, and in return received a hog, some young plantains, and two bunches of feathers, all which were carried on board. These ceremonies were considered as a kind of ratification of a treaty between the English and the king of Hualahine.

On the 15th, in exchange for some hogs, they obtained three very large hogs. As they intended to sail in the afternoon, King Oree, and others of the natives, went on board to take their leave. Capt. Cook presented Oree a small pewter plate, stamped with the inscription, "His Britannic Majesty's ship Endeavour, Capt. Cook, commander. July 10, 1769." They gave him also some medals or counters, resembling English coin, and some trifles, which he promised to keep. Before he went they sailed for the island of Uloua, distant seven or eight leagues.

On the 20th, they anchored in a bay, on the north side of the island. Two canoes soon came off from the shore, and the natives brought with them two small hogs, which they exchanged for some nails and beads. The captain, Mr. Banks, and other gentlemen now went on shore, accompanied by Tupia, who introduced them with the same kind of ceremonies that had taken place on their landing at Hualahine; after which Capt. Cook took possession of this and the adjacent islands in the name of His Britannic Majesty.

On the 24th, they put to sea, and steered northward within the reef, towards an opening, at the distance of about five or six leagues, in effecting which they were in danger of striking on a rock, the men who sounded, crying out, as a sudden, "the bottom;" but either the master of the ship was mistaken, or the ship went along the edge of a small rock, many of which in the neighbourhood of these islands are as steep as a wall.

On the 26th, they were within a league or two of the island



Engraved by J.E. Hall.

Entharra no Enarra or House of God in Huarine.

Published by Jacques & Wright, Newington Buttes, 1854

of Otoa; but could not get near enough to land, the wind being contrary until the morning, when Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went in the long-boat with the master, to sound a harbour on the east side of the island, which they found safe and convenient. They then went on shore and purchased a large quantity of plantains, and some hogs and fowls. The produce of this island was much the same with that of Ulitea, but it seemed to be more barren. They made sail to the northward, and finding themselves to windward of an harbour on the west side of Ulitea, on the 2nd of August, they anchored in 28 fathom. Many of the natives came off, and brought hogs, fowls and plantains, which were purchased upon very moderate terms. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went on shore and spent the day very agreeably, the natives shewing them very great respect: being conducted to the houses of the chief people, they found those who had ran hastily before them, standing on each side of a long mat spread upon the ground, and the family sitting at the farther end of it. In one house they observed some very young girls dressed in the neatest manner, who kept their places, waiting for the strangers to accost them: these girls were the most beautiful the gentlemen had ever seen. One of them, about seven or eight years old, was dressed in a red gown, having her head decorated with a quantity of platted hair: she was sitting at the upper end of one of their long mats, on which none of the people present presumed to set a foot; and her head was reclined on the arm of a decent looking woman, who appeared to be her nurse; when Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander approached her, she stretched out her hand to receive some beads, which they presented to her, with an air of dignity and gracefulness.

In one of the houses they were entertained with a dance, different from any they had seen before. The performer put upon his head a large piece of wicker-work, about four feet long, of a cylindrical form, covered with feathers, and

edged round with shark's teeth. With this head-dress, he began to dance with a slow motion; frequently moving his head, so as to describe a circle with the top of his wicker cap, and sometimes throwing it so near the faces of the by-standers as to make them jump back: this they considered as an excellent piece of humour, and it always produced a hearty laugh, when practised upon any of the English gentlemen.

On the 3rd, they met with another company of dancers, consisting of six men and two women. These dancers were some of the principal people of the island, and though they were an itinerant troop, they did not, like the strolling parties of Otaheite, receive any gratuity from the by-standers. The women wore a considerable quantity of tamou, or plaited hair, ornamented with flowers of the cape-jessamine, which were stuck in with taste, and made an elegant head-dress. The women's necks, breasts, and arms, were naked; the other parts of their bodies were covered with black cloth, which was fastened close round them, and by the side of each breast, next their arms, was a plume of black feathers, worn like a nosegay. Thus apparelled they advanced sideways, keeping time with great exactness to the drums, which beat quick and loud; soon after they began to shake themselves in a very whimsical manner, and put their bodies into a variety of strange postures, sometimes sitting down, and at others falling with their faces to the ground, and resting on their knees and elbows, moving their fingers at the same time with a quickness scarcely to be credited. Between the dances of the women, a kind of dramatic interlude was performed by the men, consisting of dialogues as well as dancing; but they could not learn the subject of this interlude.

Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander and some other gentlemen, were present at a more regular dramatic entertainment the next day. The performers, who were all men, were divided into two parties, one dressed in brown, and the other

in white, by way of distinction. Tupia being present, informed them that the party in brown, acted the parts of a master and his servants, and the party in white a gang of thieves: the master having produced a basket of meat, which he gave in charge to his servants; which party exhibited a variety of expedients, in endeavouring to steal this basket, and the brown as many in preventing the accomplishment of their design. After some time had been spent in this manner, those to whom the basket was intrusted, laying themselves on the ground round it, pretended to fall asleep; the other party availed themselves of this opportunity, and carried off their booty; the servants awaking soon after, discovered their loss, but made no search after the basket, and began to dance with as much alacrity as before.

On Saturday the 5th, some hogs and fowls, and several large pieces of cloth, many of them from fifty to sixty yards in length, with a quantity of plantains and coconuts, were sent to Capt. Cook, as a present from the Earee Rahie of the island of Bolabola, accompanied with a message, importing that he was then on the island, and intended waiting on the captain. He, however, did not visit them according to his promise, but he sent three young women to demand something in return for his present. After dinner they set out to visit the king on shore, since he did not think proper to come on board; and, as this man had conquered this, and was the dread of all the neighbouring islands, they were greatly disappointed, at finding a poor feeble old dotard, half blind, and sinking under the weight of age and infirmities. He received them without either that state or ceremony which they had hitherto met with among the other chiefs.

On the 9th, having stopped a leak and taken on board a fresh stock of provisions, they sailed out of the harbour, and flattered themselves that the fowls and hogs would be a sufficient supply for the voyage; but in this they were disappointed, for the hogs could not be brought to eat European grain, or any provender which the ship afforded, and they

were under the necessity of killing them immediately; and the fowls all died of a disease in their heads, with which they were seized soon after they had been carried on board. Being detained longer at Ulitea in repairing the ship than they expected, they did not go on shore at Bolabola; but after giving the general name of the Society Islands to the whole group, they pursued their course, standing southwardly, for an island to which they were directed by Tupia, at about 100 leagues distant, which they discovered on the 13th, and were informed by him that it was called Obiterea.

On the 14th they stood in for land, and as they approached the shore, they observed that the Indians were armed with long lances. A number of them were soon drawn together on the beach, and two jumped into the water, endeavouring to gain the boat; but she soon left them, and some others who had made the same attempt, far enough behind.

Having doubled the point where they intended to land, they saw another party of natives standing at the end of it, armed like those whom they had seen before. Preparations being made for landing, a canoe full of Indians came off towards them. Tupia was desired to acquaint them that the English did not intend to offer violence, but meant to traffic with them for nails, which were produced. Upon this they came along side the boat, and accepted of some nails which were given them, and appeared well pleased with the present. In a few minutes, however, several of these people boarded the boat, designing to drag her on shore; but some muskets being discharged over their heads, they leaped into the sea, and having reached the canoe, put back with all possible expedition, joining their countrymen who stood ready to receive them. The boat pursued the fugitives, but the crew finding the surf extremely violent, did not land, but coasted along shore, to find a more convenient place. Soon after the canoe got on shore, a man opposite the boat flourished his weapon, calling out at the same time with a shrill voice of defiance, as Tupia explained it to the English. Not being

able to find a proper landing-place they returned, with an intention to attempt it where the canoe went on shore; whereupon another warrior repeated the defiance: his appearance was more formidable than that of the other; he had a high cap on, made of the tail feathers of a bird, and his body was painted with various colours. When he thought fit to retire, a grave man came forward, and asked Tupia several questions relating to the place from whence the vessel came, as, Who were the persons on board? Whither they were bound? &c. After this it was proposed that the people on board should go on shore and trade with them if the natives would lay aside their weapons; but the latter would not agree to this unless the English would do the like. As this proposal was by no means an equal one, and as perfidy was dreaded, it was not complied with; and, since neither the bay which the Endeavour entered, nor any other part of the island, furnished a good harbour or anchorage, it was resolved not to attempt landing any more, but to sail from hence to the southward.

On the 15th, they sailed with a fine breeze. On the 25th, they celebrated the anniversary of their leaving England, from whence they had been absent one year. A large cheshire cheese which had been preserved for that purpose was brought out, and a barrel of porter tapped, which proved to be as good as they had ever drank.

Land was discovered on Thursday the 7th of October, and in the morning of the 8th, they came to an anchor opposite the mouth of a small river, not above half a league from the coast. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and some other gentlemen, went on shore in the evening, and proceeded to a few small houses in the neighbourhood. Some of the natives who had concealed themselves took advantage of their absence from the boat, and rushed out, advancing and brandishing their long wooden lances. The cockswain fired a musketoon over their heads, but it did not appear to intimidate them, in consequence of which he

levelled his piece and shot one of them dead on the spot. Struck with astonishment at the death of their companion, they retreated to the woods with great precipitation. The report of the gun brought the advanced party back to the boats, and they returned immediately to the ship.

On the 9th, a great number of the natives were seen near the place where the gentlemen landed the preceding evening, and the greatest part of them appeared to be unarmed. The long boat, pinnance, and yawl, being manned with marines and sailors, Capt Cook, with the rest of the gentlemen, and Tupia, went on shore, and landed on the opposite side of the river, over against a spot where several Indians were sitting on the ground. They immediately started up, and began to handle their weapons, each producing either a long pike, or a kind of truncheon made of stone, with a string through the handle of it, which they twisted round their wrists. Tupia was directed to speak to them in his language: and they were agreeably surprised to find that he was understood. Their intentions at first appeared to be hostile, brandishing their weapons in the usual threatening manner; upon which a musquet was fired at some distance from them, and the ball happening to fall into the water, they appeared terrified, and desisted from their menaces. Tupia informed them the English desired to traffic with them for provisions; to which they consented, provided the English crossed over to them to the other side of the river. This was agreed to, upon condition that the natives would quit their weapons; but the most solemn assurances of friendship could not prevail with them to comply. Not thinking it prudent, therefore, to cross the river, the English, in turn, intreated the Indians to come over to them, and after some time prevailed on one of them, so to do. He was presently followed by several others. They did not value the beads and iron that was offered in the way of barter, but proposed to exchange weapons, which being objected to, the Indians endeavoured to snatch the arms,

but in these attempts they were frustrated, and Tupia gave them to understand, that any further offers of violence would be punished with instant death. One of them, nevertheless, had the audacity to snatch Mr. Green's dagger when his back was turned to them, and retiring a few paces flourished it over his head; but his temerity cost him his life, for Mr. Monkhouse fired a musquet loaded with ball, and he instantly dropped. Soon after, though not before they had discharged their pieces loaded with small shot only, the natives retreated slowly up the country, and the English returned to their boats.

This behaviour of the Indians, added to the want of fresh water, induced Capt. Cook to continue his voyage round the bay, with a hope of getting some of the natives on board, that by civil usage he might bring them to be favourable, and settle a good correspondence with them. An event occurred, which, though attended with disagreeable circumstances, promised to facilitate this design. Two canoes appeared, making towards land, and Capt. Cook proposed intercepting them with his boats. One of them got clear off, but the Indians in the other, finding it impossible to escape, began to attack them with their paddles. This compelled the Endeavour's people to fire upon them, when four of the Indians were killed, and the other three, who were young men, jumped into the water, and endeavoured to swim to shore; they were, however, taken up, and conveyed on board. At first they were greatly terrified, thinking they should be killed; but Tupia, by repeated assurances of friendship, removed their apprehensions. Having retired to rest in the evening, they slept very quietly. The next morning preparations were made for sending them to their countrymen, at which they expressed great satisfaction; but finding the boat approaching Capt. Cook's first landing place, they intimated that the inhabitants were foes. The captain, nevertheless, judged it expedient to land near the same spot, resolving at the same time to protect the youths

from any injury that might be offered them. They had scarcely departed on their return to their friends, when two large parties of Indians advanced hastily towards them, upon which they again flew to the English for protection. When the Indians drew near, one of the boys discovered his uncle among them, and a conversation ensued across the river, in which the boy gave a just account of our hospitality, and took great pains to display his finery. After this, the uncle swam across the river, bringing with him a green bough, a token of friendship, which was received as such, and several presents were made him. The three youths, by their own desire, returned to the ship, but as the captain intended to sail the next morning he sent them ashore in the evening, though much against their inclination. Their names were Toahowrange, Korkerange and Maragovete. They informed the English of a particular kind of deer upon the island, and that there were likewise tares, capers, romara, yams, a kind of long pepper, bald cootes, and black-birds.

On the 11th, they set sail in hopes of finding a better anchoring place, and in the afternoon were becalmed; several canoes full of Indians came off from the shore, who received many presents and bartered their clothes, and some of their paddles, for European commodities.

Having finished their traffic, they set off in such a hurry, that they forgot three of their companions, who remained on board all night. These testified their fears and apprehensions, notwithstanding Tupia took great pains to convince them they were in no danger; and about seven o'clock the next morning a canoe came off, with four Indians on board. It was at first with difficulty the Indians in the ship could prevail on those in the canoe to come near them; and not till after the former had assured them that the English did not eat men. The chief came on board, whose face was tattaowed, with a remarkable patoo in his hand, and in this canoe the three Indians left the ship.

On the 12th, several Indians came off in a canoe; they were disfigured in a strange manner, danced and sang, and at times appeared peaceably inclined, but at others to menace hostilities. Notwithstanding Tupia strongly invited them to come on board, none of them would quit the canoe. Whilst the Endeavour was getting clear of the shambles, five canoes full of Indians made off, and seemed to threaten the people on board, by brandishing their lances, and other hostile gestures. A four-pounder loaded with grape-shot, was therefore ordered to be fired, but not pointed at them. This made them drop a-stern. Two more canoes came off whilst the Endeavour lay at anchor, but the Indians behaved very peaceably and quiet, and received several presents, but would not come on board.

On Friday the 13th, they pursued their course. The next morning they had a view of the inland country. Nine canoes full of Indians came off from the shore, and five of them, after having consulted together, pursued the Endeavour, apparently with a hostile design. Tupia was desired to acquaint them, that immediate destruction would ensue if they persevered in their attempts; but words had no influence, and a four-pounder, with grape shot, was fired, to give them some notion of the arms of their opponents. They were terrified at this kind of reasoning, and paddled hastily away. Tupia then hailed the fugitives, and acquainted them that if they came in a peaceable manner, and left their arms behind, no annoyance would be offered them; one of the canoes submitting to the terms, came along side the ship, and received many presents; but the other canoes returning, and persisting in the same menacing behaviour, interrupted this friendly intercourse.

On the 15th, in the afternoon, a canoe with a number of armed Indians came up, and one of them, who was clothed with a black skin, found means to defraud the captain of a piece of red baize, under pretence of bartering the skin he had on for it. As soon as he had got the baize into his pos-

session, instead of giving the skin in return, agreeable to his bargain, he rolled them together and ordered the canoe to put off from the ship, turning a deaf ear to the repeated remonstrances of the captain against his unjust behaviour. After a short time, this canoe, together with the fishing-boats which had put off at the same time, came back to the ship, and trade was again begun. During this second traffic with the Indians, one of them unexpectedly seized Tupia's little boy, Taiyota, and pulling him into his canoe, instantly put off, and paddled away with the utmost speed; several musquets were immediately fired at them, and one of them receiving a wound, they let go the boy, who before was held down in the bottom of the canoe. Taiyota taking advantage of their consternation, immediately jumped into the sea, and swam back towards the Endeavour: he was taken on board without receiving any harm; but his strength was so much exhausted with the weight of his clothes, that it was with great difficulty he reached the ship. In consequence of this attempt to carry off Taiyota, Capt. Cook called the cape off which it happened Cape Kidnappers.

Taiyota, having recovered from his fright, produced a fish, and informed Tupia that he intended to offer it to his Eatua, or God, in gratitude for his happy escape; this being approved of by the other Indian, the fish was cast into the sea.

On Friday, the 20th, they anchored in a bay to which they were invited by the natives in canoes, who behaved very amicably, and pointed to a place where they said they would find plenty of fresh water. Two chiefs came on board; they were dressed in jackets, the one ornamented with tufts of red feathers, the other with dog's-skin. They were presented with linen and some spike nails, but they did not value the last so much as the inhabitants of the other islands. The rest of the Indians traded without the least imposition, and Tupia was directed to acquaint them with their views in coming thither; and promised that they should

receive no injury, if they offered none. In the afternoon the chiefs returned; and towards evening the captain, Dr. Solander, and Mr. Banks went on shore. They were courteously received by the inhabitants, who did not appear in numerous bodies, and in many instances were scrupulously attentive not to give offence. They made an agreeable tour round the bay, and had the pleasure of finding two streams of fresh water. They remained on shore all night, and the next day Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander discovered several birds, among which were quails and large pigeons. Many stages for drying fish were observed, and some houses with fences. They saw dogs with pointed ears, and very ugly. Sweet potatoes, like those which grow in America, were found. The cloth-plant grew spontaneous. In the neighbouring valleys, the lands were laid out in regular plantations; and in the bay they caught plenty of crabs, cray-fish, and horse-mackarel, larger than those upon the English coasts. The low lands were planted with cocoas; the hollows with gourds; but as to the woods, they were almost impassable, on account of the number of supple-jacks, which grew there. They went into several of the houses belonging to the natives, and met with a very civil reception.

The women of this place paint their faces with a mixture of red ochre and oil, which, as they were very plain, rendered them in appearance more homely. This kind of daubing being generally wet upon their cheeks and foreheads, was easily transferred to those who saluted them, as was frequently visible upon the noses of our people. The faces of the men were not in general painted; but they were daubed with dry red ochre from head to foot; their apparel not excepted. Though in personal cleanliness they were inferior to those of Otaheite, yet in some particulars they surpassed them.

On the 22d, in the evening, being Sunday, they weighed anchor and put to sea, but the wind being contrary they stood for another bay a little to the south. They found a

watering-place in a small cove a little within the south point of the bay, distant about a mile.

On Monday, the 23d, in the afternoon, they went on shore, and found the water extremely good, also plenty of wood; and the natives shewed them much civility. In a valley between two very high hills, they saw a curious rock that formed a large arch. This cavern was in length seventy feet, in breadth thirty, and near fifty in height, commanding a view of the bay, and the hills on the other side, which had a very pleasing effect. Indeed the whole country is agreeable beyond description, and if properly cultivated would be a most delightful spot. Mr. Banks and the doctor, among other trees that yielded a fine transparent gum, discovered the cabbage-tree, the produce whereof, when boiled, was very good.

On their return they met an old man, who entertained them with the military exercise of the natives, which he performed with the patoo-patoo and the lance. The former has been already mentioned, and is used as a battle axe: the latter is eighteen or twenty feet in length, made of extreme hard wood, and sharpened at each end. A stake was substituted for a supposed enemy. The old warrior first attacked him with his lance, advancing with a most furious aspect. Having pierced him, the patoo-patoo was used to demolish his head, at which he struck with a force which would at one blow have split any man's skull. At the watering place the Indians sung their war song, which was a strange medley of sighing, shouting, and grimace, at which the women assisted. The next day, Capt. Cook and other gentlemen went upon an island at the entrance of the bay, and met with a canoe which was 67 feet in length, six in breadth, and four in height; her bottom, which was sharp, consisted of three trunks of trees, and the sides and head were curiously carved.

They also came to a large unfinished house. The posts which supported it were ornamented with carvings, that did

not appear to be done upon the spot; and as the inhabitants seem to set great value on works of this kind, future navigators might find great advantage in carrying such articles to trade with. Though the posts of this house were judged to be brought here, the people seemed to have a taste for carving, as their boats, paddles, and the tops of walking-sticks evinced. Their favourite figure is a volute or spiral, which is sometimes single, double, or triple, and is done with great exactness, though the only instruments were an axè made of stone, and a chisel. Their taste is extremely whimsical and extravagant, scarcely ever imitating nature. Their huts are built under trees in the form of an oblong square; the door low on the side, and the windows are at the ends; reeds covered with thatch compose the walls; the beams of the eaves, which come to the ground, are covered with thatch; most of the houses had been deserted, through fear of the English, upon their landing.

There are many beautiful parrots, and great numbers of birds of different kinds, particularly one, whose note resembles the European black-bird; but there are no ground fowl, or poultry, nor any quadrupeds, except rats and dogs; and these were not numerous. The dogs are considered as delicate food, and their skins serve as ornaments to their apparel. There is a great variety of fish in the bay, shell and cray-fish are very plentiful, some of the latter weigh near twelve pounds.

October the 29th, they set sail from this bay, and sailing to the northward, they fell in with a small island about a mile distant from the north-east point of the main, and this being the most eastern part of it, the captain named it East Cape, and the Island East Island. Continuing under sail, they came to an island which they named White Island.

On the 1st of November, 40 canoes came off as before, threatening to attack the English. One of their chiefs flourished his pike, and made several harangues, seeming to bid defiance to those on board the vessel. At last, after

repeated invitations, they came close along-side ; but instead of shewing a disposition to trade, the haranguing chief took up a stone, which he threw against the ship, and they immediately after seized their arms. They were informed by Tupia, of the dreadful consequences of commencing hostilities ; but this admonition they seemed little to regard. A piece of cloth, however, happening to attract their eyes, they began to be more mild and reasonable. A quantity of cray-fish, muscles, and conger-eels were now purchased. No fraud was attempted by this company of Indians, but some others that came after them, took goods from the vessel without making proper returns. As one of them, that had rendered himself remarkable for these practices, and seemed proud of his skill in them, was putting off with his canoe, a musket was fired over his head, which circumstance produced good order for the present ; yet, when they began to traffic with the sailors, they renewed their frauds ; and one of them was bold enough to seize some linen that was hung to dry, and run away with it. In order to induce him to return, a musket was first fired over his head, but this not answering the end, he was shot in the back with small shot, yet he still persevered in his design. This being perceived by his countrymen, they dropped a-stern, and set up the song of defiance. In consequence of their behaviour, though they made no preparations to attack the vessel, the captain gave orders to fire a four pounder, and its effects on the water so terrified them, that they retreated with precipitation.

On the 4th, at day break, no less than twelve canoes made their appearance, containing near two hundred men, armed with spears, lances, and stones, who seemed determined to attack the ship, and would have boarded her, had they known on what quarter they could best have made their attack. While they were paddling round her, which kept the crew upon the watch in the rain, Tupia, at the request of the captain, used a number of dissuasive arguments, to prevent their carrying their designs into execution ; but

nothing could pacify them till some muskets were fired : they then laid aside their hostile intentions,* and began to trade : yet they could not refrain from their fraudulent practices ; for after they had fairly bartered two of their weapons, they would not deliver up a third, for which they had received cloth, and only laughed at those who demanded an equivalent. The offender was wounded with small shot ; but his countrymen took not the least notice of him, and continued to trade without any discomposure. Indeed theft and chicane were as prevalent among the inhabitants of New Zealand, as those of Otaheite.

On the 5th, in the morning, the Indians came off to the ship again, and behaved much better than they had done the preceding day. An old man in particular named Tojawa informed them that they were often visited by freebooters from the north, who stripped them of all that they could lay their hands on, and at times made captives of their wives and children ; and that being ignorant who the English were upon their first arrival, the natives had been much alarmed, but were now satisfied of their good intentions. He added, that for their security against those plunderers, their houses were built contiguous to the tops of the rocks, where they could better defend themselves. Probably their poverty and misery may be ascribed to the ravages of those who frequently strip them of every necessary of life. Having dispatched the long-boat and pinnace into the bay to haul and dredge for fish with little success, the Indians testified their friendship and brought great quantities of fish dressed and dried, which though indifferent, they purchased, that trade might not be discouraged. They also supplied them with wood and good water. While the English were out with their guns, the people who staid by the boats saw two of the natives fight. The battle was begun with their lances ; but some old men taking these away, they were obliged to decide the quarrel like Englishmen, with their fists.

On the 8th, they were visited by several canoes, in one of which was Tojava, who descrying two canoes, hastened back again to the shore, apprehending they were free-booters; but finding his mistake, he soon returned, and the Indians supplied as much excellent fish as served the whole ship's company. A variety of plants were collected by Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, who had never observed any of the kind before: they staid on shore till near dark, when they observed how the natives disposed of themselves during the night. They had no shelter but a few shrubs. The men lay near the sea in a semicircular form; and the women and children most distant from it. They had no king whose sovereignty they acknowledged, a circumstance not to be met with on any other parts of the coast.

Early in the morning of the 9th, the Indians brought a prodigious quantity of mackarel, of which one sort were exactly the same with those caught in England. They sold them at a low rate and they were not less welcome to them on that account. These canoes were succeeded by others loaded with the same sort of fish; and the cargoes purchased were so great, that the ship's company cured as many as would serve for a month's provision.

This being a clear day, Mr. Green, the astronomer, landed with some of the gentlemen to observe the transit of Mercury. The observation of the ingress was made by Mr. Green alone, and Capt. Cook took the sun's altitude to ascertain the time. While the observation was making, a canoe, with various commodities on board, came alongside the ship; and Mr. Gore, the officer who had then the command, being desirous of encouraging them to traffic, produced a piece of Otaheitean cloth, of more value than any they had yet seen, which was immediately seized by one of the Indians, who obstinately refused either to return it or give any thing in exchange: he paid dearly however for his temerity, being shot dead on the spot. His death alarmed all the rest; they fled with great precipitancy,

and could not be induced to renew their traffic. But when the Indians on shore had heard the particulars related by Tojava, who greatly condemned the conduct of the deceased, they seemed to think that he merited his fate.

This transaction happened, as has been observed, whilst the observation was making on the transit of Mercury, when the weather was so favourable, that the whole transit was viewed without a cloud intervening. In consequence of this observation being made here, this bay was called Mercury Bay.

The Indians sup before sun-set, when they eat fish and birds baked or roasted; they roast them upon a stick, stuck in the ground near the fire. A female mourner was present at one of their suppers; she sat on the ground and wept incessantly, at the same time repeating some sentences in a doleful manner, but which Tupia could not explain; at the termination of each period she cut herself with a shell upon her breast, her hands, or her face; notwithstanding this spectacle greatly affected the gentlemen, all the Indians who sat by her, except one, were quite unmoved. The gentlemen saw some, who from the depth of their scars must, upon these occasions, have wounded themselves more violently.

Great plenty of oysters were procured from a bed which had been discovered, and they proved exceedingly good. Next day the ship was visited by two canoes, with unknown Indians; after some invitation they came on board, and they all trafficked without fraud. They sailed from this island after having taken possession of it in the name of the king of Great Britain, on the 15th of November.

On the 18th, in the morning, the Endeavour steered between the main and an island, which seemed very fertile, and as extensive as Ulietea. Several canoes filled with Indians came along-side, and they sang their war song, but the Endeavour's people paying them no attention, they threw a volley of stones, and then paddled away; however

they presently returned their insults. Tupia spoke to them, but they answered by brandishing their weapons, intimating, that they would destroy them all. They cast anchor in the evening, and early the next morning sailed up an inlet. Soon after two canoes came off, and some of the Indians came on board: they knew Tojava, and called Tupia by his name. Having received some presents, they retired peaceably, and apparently highly gratified.

On Monday, the 20th, after having run five leagues they came to anchor in a bay called by the natives Ooahaouragee. Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, Dr. Solander, and others set off in the pinnance to examine it. They landed on the west side to examine the lofty trees that adorned its banks. At the entrance of a wood they met with a tree ninety-eight feet high from the ground, quite straight, and nineteen feet in circumference; and as they advanced they found others still larger. Capt. Cook gave to this river the name of Thames, it having a resemblance to the river of that name in England.

On the 22nd, in the morning, they made sail, and kept plying till the flood obliged them once more to come to an anchor. The captain and Dr. Solander went on shore to the west, but made no observations worth relating. After these gentlemen departed, the ship was surrounded with canoes, which kept Mr. Banks on board, that he might trade with the Indians, who bartered their arms and clothes for paper, taking no unfair advantages. But though they were in general honest in their dealings, one of them took a fancy to a half-minute glass, and being detected in secreting it, he was punished with the cat-o'-nine-tails. The Indians interfered to stop the current of justice; but being opposed, they got their arms from their canoes, and some of the people attempted to get on board; but being informed of the nature of the intended punishment, they appeared satisfied, and the criminal not only received a dozen, but afterwards a good drubbing from an old man, who was thought to be

his father. On the 24th, they kept steering along the shore, anchoring between the tides. No inhabitants were visible, but from the fires perceived at night, it was concluded to be inhabited.

On the 26th, towards night, seven large canoes came off with about two hundred men. Some of the Indians came on board, and testified that they had an account of their arrival. These were followed by two larger canoes, adorned with carving. The Indians, after holding a conference, came along-side the vessel. They were armed with various weapons, and seemed to be of the higher order. Their patoo-patoos were made of stone and whale-bone, ornamented with dog's hair, and were held in high estimation.

On the 29th, having weathered a point of land which the captain named Cape Brett, they bore away to leeward, and got into a large bay, where they anchored on the south-west side of several islands, and the ship was soon surrounded by thirty-three large canoes, containing nearly three hundred Indians, all armed. Some of them were admitted on board, and Captain Cook gave a piece of broad cloth to one of the chiefs, and some small presents to the others. They traded peaceably for some time, being terrified at the fire arms, with the effects of which they were not unacquainted; but whilst the captain was at dinner, on a signal given by one of the chiefs, all the Indians quitted the ship, and attempted to tow away the buoy; a musket was now fired over them, but it produced no effect; small shot was then fired at them, but it did not reach them. A musket loaded with ball, was therefore ordered to be fired, and Otewoowgoow (son of one of the chiefs) was wounded in the thigh by it, which induced them immediately to throw the buoy overboard. To complete their confusion a round shot was fired, which reached the shore, and as soon as they landed they ran to search for it. If they had been under any kind of discipline, they might have proved a formidable enemy.

The captain, Dr. Banks, and Mr. Solander, landed upon the island. The gentlemen were in a small cove, and were presently surrounded by near 400 armed Indians; but the captain not suspecting any hostile design on the part of the natives, remained peaceably disposed. The gentlemen, marching towards them, drew a line, intimating that they were not to pass it. They did not infringe upon this boundary for some time; but at length they sang the song of defiance, and began to dance, whilst a party endeavoured to drag the Endeavour's boat on shore; these signals for an attack being followed by the Indians breaking in upon the line, the gentlemen judged it time to defend themselves, and accordingly the captain fired his musket, loaded with small shot, which was seconded by Mr. Banks discharging his piece, and two of the men followed his example. This threw the Indians into confusion, and they retreated, but were rallied again by one of their chiefs, who shouted and waved his patoo-patoo. The doctor now pointed his musket at this hero, and hit him: this stopped his career, and he took to flight with the other Indians. They retired to an eminence in a collected body, and seemed dubious whether they should return to the charge. They were now at too great a distance for a ball to reach them; but these operations being observed from the ship, she brought her broadside to bear, and by firing over them, soon dispersed them. The Indians had in this skirmish two of their people wounded, but none killed. Peace being again restored, the gentlemen began to gather celery and other herbs, but suspecting that some of the natives were lurking about with evil designs, they repaired to a cave, which was at a small distance. Here they found the chief who had that day received a present from the captain; he came forth with his wife and brother, and solicited their clemency. It appeared that one of the wounded Indians was a brother to this chief, who was under great anxiety lest the wound should prove mortal; but his grief was in a great degree alleviated, when

he was made acquainted with the different effects of small shot and ball; and he was also assured, that upon any further hostilities being committed, ball would be used. This interview terminated very cordially, after some trifling presents were made to the chief and his companions.

Being again in their boats, they rowed to another part of the island, when landing, and gaining an eminence, they had a very agreeable and romantic view of a great number of small islands, well inhabited and cultivated. The inhabitants of an adjacent town approached unarmed, and testified great humility and submission. Some of the party on shore who had been very violent for having the Indians punished for their fraudulent conduct, were now guilty of trespasses equally reprehensible, having forced into some of the plantations, and dug up potatoes. The captain, upon this occasion, shewed strict justice in punishing each offender with lashes: one of them being refractory upon this occasion, and complaining of the hardship, thinking an Englishman had a right to plunder an Indian with impunity, received six additional lashes for his reward.

On Tuesday, the 5th of December, in the morning, they weighed anchor, but were soon becalmed, and a strong current setting towards the shore, were driven in with such rapidity, that they expected every moment to be run upon breakers, which appeared above water not more than a cable's length distance, and they were so near the land, that Tupia, who was totally ignorant of the danger, held a conversation with the Indians, who were standing on the beach. They were happily relieved, however, from this alarming situation by a fresh breeze suddenly springing up from the shore.

On the 7th, several canoes put off and followed the Endeavour, but a light breeze springing up, they did not wait for them. On the 17th, they came off the northern extremity of New Zealand, which Capt. Cook named North Cape. It lies in latitude 34 deg. 22 min. south, and in 165 deg.

55 min. west longitude. On the 27th, it blew a storm from the east, accompanied with heavy showers of rain, which compelled them to bring the ship to, under her mainsail. The gale continued till the 28th, when it fell about two o'clock in the morning; but at eight increased to a hurricane, with a prodigious sea. At noon the gale somewhat abated, but with heavy squalls. On Saturday, the 30th, they saw land bearing north-east, which they concluded to be Maria Van Diemen; and it corresponded with the account they had received of it from the Indians.

January the 1st, 1770, at six in the morning they tacked, and stood to the eastward; and on the 3rd, they saw land again: it was flat, trending away to the south-east, beyond the reach of the naked eye. It is remarkable that the Endeavour was three weeks in making ten leagues to the westward, and five weeks in getting fifty leagues, for at this time it was so long since they passed Cape Brett.

On the 9th, they saw a point remarkably high to the east-north-east, which the captain named Albatross point. At about two leagues distance from this point, to the north-east, they discovered a remarkable high mountain, equal in height to that of Teneriffe. Its summit was covered with snow, and it was named Mount Egmont. The country round it is exceedingly pleasant. At this place Capt. Cook proposed to careen the ship, and also to take in a fresh supply of wood and water; accordingly on the fifteenth, at day break, they steered for an inlet, when, it being almost a calm, the ship was carried by a current, or the tide, within a cable's length of the shore; but by the assistance of the boats she got clear. While effecting this, they saw a sea-lion, answering the description given of a male one in Commodore Anson's voyages. At two they anchored in a safe cove on the north-west side of the bay, and moored in eleven fathom water with a soft ground. In passing the point of the bay they observed an armed centinel on duty, who was twice relieved. Four canoes came off for

the purpose, as was imagined, of reconnoitering; for none of the Indians would venture on board, except an old man who seemed of elevated rank. His countrymen expostulated with him, laid hold of him, and took great pains to prevent his coming on board, but they could not divert him from his purpose. He was received with the utmost hospitality. Tupia and the old man joined noses, according to the custom of the country, and having received several presents, he retired to his associates, who began to dance and laugh, and then retired to their fortified village. Capt. Cook and other gentlemen now went on shore, where they met with plenty of wood, and a fine stream of excellent water, and on hauling the seine were very successful, having caught three hundred weight of fish in a short time.

On the 16th, the crew were employed in careening the ship, when three canoes came off, with a number of Indians, and brought several of their women with them; which circumstance was thought to be a favourable presage of their peaceable disposition; but they soon gave proofs to the contrary, by attempting to stop the long boat; upon which Captain Cook had recourse to the old expedient of firing shot over their heads, which intimidated them for the present. Tupia asked them if they had ever before seen a ship so large as the Endeavour? to which they replied that they had not, nor ever heard that such a vessel had ever been on their coast. In all the coves of this bay they found plenty of fish. The inhabitants catch their fish in the following manner: their net is cylindrical, extended by several hoops at the bottom, and contracted at the top. The fish going in to feed upon the bait are caught in great abundance. There are also birds of various kinds, and in great numbers. An herb, a species of *Philadelphus*, was used here instead of tea, and a plant called *Teegoomme*, resembling rug-cloaks, served the natives for garments. The environs of the cove where the Endeavour lay were covered entirely with wood, so that it is with difficulty passengers can pursue their way.

The women who accompanied the men in their canoes, wore a head dress which had no where been met with before ; it was composed of black feathers, tied in a bunch on the top of the head, which greatly increased their height. The captain, Mr. Banks, and the doctor visited another cove, about two miles from the ship. There was a family of Indians who appeared greatly alarmed at their approach. They found, by the provisions of this family, that they were cannibals, there being several human bones that had lately been dressed and picked. They made no secret of this abominable custom, but answered Tupia, who was desired to ascertain the fact, with great composure, that his conjectures were just, that they were the bones of a man, and testified by signs, that they thought human flesh delicious food. There was a woman in this family whose arms and legs were cut in a shocking manner, and it appeared that she had thus wounded herself because her husband had lately been killed and eaten by the enemy.

Some of the Indians brought four skulls one day to sell, which they rated at a very high price. The gentlemen likewise saw the bail of a canoe, which was made of a human skull. Indeed their ideas were so horrid and brutal, that they seemed to pride themselves upon their cruelty and barbarity, and took a particular pleasure in shewing the manner in which they killed their enemies; it being considered as meritorious to be expert at this destruction. The method used was to knock them down with their patoo-patoos, and then rip up their bellies.

A great number of birds usually began their melody about two o'clock in the morning, and serenaded them till the time of rising. This harmony was very agreeable, as the ship lay at a convenient distance from the shore to hear it. These feathered choristers, like the English nightingales, never sing in the day time.

On the 20th, in the morning, Mr. Banks purchased of the old Indian a man's head, which he seemed very unwilling to

part with ; the skull had been fractured by a blow, and the brains were extracted, and, like the others, it was preserved from putrefaction. From the care with which they kept these skulls, and the reluctance with which they bartered any, they were considered as trophies of war, and testimonials of their valour. Some of the company in their excursion met with fortifications that had not the advantage of an elevated situation, but were surrounded by two or three wide ditches, with a draw-bridge, such as, though simple in its construction, would answer every purpose against the arms of the natives. Within these ditches is a fence, made with stakes fixed in the earth. Not only those who are killed, but the prisoners likewise, are devoured by the victors.

On the 24th, they visited a hippah, which was situated on a very high rock, hollow underneath, forming a very fine natural arch, one side of which joined the land and the other rose out of the sea. The inhabitants received them with great civility, and very readily showed every thing that was curious. From a conversation that Tupia had with these people, a discovery was made, that an officer being in a boat near this village, and some canoes coming off, made him imagine they had hostile designs, and he fired upon them with ball, which made them retire with great precipitation, but they could not effect their retreat before one of them was wounded. What made this rash action the more to be lamented was, that the Indians gave afterwards every possible assurance that their intentions upon this occasion were entirely friendly.

On the 25th, the captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander went on shore to shoot, when they met with a numerous family, who were among the creeks catching fish: they behaved very civilly, and received some trifling presents from the gentlemen, who were loaded by way of return with the kisses and embraces of both sexes, young and old. The next day, being the 26th, they made another excursion in

the boat, in order to take a view of the strait which passes between the eastern and western seas. To this end they attained the summit of a hill, but it being hazy in the horizon, they could see but a small distance to the east; however, it was resolved to explore the passage in the ship when they should put to sea. Before their departure from this hill, they erected a pyramid of stones, and left some musket-balls, small shot, and beads, that were likely to stand the test of time, and would be memorials, that this place had been visited by Europeans. On their return, having descended the hill, they made a hearty meal of the shags and fish which were dressed by the boat's crew. They were respectfully received by another Indian family, who added to their civilities, strong expressions of kindness and pleasure. On the 27th and 28th, they were engaged in making necessary repairs, catching fish, and getting the Endeavour ready to continue her voyage.

On Tuesday, the 30th, some of the people, who were sent out early in the morning to gather celery, met with about twenty Indians, among whom were five or six women, whose husbands had lately been made captives. They sat down upon the ground together, and cut many parts of their bodies in a most shocking manner with shells and sharp stones, in testimony of their excessive grief. But what made the horrid spectacle more terrible, was, that the male Indians who were with them paid not the least attention to it, but with the greatest unconcern imaginable employed themselves in repairing their huts.

The carpenter having prepared two posts, they were set up as memorials, being inscribed with the date of the year, the month, and the ship's name. One of them was erected at the watering-place, with the union flag hoisted on the top; and the other in the island that lies nearest the sea, called by the natives Motuara; and the inhabitants being informed that these posts were set up to acquaint other adventurers that the Endeavour had touched at this place, they pro-

mised never to destroy them. Captain Cook named this inlet Queen Charlotte's Sound.

On the 5th of February, they got under sail, but the wind soon falling, they came to anchor a little above Motuara. Topoa here paid them a farewell visit. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went again on shore in search of natural curiosities, and by accident met with a very amiable Indian family, among whom was a widow, and a pretty youth about ten years of age. The woman mourned for her husband, according to the custom of the country, with tears of blood; and the child, by the death of his father, was the proprietor of the land where the Endeavour's people had cut wood. The mother and son were sitting upon mats; the rest of the family of both sexes, about seventeen in number, sat round them. They behaved with the utmost hospitality and courtsey, and endeavoured to prevail on the gentlemen to stay all night; but expecting the ship to sail, they could not accept of their pressing invitation. This family seemed the most intelligent of any Indians they had hitherto conversed with.

Monday the 6th, in the morning, the Endeavour sailed out of the bay, which, from the savage custom of eating human flesh, the ship's company called Cannibal Bay. The number of inhabitants is not greater than four hundred, who are scattered along the coast, and upon any appearance of danger retire to their hippahs, or forts. They are poor, and their canoes without ornaments. The traffic with them was wholly for fish; but they had some knowledge of iron, which the natives of other parts had not. English broadcloth, and red kersey they highly esteemed.

Leaving the sound, the Endeavour stood over to the eastward, and was carried by the current close to one of the islands at the entrance of Queen Charlotte's Sound. They were every moment in danger of being dashed to pieces against the rock, but after having veered out 150 fathoms of cable, the ship was brought up, when the rocks

were not more than two cables length distant. In this situation they remained, being obliged to wait for the tide's ebbing, which did not take place till after midnight. On the 7th, at eight o'clock in the morning, they weighed anchor, and a fresh breeze with a tide of ebb hurried them through the streight with great swiftness. The next morning they were off Cape Palliser, and found that the land stretched away to the north-eastward of Cape Turnagain. In the afternoon, three canoes came off, having several Indians on board. These made a good appearance, and were ornamented like those on the northern coast. There was no difficulty in persuading them to come on board, where they demeaned themselves very civilly, and a mutual exchange of presents took place. Their dress resembled that of the natives of Hudson's Bay. One old man was tataowed in a very particular manner, he had likewise a red streak across his nose, and his hair and beard was remarkable for their whiteness. The upper garment that he wore was made of flax, and had a wrought border : under this was a sort of petticoat of a cloth called Aoree Waow. Teeth and green stones decorated his ears ; he spoke in a soft and low key, and it was concluded, from his deportment, that he was a person of distinguished rank among his countrymen.

On the 14th, about sixty Indians, in four double canoes, came within a stone's throw of the ship. As they surveyed her with surprize, Tupia endeavoured to persuade them to come nearer, but this they could not be prevailed on to do. On this account the island was denominated the island of Lookers-on.

On the 4th of March, several whales and seals were seen ; on the 9th, they saw a ledge of rocks, and soon after another ledge at three leagues distance from the shore, which they passed in the night to the northward, and at day break observed the others under their bows ; and in consideration of their having been so nearly caught among these, they were

denominated the traps. Proceeding northward, the next day they fell in with a barren rock, about fifteen miles from the main land, which was very high, and appeared about a mile in circumference; this was named Solander's Island.

On the 13th, they discovered a bay containing several islands, where, if there was depth of water, shipping might find shelter from all winds. Dusky Bay was the appellation given to it by the captain, and five high peaked rocks, for which it was remarkable, caused the point to be called Five Fingers. They had now passed the whole north-west coast of **Tovy Poenamoo**, which had nothing worthy observation but a ridge of naked and barren rocks covered with snow, some of which might probably have remained there ever since the creation. As far as the eye could reach, the prospects were in general wild, craggy, and desolate. Having sailed round the whole of this uncomfortable country by the 27th, they determined to depart. Capt. Cook therefore went on shore in the long-boat, and having found a place proper for mooring the ship, and a good watering place, the crew began to fill their casks, while the carpenter was employed in cutting wood. The captain, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, went in the pinnace to examine the bay, and the neighbouring country. Landing there, they found several plants of a species which was before unknown to them: no inhabitants appeared; but they saw several huts which seemed to have been deserted a long time before. All the wood and water being taken on board, the vessel was ready to sail by the time that they returned in the evening, and it was resolved to steer for the coast of New Holland, and return by the way of the East Indies.

On the 31st they took their departure from an eastern point they named Cape Farewell; called the bay out of which they sailed, Admiralty Bay; and two capes, Cape Stephens and Cape Jackson, (the names of the two secretaries of the Admiralty Board.) They called a bay between the island and Cape Farewell, Blind Bay,

which was supposed to have been the same that was called Murderer's Bay by Tasman, the first discoverer of New Zealand; but though he named it Staten Island, wishing to take possession of it for the States General, yet being attacked by the Indians, he never went on shore to effect his purpose. This was in December, 1642. The coast, being now more accurately examined, is discovered to consist of two islands, which were before thought to be a part of the southern continent so much sought after.

They are situated between the 34th and 48th degrees of south latitude, and between the 181st and 194th degrees of west longitude. The northern island is called Eahienomauwee, and the southern is named Tovy Poenamoo by the natives. The former, though mountainous in some places, is stored with wood, and in every valley there is a rivulet. The soil in those valleys is light, but fertile and well adapted for the plentiful production of all the fruits, plants, and corn of Europe.

The sea that washes these islands abounds with delicate and wholesome fish. Whenever the vessel came to anchor, enough were caught with hook and line only, to supply the whole ship's company; and when they fished with nets, every mess in the ship salted as much as supplied them for several weeks. There were many sorts of fish here which they had never before seen, and which the sailors named according to their fancies.

Here are forests abounding with trees, producing large, straight, and clean timber. One tree about the size of our oak, was distinguished by a scarlet flower, composed of several fibres, and another which grows in swampy ground, very straight and tall, bearing small bunches of berries, and a leaf resembling that of the yew-tree. About 400 species of plants were found, all of which are unknown in England, except garden night-shade, sow-thistle, two or three kinds of fern, and one or two sorts of grass. They found wild celery, and a kind of cresses in great abundance on the sea

shore ; and of eatable plants raised by cultivation, only co-coas, yams, and sweet potatoes. There are plantations of many acres of these yams and potatoes. The inhabitants likewise cultivate the gourd ; and the Chinese paper mulberry-tree is to be found, but in no abundance.

There is only one shrub or tree which produces fruit, which is a kind of berry almost tasteless ; but they have a plant which answers all the uses of hemp and flax. There are two kinds of this plant, the leaves of one of which are yellow, and the other a deep red, and both of them resemble the leaves of flags. Of these leaves they make lines and cordage, much stronger than any thing of the kind in Europe. These leaves they likewise split into breadths, and by tying slips together, form their fishing nets. Their common apparel, by a simple process, is made from these leaves, and their finer, by another preparation, is made from the fibres. This plant is found both in high and low ground, in dry mould and in deep bogs ; but it grows largest in the latter.

The natives are as large as the largest Europeans. Their complexions are brown, but little more so than that of a Spaniard. They are full of flesh, but not lazy and luxurious ; and are stout and well shaped. The women possess not that delicacy which distinguishes the English ladies, and as the dress of both sexes is similar, their voice chiefly distinguishes them from the men. The men are active in a high degree ; their hair is black, and their teeth are white and even. The features of both sexes are regular ; they enjoy perfect health, and live to an advanced age. They appeared to be of a gentle disposition, and treat each other with the utmost kindness ; but they are perpetually at war, every little district being at enmity with the rest. This is owing, most probably, to the want of food in sufficient quantities at certain times. Notwithstanding the custom of eating their enemies, the circumstances and temper of these people is in favour of those who might settle among them as a colony.

The inhabitants of New Zealand are as modest and ro-

served in their behaviour as the most polite nations of Europe. The women, indeed, were not dead to the softer impressions; but their mode of consent was in their idea as harmless as the consent to marriage with us, and equally binding for the stipulated time. If any of the English addressed one of their women, he was informed that the consent of her friends must be obtained, which usually followed on his making a present. This done, he was obliged to treat his temporary wife as tenderly as we do in England. A gentleman who sailed in the Endeavour, having addressed a family of some rank, received an answer, of which the following is an exact translation. "Any of these young ladies will think themselves honoured by your addresses, but you must first make me a present, and you must then come and sleep with us on shore, for day-light must by no means be a witness of what passes between you."

These Indians anoint their hair with oil melted from the fat of fish or birds. The poorer people use that which is rancid, so that they smell very disagreeable; but those of superior rank use that which is fresh. They wear combs made of bone and wood, which is considered as an ornament when stuck upright in the hair. The men tie their hair in a bunch on the crown of the head, and adorn it with the feathers of birds, which they likewise sometimes place on each side of the temples. They commonly wear short beards. The hair of the women sometimes flows over their shoulders, and sometimes is cut short. Both sexes, but the men more than the women, mark their bodies with black stains, called amoco. In general the women only stain the lips, but sometimes mark other parts with black patches; the men, on the contrary, put on additional marks from year to year, so that those who are very ancient are almost covered. Exclusive of the amoco, they mark themselves with furrows. These furrows make a hideous appearance, the edges being indented, and the whole quite black. The ornaments of the face are drawn in the spiral form, with equal elegance and

correctness, both cheeks being marked exactly alike ; while paintings on their bodies resemble filigree work, and the foliage in old chased ornaments ; but no two faces or bodies are painted exactly after the same model. The people of New Zealand frequently leave the breech free from these marks, which the inhabitants of Otaheite adorned beyond any other. These Indians likewise paint their bodies by rubbing them with red ochre, either dry or mixed with oil.

Their dress is formed of the leaves of the flag split into slips, which are interwoven and made into a kind of matting ; the ends, which are seven or eight inches in length, hanging out on the upper side. One piece of this matting being tied over the shoulders, reaches to the knees ; the other piece being wrapped round the waist, falls almost to the ground. The men wear the lower garment only at particular times.

They have two kinds of cloth besides the coarse matting or shag above-mentioned ; one of which is as coarse, but beyond all comparison stronger, than the English canvass ; the other, which is formed of the fibres of the plant, drawn into threads which cross and bind each other, resembles the matting on which our dishes are placed at table.

They make borders of different colours to both these sorts of cloth, resembling girls samplers, and they are finished with neatness and elegance. What they consider as the most ornamental part of their dress is the fur of dogs, which they cut into strips, and sew on different parts of their apparel. As dogs are not plentiful, they dispose their strips with economy. They have a few dresses ornamented with feathers ; and one man was seen covered wholly with those of the red parrot.

The women never tie their hair on the top of their head, nor adorn it with feathers ; and are less anxious about dress than the men. Their lower garment is bound tight round them, excepting when they go out fishing, and then they are careful that the men shall not see them. It once happened that some of the ship's crew surprised them in this

situation, when some of them hid themselves among the rocks, and the rest kept their bodies under water till they had formed a girdle and apron of weeds; and their whole behaviour manifested the most refined ideas of female modesty.

The ears of both sexes were bored, and the holes stretched so as to admit a man's finger. The ornaments of their ears are feathers, cloth, bones, and sometimes bits of wood; a great many of them made use of the nails given them by the English, for this purpose, and the women sometimes adorn their ears with the white down of the albetross, which they spread before and behind, the whole in a large bunch. They likewise hang to their ears by strings, chisels, bodkins, the teeth of dogs, and the teeth and nails of their deceased friends. The arms and ancles of the women are adorned with shells and bones, or any thing else through which they can pass a string. The men wear a piece of green talc or whalebone, with the resemblance of a man carved on it, hanging to a string round the neck. One man had the gristle of his nose perforated, and a feather passing through it, projected over each cheek.

These people show less ingenuity in the structure of their houses than in any thing else belonging to them; they are from sixteen to twenty-four feet long, ten or twelve wide, and six or eight in height. The frame is of slight sticks of wood, and the walls and roof are made of dry grass, pretty firmly compacted. Some of them are lined with the bark of trees, and the ridge of the house is formed by a pole, which runs from one end to the other. The door is only high enough to admit a person crawling on hands and knees, and the roof is sloping. There is a square hole near the door, serving both for window and chimney, near which is the fire place. A plank is placed over the door, adorned with a sort of carving, and this they consider as an ornamental piece of furniture. The side walls and roof projecting two or three feet beyond the walls at each end, form a sort of portico,

where benches are placed to sit on. The fire is made in the middle of a hollow square on the floor, which is inclosed with wood or stone. They sleep near the walls, where the ground is covered with straw for their beds. Some who can afford it, whose families are large, have three or four houses inclosed in their court-yard. Their clothes, arms, feathers, some ill made tools, and a chest, in which all these are deposited, form all the furniture of the inside of the house. Their hammers to beat fern-root, gourds to hold water, and baskets to contain provisions, are placed without the house. One house was found near forty feet long, twenty wide, and fourteen high. Its sides were adorned with carved planks of workmanship superior to the rest; but the building appeared to have been left unfinished. Though the people sleep warm enough at home, they seem to despise the inclemency of the weather, when they go in search of fish or fern roots. Sometimes, indeed, they place a small defence to windward, but frequently sleep undressed, with their arms placed round them, without the least shelter whatever.

The canoes of this country are not unlike the whale boats of New England, being long and narrow. The larger sort seem built for war, and will hold from 30 to 100 men. One of those of Tolaga measured near seventy feet in length, six in width, and four in depth. It was sharp at the bottom, and consisted of three lengths, about two or three inches thick, and tied firmly together with strong plaiting; each side was found of one entire plank, about twelve inches broad, and about an inch and a half thick, which was fitted to the bottom part with equal strength and ingenuity. Several thwarts were laid from one side to the other, to which they were securely fastened, in order to strengthen the canoes. Some few of their canoes at Mercury Bay and Opoorage, are all made entirely of one trunk of wood, which is made hollow by fire; but by far the greater part are built after the manner above described. The smaller boats, which are used chiefly in fishing, are adorned at head and stern

with the figure of a man, the eyes of which are composed of white shells : a tongue of enormous size is thrust out of the mouth, and the whole face a picture of absolute deformity. The grander canoes, which are intended for war, are ornamented with open work, and covered with fringes of black feathers, which gives the whole an air of perfect elegance : the side-boards, which are carved in a rude manner, are embellished with tufts of white feathers. These vessels are rowed by a kind of paddles, between five and six feet in length, the blade of which is a long oval, gradually decreasing till it reaches the handle; and the velocity with which they row with these paddles is very surprising. Their sails are composed of a kind of mat or netting, which is extended between two upright poles, one of which is fixed on each side. Two ropes, fastened to the top of each pole, serve instead of sheets. The vessels are steered by two men, having each a paddle, and sitting in the stern; but they can only sail before the wind, in which direction they move with considerable swiftness.

These Indians use axes, adzes, and chisels, with which last they likewise bore holes. The chisels are made of jasper, or of the bone of a man's arm; their adzes and axes of a hard black stone. They use their small jasper tools till they are blunted and then throw them away, having no instrument to sharpen them with. The Indians at Tolaga having been presented with a piece of glass, drilled a hole through it, and hung it round the neck. A small bit of jasper was thought to have been the tool they used in drilling it.

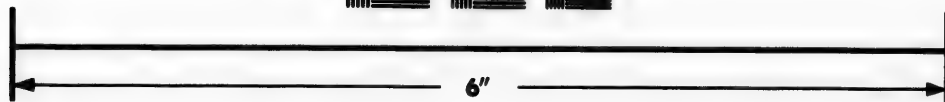
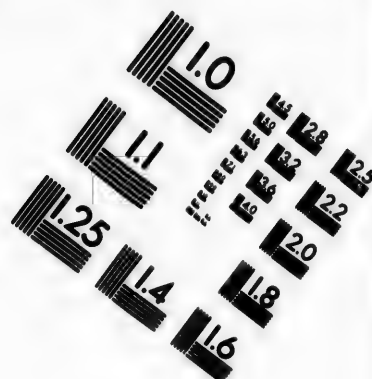
Their tillage is excellent, owing to the necessity they are under of cultivating or running the risk of starving. At Tegadoo their crops were just put into the ground, and the surface of the field was as smooth as a garden, the roots were ranged in regular lines, and to every root there remained a hillock. A long narrow stake, sharpened to an edge at bottom, with a piece fixed across at a little distance above

it, for the convenience of driving it into the ground with the foot, supplies the place both of plough and spade. The soil being light, their work is not very laborious, and with this instrument alone they will turn up ground of six or seven acres in extent.

The seine, the large net which has been already noticed, is produced by their united labour, and is probably the joint property of the whole town. Their fish-hooks are of shell or bone, and they have baskets of wicker work to hold the fish. Their warlike weapons are spears, darts, battle-axes, and the patoo-patoo. The spear, which is pointed at the end, is about sixteen feet in length, and they hold it in the middle, so that it is difficult to parry a thrust with it. Whether they fight in boats or on shore the battle is hand to hand, so that they must make bloody work of it. They trust chiefly in the patoo-patoo, which is fastened to their wrist by a strong strap, that it may not be wrested out of their hands. These are worn in the girdles of people of superior rank as a military ornament. They have a kind of staff of distinction, which is carried by the principal warriors. It is formed of a whale's rib, is quite white, and adorned with carving, feathers, and the hair of their dogs. Sometimes they had a stick six feet long, inlaid with shells, and otherwise ornamented like a military staff. This honourable mark of distinction was commonly in the hands of the aged, who were also more daubed with the amoco.

When they came to attack the English, one or more of these old men thus distinguished were in each canoe. It was their custom to stop fifty or sixty yards from the ship, when the chief rising from his seat, put on a dog's skin garment, and holding out his decorated staff, directed them how to proceed. When they were too far from the ship to reach it with their missile weapons, then the defiance was given, and the words usually were, Karomai, karomai, harre uta a patoo-patoo. "Come on shore, come on shore, and we will kill you all with our patoo-patoos." While they





Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5 2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0 4.5 5.0 5.6 6.3 7.1 8.0 9.0 10.0 11.2 12.5 14.0 16.0 18.0 20.0 22.5 25.0 28.0 31.5 36.0 40.0 45.0 50.0 56.0 63.0 71.0 80.0 90.0 100.0

10 0.1

thus threatened, they approached the ship gradually till close along-side ; yet talking at intervals in a peaceable manner, and answering any questions that were asked them. Then again their menaces were repeated, till encouraged by the supposed timidity of the Endeavour's people, they began the war song and dance, the sure prelude of an attack, which always followed, and sometimes continued till the firing of small shot repulsed them ; but at others, they vented their passion by throwing a few stones against the ship by way of insult.

The contortions of these savage Indians are numerous ; their limbs are distorted, and their faces agitated with strange convulsive motions. Their tongues hang out of their mouths to an amazing length, and their eye-lids are drawn so as to form a circle round the eye. At the same time they shake their darts, brandish their spears, and wave their patee-patees to and fro in the air. There is an admirable vigor and activity in their dancing ; and in their song they keep time with such exactness, that sixty or a hundred paddles, when struck against the sides of their boats at once, make only a single report. In times of peace they sometimes sing in a manner resembling the war song, but the dance is omitted. The women, whose voices are exceedingly melodious and soft, sing likewise in a musical but mournful manner. One of their instruments of music is a shell, from which they produce a sound not unlike that made with a common horn ; the other is a small wooden pipe, resembling a child's nine-pin, not superior in sound to a child's whistle. They were never heard to sing, or to produce any measured notes like what we call a tune.

As to the horrid custom of eating human flesh, prevalent among them, in most of the coves were found flesh and bones of men ; and among the heads that were brought on board, some of them had a kind of false eyes, and ornaments in their ears, as if alive. The head purchased by Mr. Banks, and sold with great reluctance, was that of a

young person, and by the contusions on one side, appeared to have received many violent blows. There had been lately a skirmish, and it was supposed that the young man had been killed with the rest.

The hippahs or villages of these people, of which there are several between the Bay of Plenty and Queen Charlotte's Sound, are all fortified. In these they constantly reside; but near Tolaga, Hawk's Bay, and Poverty Bay, only single houses are to be seen, at a considerable distance from each other. On the sides of the hills were erected long stages, supplied with darts and stones, thought to be retreats in time of action; as it appeared from such places they could combat with their enemies to great advantage. A magazine of provisions, consisting of dried fish and fern roots, was also discovered in these fortifications.

The inhabitants in this part of the country were all subjects of Teratu, who resided near the Bay of Plenty; and to their being thus united under one chief, they owed a security unknown to those of other parts. Several inferior governors are in the dominions of Teratu, to whom the most implicit obedience is paid. One of the inhabitants having robbed a sailor belonging to the Endeavour, complaint was made to a chief, who chastised the thief by kicking and striking him, all which he bore with unresisting humility. The inhabitants of the southern parts formed little societies, and had all things in common, particularly fishing nets and fine apparel. The latter, probably obtained in war, were kept in a little hut destined for that use, in the centre of the town, and the several parts of the nets, being made by different families, were afterwards joined together for public use. Less account, in the opinion of Tupia, is made of the women here than in the South Sea Islands. Both sexes eat together. The men cultivate the ground, make nets, catch birds, and go out in their canoes to fish; while the women are employed in weaving cloth, collecting shell-fish, and dressing food.

As to the religion of these people, they acknowledge one Supreme Being, and several subordinate deities. Their mode of worship could not be learnt, nor was any place proper for that purpose seen. There was indeed a small square area, encompassed with stones, in the middle of which hung a basket of fern-roots on one of their spades. This they said was an offering to their gods, to obtain from them a plentiful crop of provisions. They gave the same account of the origin of the world and the production of mankind, as the inhabitants of Otaheite. Tupia, however, seemed to have more enlarged views of these subjects than any of the people of this island, and when he sometimes delivered a discourse, he was sure of a numerous audience, who heard with remarkable reverence and attention.

Of the manner of disposing of their dead, no certain opinion could be formed. The southern district said they disposed of their dead by throwing them into the sea; but those in the north buried them in the ground. Not the least appearance of a grave or monument was seen, but the bodies of many of the living bore evident tokens of grief for the loss of their friends and relations. Some of their scars were newly made, a proof that their friends had died recently, yet no one saw any thing like a funeral ceremony or procession, and they affected to conceal every thing respecting the dead with the utmost secrecy.

They observed a great similitude between the dress, furniture, boats, and nets of the New Zealanders and the inhabitants of the South Sea Islands, which evidently demonstrates that the common ancestors of both were natives of the same country. Indeed the inhabitants of these different places have a tradition, that their ancestors sprang from another country many years since, and they both agree that this country was called Heawige. Tupia, when he accosted the people here in the language of his own country, was perfectly understood. The dialect indeed is different,

as in Eng and, where the word is pronounced *gate* in Middlesex, and *gate* in Yorkshire

It being supposed that the original inhabitants of these islands and those in the South Seas, came from the same country ; what country that is, or where situated, remains still a subject of inquiry. In this all agreed, that the original inhabitants were not of America, which lies to the eastward ; and unless there should be a continent to the southward, in a temperate latitude, it must be concluded that they emigrated from the westward.

On Saturday, the 31st of March, 1770, they sailed from Cape Farewell in New Zealand, having fine weather and a fair wind. This cape lies in latitude 40 deg. 33 min. S. and in 186 deg. W. longitude. They steered westward with a fresh gale till the 2nd of April, when they saw a tropic bird, a sight very unusual in so high a latitude. On the 15th, they saw an egg bird and a gannet. As these birds never go far from land, they sounded all night, but had no ground at 180 fathoms. The day following a small land bird perched on the rigging, but they had no ground at 120 fathoms. On the morning of the 19th they discovered land ; to the southernmost point in sight they gave the name of Point Hicks, in compliment to the first lieutenant, who discovered it.

At noon, in latitude 37 deg. 5 min. and 210 deg. 29 min. W. longitude, they saw another remarkable point of land, distant about four leagues. This point rising in a high hillock, extremely like the Ram Head at the entrance of Plymouth Sound, Capt. Cook gave it the same name. What they had yet seen of the land was low and level ; the shore white and sandy ; and the inland parts covered with wood and verdure. At this time they saw three water spouts at the same time. In the evening, at six o'clock, the northernmost point of land was distant about two leagues, which they named Cape Howe. On the 27th, they saw several of the inhabitants walking along the shore, four of them carrying a canoe on their shoulders ; but as they did

not attempt to come off to the ship, the captain took Mr Banks, Dr. Solander, and Tupia in the yawl, to that part of the shore where they saw the natives, near which four small canoes lay close inland. The Indians sat on the rocks till the yawl was within a quarter of a mile of the land, and then ran away into the woods. The surf beating violently on the beach, prevented the boat from landing. At five in the evening they returned to the ship, and a light breeze springing up, they sailed to the northward, where they discovered several people on shore. The pinnace having been sent a head to sound, arrived near the spot where the Indians had stationed themselves, on which one of them hid himself among the rocks near the landing place, and the others retreated up the hill. The pinnace keeping along the shore, the Indians walked near in a line with her; they were armed with long pikes, and a weapon resembling a scymiter, and by various signs and words invited the boat's crew to land. Those who did not follow the boat, having observed the approach of the ship, brandished their weapons, and threw themselves into threatening attitudes. They talked to each other with great emotion, and each of them held one of the above mentioned weapons. They anchored opposite a village of about eight houses, and observed an old woman and three children come out of a wood, laden with fuel for a fire, all of whom, as well as the woman, were naked. The old woman frequently looked at the ship with the utmost indifference, and, as soon as she had made a fire, the fishermen brought their canoes on shore, and they set about dressing their dinner with as much composure as if a ship had been no extraordinary sight.

Having formed a design of landing, they manned the boats, and took Tupia with them, and had no sooner come near the shore, than two men advanced, as if to dispute their setting foot on land. The captain threw them beads, nails, and other trifles, which they picked up and seemed well pleased with. He then made signals that he wanted water,

and used every possible means to convince them that no injury was intended. They now made signs to the boat's crew to land, on which they put the boat in, but had no sooner done so, than the two Indians came again to oppose them. A musket was now fired between them, on the report of which, one of them dropped a bundle of lances, which he immediately snatched up again in great haste. One of them then threw a stone at the boat, on which the captain ordered a musket loaded with small shot to be fired, which wounding the eldest of them on the legs, he retired hastily to one of the houses, that stood at some distance. The people in the boats now landed, imagining that the wound this man had received would put an end to the contest. In this, however, they were mistaken, for he immediately returned with a kind of shield, of an oval figure, painted white in the middle, with two holes in it to see through. They now advanced with great intrepidity, and both discharged their lances at the boat's crew, but did not wound any of them. Another musket was now fired at them, on which they threw another lance, and then took to their heels. The crew now went up to the huts, in one of which they found the children, who had secreted themselves behind some bark. Having thrown several pieces of cloth, ribbons, beads, and other things into the hut, they took several of their lances, and then re-embarked in the boat. They now sailed to the north point of the bay, and found plenty of fresh water. Some men having been sent to get wood and water, they no sooner came on board to dinner, than the natives came down to the place, and examined the casks with great attention, but did not offer to remove them. When the people were on shore in the afternoon, about 20 of the natives, all armed, advanced within a trifling distance of them, and then stopped, while two of their number approached still nearer. Mr. Hicks, the commanding officer on shore, went towards them, with presents in his hands, and endeavoured, by every possible means, to assure them of his friendly intentions, but

to no purpose, for they retired before he came up to them. In the evening Messrs. Banks and Solander went with the captain to a cove, north of the bay, where they caught between three and four hundred weight of fish, at four hauls.

On Tuesday, May the first, the south point of the bay was named Sutherland Point, one of the seamen, of the name of Sutherland, having died that day, and was buried on shore. More presents were left in the huts, such as looking-glasses, combs, &c. but the former ones had not been taken away. Making an excursion about the country, they found it agreeably variegated with wood and lawn, the trees being straight and tall, and without underwood. The second lieutenant, Mr. Gore, having been with a boat to dredge for oysters, saw some Indians, who made signs for him to come on shore, which he declined : having finished his business, he sent the boat away, and went by land with a midshipman, to join the party who were getting water. In their way they met with more than 20 of the natives, who followed them so close as to come within a few yards of them ; Mr. Gore stopped and faced them, on which the Indians stopped also, and when he proceeded again, they followed him ; but they did not attack him, though they had each man a lance. The Indians coming in sight of the water-casks, stood at the distance of a quarter of a mile, while Mr. Gore and his companions reached their ship-mates in safety. Two or three of the waterers now advanced towards the Indians, but observing they did not retire, they very imprudently turned about, and retreated hastily : this apparent mark of cowardice inspired the savages, who discharged four of their lances at the fugitives, which flying beyond them, they escaped unhurt. They now stopped to pick up the lances ; on which the Indians retired in their turn. At this instant the captain came up with Messrs. Banks and Solander, and Tupia advancing made signs of friendship ; but the poor natives would not stay their coming up to them.

Tupia having learnt to shoot, frequently strayed alone to

shoot parrots, and the Indians constantly fled from him with as much precipitation as from the English. Those who had been sent out to fish this day, met with great success, and the second lieutenant struck a fish called the Stingray, which weighed near two hundred and fifty pounds. The next morning another was taken, which weighed three hundred and fifty pounds. The name of Botany Bay was given to this place, from the great number of plants collected by Messrs. Banks and Solander.

While the captain remained in the harbour, the English colours were displayed on shore daily, and the name of the ship, with the date of the year, was carved on a tree near the place where they took in water. On Sunday, the 6th of May, they sailed from Botany Bay, and at noon were off a harbour, which was called Port Jackson, and in the evening, near a bay, to which they gave the name of Broken Bay. The next day at noon, the northernmost land in sight projected so as to justify the calling it Cape Three Points. On Tuesday, the 9th, they saw two beautiful rainbows, the colours of which were strong and lively, and those of the inner one so bright, as to reflect its shadow on the water. They formed a complete semicircle, and the space between them was much darker than the rest of the sky. As they proceeded from Botany Bay, northward, the land appeared high and well covered with wood. In the afternoon of the 13th, they discovered some rocky islands. On Tuesday morning, by the assistance of their glasses, they discerned about a score of Indians, each loaded with a bundle, which they imagined to be palm leaves for covering their houses. They were traced for more than an hour, during which time they took not the least notice of the ship. On Tuesday, the 22nd, at six in the morning, by the help of glasses they discovered that the land was covered with palm-nut trees, none of which they had seen since they quitted the islands within the tropic. On the 23rd, early in the morning, Capt. Cook, attended by several gentlemen, and Tupia, went on shore to examine the

country. The wind blew so fresh, and was so cold, that being some distance from the shore, they took their cloaks. They landed within the point of a bay, which led into a large lagoon, by the sides of which grew the true man-grove, such as is found in the West Indies. In these man-groves were many nests of ants of a singular kind, as green as grass. When the branches were moved, they came forth in great numbers, and bit the disturber most severely. These trees likewise afford shelter for immense numbers of green caterpillars, whose bodies were covered with hairs, which, on the touch, occasioned a pain similar to the sting of a nettle, but much more acute. These insects were ranged side by side on the leaves, thirty or forty together, in a regular manner.

On Thursday, the 24th, they made sail out of the bay, and on the day following were abreast of a point, which being immediately under the tropic, the captain named Cape Capricorn, on the west side whereof they saw an amazing number of large birds resembling the pelican, some of which were near five feet high.

On Monday, the 28th, in the morning, they sailed to the northward, and being determined to keep the main land close aboard, which continued to tend away to the west, they got among another cluster of islands. Here they were greatly alarmed, having on a sudden but three fathoms water, in a rippling tide; they immediately put the ship about, and hoisted out the boat in search of deeper water; after which they stood to the west with an easy sail, and in the evening came to the entrance of a bay. In the afternoon, having sounded round the ship, and found that there was water sufficient to carry her over the shoal, they weighed, and stood to the westward, having sent a boat a head to sound, and at six in the evening they anchored in ten fathoms, with a sandy bottom, at about two miles from the main.

On Tuesday, the 29th, they had thoughts of laying the ship ashore, and cleaning her bottom, and therefore landed with the master in search of a convenient place for that pur-

pose. In this excursion Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander accompanied them; they found walking extremely inconvenient, the ground being covered with grass, the seeds of which were sharp and bearded, sticking in their clothes, whence they worked their way forwards to the flesh by means of the beard. They were also perpetually tormented with the stings of the moschetto. Several places were found convenient to lay down the ship ashore, but to their great disappointment, they could meet with no fresh water. They proceeded however, up the country, and in the interior parts found gum-trees, on the branches whereof, were white ants nests, formed of clay, as big as a bushel. On another tree they saw black ants, which perforated all the twigs, and after they had eaten out the pith, formed their lodging in the hollows which contained it; yet the trees were in a flourishing condition. They also saw in the air many thousands of butterflies, and every bough was covered with incredible numbers. On the dry ground they discovered, supposed to have been left by the tide, a fish about the size of a minnow, having two strong breast fins, with which it leaped away as nimbly as a frog: it did not appear to be weakened by being out of the water, nor even to prefer that element to the land, for when seen in the water, it leaped on shore and paraded its way. It was likewise remarked, that where there were small stones projecting above the water, it chose rather to leap from one stone to another, than to pass through the water.

On Wednesday, the 30th, Capt. Cook and other gentlemen, went on shore, and having gained the summit of a hill, took a survey of the coast, and the adjacent islands, which being done, the captain proceeded with Dr. Solander up an inlet, that had been discovered the preceding day; but the weather proving unfavourable, and from fear of being bewildered among the shoals in the night, they returned to the ship, having seen the whole day only two Indians, who followed the boat a considerable way along shore; but the tide run-

ning strong, the captain thought it not prudent to wait for them. While these gentlemen were tracing the inlet, Mr. Banks, with a party, endeavoured to penetrate into the country, and having met with a piece of swampy ground, they resolved to pass it; but before they got half way, they found the mud almost knee deep. The bottom was covered with branches of trees, interwoven on the surface of the swamp, on which they sometimes kept their footing; sometimes slipped through; and sometimes were so entangled among them, as not to be able to free themselves but by groping in the mud and slime with their hands. However they crossed it in about an hour, and judged it might be a quarter of a mile over. Having performed this disagreeable task, they came to a place where had been four small fires, near which were some bones of fish that had been roasted; also grass laid in heaps, whereon four or five persons had probably slept. The second lieutenant, Mr. Gore, at another place, saw the track of a large animal, near a gully of water; he also heard the sound of human voices, but did not see the people. At this place two turtles, some water fowl, and a few small birds were seen. As no water was to be found in their different excursions, for several of the crew were also rambling about, the captain called the inlet where the ship lay, Thirsty Sound. It lies in latitude 22 deg. 10 min. south, and in 210 deg. 18 min. west longitude, and may be known by a group of islands that lie right before it, between three and four leagues out at sea. They had not a single inducement to stay longer in a place, where they could not be supplied with fresh water, nor with provision of any kind. Neither fish nor wild fowl could be caught.

On the 1st of June they got under sail, and had now quite open the western inlet, which they had distinguished by the name of Broad Sound. A point of land which forms the N. W. entrance, they named Cape Palmerston, lying 21 deg. 30 min. S. latitude, and 210 deg. 54 min. W. longitude. Between this cape and Cape Townshend is the bay which

they called the Bay of Inlets. At eight in the evening they anchored in eleven fathoms, with a sandy bottom, about two leagues from the main land.

Saturday, the 2nd, they got under sail, and at noon, in latitude 20 deg. 56 min. they saw a high promontory, which they named Cape Hillsborough. It bore W. half N. distant seven miles. The land appeared to abound in wood and herbage, and is diversified with hills, plains, and valleys. A chain of islands large and small are situated at a distance from the coast and under the land, from some of which they saw smoke ascending in different places.

On Sunday, the 3rd, they discovered a point of land, which they called Cape Conway, and between that and Cape Hillsborough, a bay to which they gave the name of Repulse Bay. The land about Cape Conway forms a most delightful landscape, being diversified with hills, dales, woods, and verdant lawns. By the help of their glasses they discovered two men and a woman on one of the islands, and a canoe with an outrigger like those at Otaheite. This day they named the islands Cumberland Islands, in honour of the duke; and a passage which they had discovered, was called Whitsunday Passage, from the day on which it was seen. At day-break, on Monday, the 4th, they were abreast of a point which they called Cape Gloucester. Names were also given this day to several other places, namely, Holbourne Isle, Edgcumbe Bay, and Cape Upstart, which last was so called because it rises abruptly from the low lands that surround it. Inland are some hills or mountains, which like the cape afford but a barren prospect.

On Tuesday, the 5th, they were about four leagues from land, and our latitude by observation was 19 deg. 12 min. S. They saw very large columns of smoke rising from the low lands. They continued to steer W. N. W. as the land lay, till noon on the 6th, when their latitude by observation was 19 deg. 1 min. S. at which time they had the mouth of a bay all open, distant about two leagues. This they named

Cleveland Bay, and the east point Cape Cleveland. The west, which had the appearance of an island, was called Magnetical Island, because the compass did not traverse well when they were near it: they are both high, as is the main land between them, the whole forming a surface the most rugged, rocky, and barren of any they had seen upon the coast: yet it was not without inhabitants, for they saw smoke in several parts of the bottom of the bay.

Thursday, the 7th, at day-break, they were abreast of the eastern part of this land, and in the afternoon saw several large columns of smoke upon the main; also canoes, and some trees, which they thought were those of the cocoa-nut: in search of which, as they would have been at this time very acceptable, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went ashore with lieutenant Hicks; but in the evening they returned with only a few plants, gathered from the cabbage palm, and which had been mistaken for the cocoa tree.

On Friday, the 8th, they stood away for the northernmost point in sight, to which they gave the name of Point Hillock. Between this and Magnetical Isle the shore forms Halifax Bay, which affords shelter from all winds. At six in the evening they were abreast of a point of land, which they named Cape Sandwich. From hence the land tends W. and afterwards N. forming a fine large bay, which was named Rockingham Bay. They now ranged northward along the shore, towards a cluster of islands, on one of which about forty or fifty men, women, and children were standing together, all stark naked, and looking at the ship with a curiosity never observed among these people before. At noon their latitude, by observation, was 17 deg. 59 min. S. and they were abreast of the north point of Rockingham Bay, which bore from them W. distant about two miles. This boundary of the bay is formed by an island of considerable height, which they distinguished by the name of Dunk Island.

On Saturday, the 9th, in the morning, they were abreast

of some small islands, which were named Frankland's Isles. At noon they were in the middle of the channel, and by observation, in latitude 16 deg. 57 min. S. and in longitude 214 deg. 6 min. W. with twenty fathoms water. The point on the main, of which they were now abreast, Capt. Cook named Cape Grafton. Having hauled round this, they found a bay three miles to the westward, in which they anchored; and called the island Green Island. Here Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went ashore with the captain, with a view of procuring water, which not being to be had easily, they soon returned aboard, and the next day arrived near Trinity Bay, so called because it was discovered on Trinity Sunday.

Sunday, the 10th, was remarkable for the dangerous situation of the Endeavour, as was Tuesday, the 12th; for her preservation and deliverance, as Christians, or only as moral philosophers, we ought to add, agreeable to the will of an overruling providence, who shut up the sea with doors, who appointed for it a decreed place, and said, "Thus far thou shalt come, and here shall thy proud waves be stayed."

As no accident remarkably unfortunate had befallen our adventurers, during a navigation of more than thirteen hundred miles, upon a coast every where abounding with the most dangerous rocks and shoals, no name expressive of distress had hitherto been given to any cape or point of land which they had seen. But they now gave the name of Cape Tribulation, to a point they had just discovered, because here they became acquainted with misfortune. The cape lies in latitude 16 deg. 6 min. S. and 214 deg. 30 min. W. longitude.

On Sunday, the 10th, at six in the evening, they shortened sail, and hauled off shore close upon a wind, to avoid the danger of some rocks which were seen ahead. They kept standing off till near nine, with a fine breeze and bright moon, and had got into twenty-one fathoms water, when suddenly the fell into twelve, ten, and eight fathoms, in a few minutes. Every man was instantly ordered to his station,

and they were on the point of anchoring, when, on a sudden, they had again deep water, so that they thought all danger at an end, concluding they had sailed over the tail of some shoals, which they had seen in the evening. In less than an hour, however, the water shallowed at once from twenty to seventeen fathoms, and before soundings could be taken, the ship struck upon a rock, and remained immoveable. Every one was instantly on deck, with countenances fully expressive of the horrors of their situation. Knowing they were not near the shore, they concluded they had struck upon a rock of coral, the points of which are sharp, and the surface so rough, as to grind away whatever is rubbed against it, even with the most gentle motion. All the sails being immediately taken in, and the boats hoisted out, they found that the ship had been carried over a ledge of the rock, and lay in a hollow within it. Finding the water deepest astern, they carried out the anchor from the starboard quarter, and applied their whole force to the capstan, in hopes to get the vessel off, but in vain. She beat so violently against the rock, that the crew could scarcely keep on their legs. The moon shone bright, by the light of which they could see the sheathing-boards float from the bottom of the vessel, till at length the false keel followed, so that they expected instant destruction. Their best chance of escaping seemed now to be by lightening her. They therefore instantly started the water in the hold, and pumped it up. The decayed stores, oil-jars, casks, ballast, six of their guns, and other things, were thrown overboard, in order to get at the heavier articles; and in this business they were employed till day-break, during all which time not an oath was sworn, so much were the minds of the sailors impressed with a sense of their danger.

At day-light they saw land at eight leagues distance, but not a single island between them and the main, on which part of the crew might have landed, while the boat went on shore with the rest; so that the destruction of the greater part would have been inevitable, had the ship gone to pieces. It

happened, however, that the wind died away to a dead calm before noon. As they expected high water about eleven o'clock, every thing was prepared to make another effort to free the ship, but the tide fell so much short of that in the night, that she did not float by 18 inches, though they had thrown over-board near fifty tons weight : they therefore renewed their toil, and threw over-board every thing that could possibly be spared. As the tide fell, the water poured in so rapidly, that they could scarcely keep her free by the constant working of two pumps. Their only hope now depended on the midnight tide, and preparations were accordingly made for another effort to get the ship off. The tide began to rise at five o'clock, when the leak likewise increased to such a degree, that two pumps more were manned, but only one of them would work ; three, therefore, were kept going till nine o'clock, at which time the ship righted ; but so much water had been admitted by the leak, that they expected she would sink as soon as the water should bear her off the rock.

Their situation was now deplorable beyond description, almost all hope being at an end. They knew that when the fatal moment should arrive, all authority would be at an end. The boats were incapable of conveying all on shore, and they dreaded a contest for the preference, as more shocking than the shipwreck itself : yet it was considered that those who were left on board, would eventually meet with a milder fate than those who, by gaining the shore, would have no chance but to linger out the remains of life among the rudest savages in the universe, and in a country where fire-arms would barely enable them to support a wretched situation. At twenty minutes past ten the ship floated, when they were happy to find that she did not admit more water than she had done before ; yet as the leak had for a considerable time gained on the pumps, there was now three feet nine inches water in the hold. By this time the men were so worn by fatigue of mind and body that none of them could pump more than five or six minutes at a time, and then throw

themselves, quite spent, on the deck. The succeeding man being fatigued in his turn, threw himself down in the same manner, while the former jumped up and renewed his labour, thus mutually struggling for life, till the following accident had like to have given them up a prey to absolute despair.

Between the inside lining of the ship's bottom, which is called the ceiling, and the outside planking, there is a space of about seventeen or eighteen inches. The man who had hitherto taken the depth of water at the well, had taken it no farther than the ceiling, but being now relieved by another person, who took the depth of the outside plank, it appeared by this mistake, that the leak had suddenly gained upon the pumps, the whole difference between the two planks. This circumstance deprived them of all hope, and scarce any one thought it worth while to labour for the longer preservation of a life which must so soon have a period. The mistake, however, was soon discovered; and the joy arising from such unexpected good news inspired the men with so much vigour, that before eight o'clock in the morning they had pumped out considerably more water than they had shipped. They now talked of nothing but getting the ship into some harbour, and set heartily to work to get in their anchors; one of which, and the cable of another, they lost. Having a good breeze from the sea, they got under sail at eleven o'clock, and steered for land. As they could not discover the exact situation of the leak, they had no prospect of stopping it within side of the vessel, but the following expedient, which one of the midshipmen had formerly seen tried with success, was adopted. They took an old studding-sail, and having mixed a large quantity of oakum and wool, chopped small, it was stitched down in handfuls on the sail, as lightly as possible, the dung of their sheep and other filth being spread over it. Thus prepared, the sail was hauled under the ship, by ropes, which kept it extended till it came under the leak, when the suction carried in the oakum and wool from the surface of the sail. This experiment succeeded so

well, that instead of three pumps, the water was easily kept under with one.

They had hitherto no farther intention than to run the ship into some harbour, and build a vessel from her materials, in which they might reach the East-Indies ; but they now began to think of finding a proper place to repair her damage, and then to pursue the voyage on its original plan. At six in the evening they anchored seven leagues from the shore. Next morning they passed two small islands, which they called Hope Islands, because the reaching of them had been the object of their wishes at the time of the shipwreck. In the afternoon, the master was sent out with two boats to sound, and search for a harbour where the ship might be repaired, and they anchored at sun-set, in four fathoms water, two miles from the shore. One of the mates being sent out in the pinnace, returned at nine o'clock, reporting that he had found such a harbour as was wanted, at the distance of two leagues.

Wednesday, the 13th, at six o'clock, they sailed, and soon anchored about a mile from the shore, when the captain went out, and found the channel very narrow, but the harbour was better adapted to their present purpose than any place they had seen in the whole course of their voyage. As it blew very fresh this day and the following night, they could not venture to run into the harbour, but remained at anchor during the two succeeding days.

The men, by this time began to be afflicted with the scurvy, and Tupia was so ill with it, that he had livid spots on both his legs. Mr. Green, the Astronomer, was ill of the same disorder ; so that being detained from landing was every way disagreeable. The wind continuing fresh till the 17th, they resolved to push in for the harbour, and twice ran the ship aground ; the second time she stuck fast, on which they took down the bombs, fore-yard, and fore-top-masts, and made a raft on the side of the ship ; and, as the tide happened to be rising, she floated at one o'clock. They soon got her

into the harbour, where she was moored along the side of a beach, and the anchors, cables, &c. immediately taken out of her.

On Monday, the 18th, in the morning, they erected a tent for the sick, who were brought on shore as soon as it was ready for their reception. They likewise set up a tent to hold the provisions and stores, which were landed the same day. The boat was now dispatched in search of fish for the refreshment of the sick, but she returned without getting any; Tupia however employed himself in angling, and living entirely upon what he caught, recovered his health very fast. In an excursion Mr. Banks made up the country he saw the frames of several huts, and Capt. Cook having ascended one of the highest hills, observed the land to be stony and barren, and the low land, near the river, over-run with mangroves, among which the salt water flowed every tide.

Tuesday, the 19th, the smith's forge was set up, and the armourer prepared the necessary iron-work for the repairs. On the 22nd, they warped the ship higher up the harbour, in order to stop the leak. Early in the morning, the tide having left her, they proceeded to examine the leak, when it appeared that the rocks had cut through four planks into the timbers, and that three other planks were damaged. In these breaches not a splinter was to be seen, the whole being smooth, as if cut away by an instrument: but it was the will of an omnipotent being, that the vessel should be preserved by a very singular circumstance; for though one of the holes was large enough to have sunk her, even with eight pumps constantly at work, yet this hole was partly stopped up by a fragment of the rock being left sticking therein. They likewise found that some oakum, wool, &c. had got between the timbers and stopp'd those parts of the leak that the stone had left open. Exclusive of the leak, great damage was done to various parts of the ship's bottom.

While the smiths were employed in making nails and

bolts, the carpenters began to work on the vessel ; and some of the people were sent on the other side of the river to shoot pigeons for the sick. They found a stream of fresh water, discovered many Indian houses, and saw a mouse-coloured animal, exceeding swift, and about the size of a greyhound. On the 23rd, a boat was dispatched to haul the seine, and returned at noon with only three fish, although they saw plenty leaping about the harbour. This day many of the crew saw the animal above mentioned ; and one of the seamen declared he had seen the devil, which he thus described : " He was," says he, " as large as a one gallon keg, and very like it : he had horns and wings, yet he crept so slowly through the grass, that, if I had not been *afraid*, I might have touched him." This formidable apparition was afterwards discovered to have been a batt, which has a frightful appearance, being black, and full as large as a partridge ; but the man's own apprehensions had furnished his devil with horns.

Sunday, Mr. Gore, and a party of men sent out with him, procured a bunch or two of wild plantains, and a few palm cabbages, for the refreshment of the sick : and this day the captain and Mr. Banks saw the animal already mentioned. It had a long tail that it carried like a greyhound, leaped like a deer, and the point of its foot resembled that of a goat. The repairs of the ship on the starboard-side having been finished the preceding day, the carpenters now began to work under her larboard bow ; and being examined abaft, it appeared she had received very little injury in that quarter. Mr. Banks having removed his whole collection of plants into the bread room, they were this day under water, by which some of them were totally destroyed ; however by great care most of them were restored to a state of preservation. A plant was found on the 25th, the leaves of which were almost as good as spinnage ; also a fruit of a deep purple colour, and the size of a golden pippin, which after having been kept a few days tasted like a damson.

On Tuesday, the 26th, the carpenter was engaged in caulking the ship; and the men in other necessary business; and on the 27th, the armourer continued to work at the forge, and the carpenter on the ship; while the captain made several hauls with the large net, but caught only between twenty and thirty fish, which were distributed among the sick, and those who were not yet quite recovered. Here they saw a tree notched for climbing: also nests of white ants, from a few inches to five feet in height, prints of men's feet, and the tracks of three or four animals were likewise discovered.

On Friday, the 29th, at two o'clock in the morning, Capt. Cook, with Mr. Green, observed an emersion of Jupiter's first satellite: the time here was 2 hours 18 min. 53 sec. which makes the longitude of this place 214 deg. 42 min. 30 sec. W. and the latitude 15 deg. 26 min. S. At dawn of day the boat was sent out to haul for fish, and took what made an allowance of one pound and a half to each man. One of the midshipmen saw a wolf, resembling exactly the same species in America, at which he shot, but could not kill it. The next morning the captain ascended a hill to take a view of the sea, and observed sand banks and shoals in every direction. To the northward there was an appearance of a passage, which seemed the only way to steer clear of the surrounding dangers. In the afternoon the people returned with such a quantity of fish, that two pounds and a half were distributed to each man; and plenty of greens were gathered, which when boiled with peas, made an excellent mess, and they all thought this day's fare an unspeakable refreshment.

On the 1st of July, all the crew had permission to go on shore, except one from each mess, part of whom were again sent to haul the seine, and were equally successful. On the 8d, the master, who had been sent out in the pinnace, returned, and reported that he had found a passage out to sea, between shoals which consisted of coral rocks, many whereof

were dry at low water. He found some cockles so large that one of them was more than sufficient for two men; likewise plenty of other shell-fish, of which he brought a supply to the ship. This day they made another attempt to float the ship, and happily succeeded at high water; when they found that from the position she had lain in, one of her planks was sprung, so that it was again necessary to lay her ashore.

On the 5th, she was again floated, and moored off the beach, in order to receive the stores on board. This day they crossed the harbour, and found on a sandy beach a great number of fruits, not discovered before; among others a cocoa-nut, which Tupia said had been opened by a crab, and was judged to be what the Dutch call *Beurs Krabbe*. The vegetable substances which Mr. Banks picked up were incrustated with marine productions, and covered with barnacles, a proof of their having been transplanted, probably from *Terra del Esperito Santo*. Mr. Banks having sailed up the river with a party on the 6th, returned on the 8th. Having followed the course of the river, they found it contracted into a narrow channel, bounded by steep banks, adorned with trees of a most beautiful appearance, among which was the bark tree. The land was low and covered with grass, and seemed capable of being cultivated to great advantage. The night, though they made a fire on the banks of the river, was rendered extremely disagreeable by the stings of the moschettos. Going in pursuit of game, they saw four animals, two of which were chased by Mr. Banks's greyhound, but they greatly outstripped him in speed, by leaping over the long thick grass, which incommoded the dog in running. It was observed of the animals, they bounded forward on two legs instead of running on four. Having returned to the boat, they proceeded up the river, till it contracted to a brook of fresh water, but in which the tide rose considerably. Having stopped to pass the night, with hope of some rest, they saw a smoke at a distance, on which three of them approached it, but the

Indians were gone. They saw the impressions of feet on the sand, below high-water mark, and found a fire still burning in the hollow of an old tree. At a small distance were several huts, and they observed ovens dug in the ground: the remains of a recent meal were likewise apparent. They now retired to their resting-place, and slept on plantain leaves, with a bunch of grass for their pillows, on the side of a sand-bank, under the shelter of a bush. The tide favouring their return in the morning, they lost no time in getting back to the ship. The master, who had been seven leagues at sea, returned soon after Mr. Banks, bringing with him three turtles, which he took with a boat-hook, and which together weighed near eight hundred pounds. He was sent out next morning, and Mr. Banks accompanied him with proper instruments for catching turtle: but not being successful, he would not go back that night, so that Mr. Banks, after collecting some shells and marine productions, returned in his small boat. In the morning four Indians in a small canoe were within sight. The captain now determined to take no notice of these people, as the most likely way to be noticed by them. This project answered; two of them came within musket shot of the vessel, where they conversed very loud: in return, the people on board shouted, and made signs of invitation. The Indians gradually approached, with their lances held up; not in a menacing manner, but as if they meant to intimate that they were capable of defending themselves. They came almost along-side, when the captain threw them cloth, nails, paper, &c. which did not seem to attract their notice; at length one of the sailors threw a small fish, which so pleased them, that they hinted their design of bringing their companions, and immediately rowed for the shore. In the interim, Tupia and some of the crew landed on the opposite shore. The Indians soon came along-side the ship, and having received presents, landed where Tupia and a few sailors went on shore. They had each two

lances, and a stick with which they throw them. Advancing towards the English, Tupia persuaded them to lay down their arms and sit by him, which they readily did. Others of the crew now going on shore, the Indians seemed jealous lest they should get between them and their arms, but care was taken to convince them that no such thing was intended, and more trifles were presented to them. The crew staid with them till dinner time, and then made signs of invitation for them to go to the ship and eat; but this they declined, and retired in their canoe. These men were of the common stature, with very small limbs; their complexion was of a deep chocolate; their hair black, either lank or curled, but not of the woolly kind; the breasts and upper lip of one of them were painted with streaks of white, which he called carbanda, and some part of their bodies had been painted red. Their teeth were white and even, their eyes bright, and their features pleasing; their voices were musical, and they repeated several English words with great readiness.

The next morning, the visit of three of these Indians was renewed, and they brought with them a fourth, whom they called Yaparico, who appeared to be a person of some consequence. The bone of a bird, about six inches long, was thrust through the gristle of his nose; and indeed all the inhabitants of this place had their noses bored, for the reception of such ornaments. These people being quite naked, the captain gave one of them an old shirt, which he bound round his head like a turban, instead of using it to cover any part of his body. They brought a fish to the ship, which was supposed to be in payment for that given them the day before; after staying some time with apparent satisfaction, they suddenly leaped into their canoe, and rowed off, from a jealousy of some of the gentlemen who were examining it.

On the 12th of July, three Indians visited Tupia's tent, and after remaining some time, went for two others, whom they introduced by name. Some fish were offered them, but

they seemed not much to regard it; after eating a little, they gave the remainder to Mr. Banks's dog. Some ribbands which had been given them, to which medals were suspended round their necks, were so changed by smoke, that it was difficult to judge what colour they had been, and the smoke had made their skins look darker than their natural colour, from which it was thought that they had slept close to their fires, as a preventative against the sting of the moschettos. Both the strangers had bones through their noses, and a piece of bark tied over their foreheads; and one of them had an ornament of strips round his arm, and an elegant neck-lace made of shells. Their canoe was about ten feet long, calculated to hold four persons, and when it was in shallow water, they moved it by the help of poles. Their lances had only a single point, and some of them were barbed with fish bones. On the 14th, Mr. Gore shot one of the mouse coloured animals above-mentioned. It chanced to be a young one, weighing more than 38 pounds; but when they are full grown they are as large as a sheep. The skin of this beast, which is called Kangaroo, is covered with short fur, and is of a dark mouse colour; the head and ears are somewhat like those of a hare; this animal was dressed for dinner, and proved excellent eating. The ship's crew fed on turtle almost every day, which were finer and better than those eaten in England, owing to their being killed before their natural fat was wasted, and their juices changed.

On the 17th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander went with the captain into the woods, and saw four Indians in a canoe, who went on shore, and walked up without sign of fear. They accepted some beads and departed, intimating that they did not choose to be followed. The natives being now become familiar with the ship's crew, one of them was desired to throw his lance, which he did with such force and dexterity, that though it was not above four feet from the ground, at the highest, it penetrated deeply into a tree at the distance of fifty yards. The natives now came on board

the ship and seemed well pleased with their entertainment. The women, as well as the men, were quite naked.

On the 19th they were visited by ten Indians, who seemed resolved to have one of the turtles that was on board, which they repeatedly made signs for, and being as repeatedly refused, they expressed the utmost rage and resentment; one of them in particular, having received a denial from Mr. Banks, he stamped and pushed him away in a most violent manner. At length they laid hands on two of the turtles, and dragged them to the side of the ship where the canoe lay, but the sailors took them away. They made several similar attempts, but being equally unsuccessful, they leaped suddenly into their canoe, and rowed off. At this instant the captain, with Mr. Banks, and five or six of the seamen, went on shore, where they arrived before the Indians, and where many of the crew were already employed. As soon as the Indians landed, one of them snatched a fire brand from under a pitch kettle, and running to windward of what effects were left on shore, set fire to the dry grass, which burned rapidly, scorched a pig to death, burned part of the smith's forge, and would have destroyed a tent of Mr. Banks's, but that some people came from the ship just in time to get it out of the way of the flames. In the mean while the Indians went to a place where the fishing nets lay, and a quantity of linen was laid out to dry, and there again set fire to the grass, in spite of all persuasion, and even threats. A musket loaded with small shot was fired, and one of them being wounded, they ran away, and this second fire was extinguished, but the other burned far into the woods.

The Indians still continuing in sight, a musket charged with ball was fired at them, the report of which sent them out of sight; but their voices being heard in the woods, the captain with a few people went to meet them. Both parties stopped when in sight of each other; an old Indian then advanced before the rest a little way, but soon halted, and having spoken some words which the English could not

understand, he retreated to his companions, and they all retired slowly in a body. Having seized some of their darts, the ship's crew continued to follow them about a mile, and then sat down upon the rocks, the Indians sitting down also, about a hundred yards from them. The old man again came forward, having a lance without a point in his hand; he stopped several times at different distances and spoke, whereupon the captain made signs of friendship, which they answered. The old man now turned and spoke to his companions, who placed their lances against a tree, and advanced in a friendly manner. The darts were then returned to them, and this rendered the reconciliation complete. In this party were four persons whom the English had not seen before, who, as usual, were introduced by name, but the man who had been wounded in the attempt to burn the nets, was not among them. Having received some trinkets, the Indians walked amicably toward the coast, intimating by signs that they would not fire the grass again. When they came opposite the ship they sat down, but could not be prevailed upon to go on board. They accepted a few musket balls, the use and effects of which the captain endeavoured to explain. When the party arrived at the ship, they saw the woods burning at the distance of two miles. They had no conception of the fury with which grass will burn in this hot climate, nor of the difficulty of extinguishing it; but they determined that if it should ever again be necessary for them to pitch their tents in such a situation, their first work should be to clear the ground round them.

On Friday, the 20th, the ship being ready for sea, the master was sent in search of a passage to the northward, but could not find any; while the captain sounded and buoyed the bar. The hills for many miles were now on fire, which at night made an appearance truly sublime. On the 22nd they killed a turtle, through the shoulders of which stuck an harpoon, near fifteen inches long, bearded at the end, and about the thickness of a man's finger, resembling

such as they had seen among the natives. The turtle appeared to have been struck a considerable time, as the wound was perfectly healed. On the 24th, one of the sailors having strayed from his company, fell in with four Indians at dinner. He was at first much alarmed, but had the prudence to conceal his apprehensions; and sitting down beside them gave them his knife, which having examined, they returned. He would then have departed, but they seemed disposed to detain him, till, by feeling his hands and face, they were convinced that he was made of flesh and blood like themselves. They treated him with great civility, and having kept him about half an hour, they made signs that he might depart. When he left them, not taking the direct way to the ship, they came from the fire, and shewed him the nearest way. It may here be observed that the language of these people seemed more harsh than that of the islanders in the South Sea. They were continually repeating the word *chercau*, a term of admiration. They also cried out when they observed any thing new, *cher, tut, tut, tut, tut!* which probably was a similar expression. Mr. Banks having gone on shore in search of plants, found the cloth which had been distributed among the natives, lying in a heap, as useless lumber. Indeed they seemed to set very little value upon any thing the English had, except the turtle, a commodity they were least inclined and able to spare.

Tuesday, the 24th, Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander returning from the woods, through a deep valley, found lying on the ground, several marking nuts, the *anacardium orientale*; but they sought in vain for the tree that bore them. On the 26th, as Mr. Banks was again searching the country to enrich his natural history, he took an animal of the opossum kind, with two young ones. On the 27th, Mr. Gore shot a kangaroo, which weighed eighty-four pounds, though not at its full growth. When dressed, on the 28th, they found that it had a much worse flavour than that they had eaten before.

On Sunday, the 29th, they got all ready for sea. A boat was sent out to ascertain what water was upon the bar: when returned, the officer reported that there was only thirteen feet, which was six inches less than the ship drew. They therefore this day gave up all hopes of sailing. Monday, the 30th, they had fresh gales with hazy weather and rain, till Tuesday, the 31st, at two in the morning, when the weather became more moderate. During all this time the pinnace and yawl continued to ply the net and hook with tolerable good success, bringing in at different times a turtle and from two to three hundred weight of fish.

On Wednesday, the 1st of August, the pumps were examined by the carpenter, who found them all in a state of decay, and some quite rotten, owing, as he said, to the sap having been left in the wood: but as the ship admitted only an inch of water in an hour, they hoped she was stout enough, and trusted to her soundness.

On Saturday, the 4th of August, at 7 o'clock in the morning, they once more got under sail and put to sea. They stood E. by N. with the pinnace ahead to keep sounding. About noon they came to an anchor, when the harbour they had quitted bore S. 70 W. distant about five leagues. The captain named the northernmost point of land in sight, Cape Bedford, and the harbour they had quitted, Endeavour River. Their latitude by observation was now 15 deg. 39 min. S. Endeavour River is only a small bar harbour, or creek, which runs in a winding channel three or four leagues inland. The depth of water for shipping is not more than a mile within the bar, and only on the north side. At the new and full of the moon it is high water between nine and ten o'clock. It must also be remembered that this part of the coast is so barricaded with shoals, as to make the harbour very difficult of access: the safest approach is from the southward, keeping the main land close upon the board all the way. Over the south point is some high land, but the north is formed by a low sandy beach. The provisions

they procured in this harbour consisted of turtle, oysters of different sorts, cavalhe or scumber, flat-fish, skate or ray fish, purslain, wild beans, and cabbage-palms. Of quadrupeds, there are goats, wolves, pole-cats, a spotted animal of the viverra kind, and several sorts of serpents, some of which only are venomous. Dogs are the only tame animals. The land fowls are kites, crows, hawks, loriquets, cockatoos, parrots, pigeons, and small birds of various sorts. The water fowls are wild geese, ourlieus, hens, whistling ducks, that perch on trees, and some few others. The soil of the hills, though stony, produces coarse grass, besides wood; that of the valleys is in general well clothed, and has the appearance of fertility. The trees are of various sorts, of which the gum-trees are the most common. On each side of the river are mangroves, which in some parts extend a mile within the coast. The country is well watered, and ant hills are every where abundant.

On Saturday, the 4th, Capt. Cook went up to the mast-head to look at some dangerous shoals, several of which he saw above the water. During the six following days they attempted to sail between the shoals and breakers, by which they were surrounded. On the 10th they were between a head-land and three islands, which had been discovered the preceding day. They now entertained hopes of being out of danger, but this not proving to be the case, they called the head-land Cape Flattery. Some land was now discovered, and was generally taken for the main; but in the captain's opinion, a cluster of islands. Upon this diversity of sentiment it was resolved to bring the ship to an anchor. This done, the captain landed, and from a high point took a survey of the sea coast, by which he was confirmed in his conjecture. On the point where he stood were seen the prints of human feet, in white sand of an exquisite fineness; and the place was named Point Look-out. To the northward of this, the coast appeared to be shoal and flat for a considerable distance, which did not encourage the hope, that the

channel they had hitherto found in with the land would continue.

On Saturday, the 11th, early in the morning, Mr. Banks and Captain Cook went to visit the largest of the three islands, and having gained the summit of the highest hill, they beheld a reef of rocks, on which the sea broke in a frightful manner, but the hazy weather prevented a perfect view; they lodged under a bush during the night, and next day seeing what had the appearance of a channel between the reefs, one of the mates, on the 12th, was sent out in the pinnacle to examine it; and returned at noon, having found between fifteen and twenty-eight fathoms water; but it blew so hard that the mate did not dare to venture into one of the channels, which he said appeared to be very narrow; but the captain judged he had seen them to a disadvantage. While busy in this survey, Mr. Banks was attentive to his favourite pursuit, and collected many plants he had not before seen. This island, visible at twelve leagues distance, and in general barren, they found to be about eight leagues in circumference. There are some sandy bays and low land on the N. W. side, which is covered with long grass, and trees of the same kind with those on the main; lizards of a very large size also abounded, some of which they took. They found also fresh water in two places: one running stream, close to the sea, was a little brackish; the other was a standing pool, perfectly sweet. They were surprised to see, that notwithstanding the great distance of this island from the main, it was sometimes visited by the Indians from thence; as was plain from seven or eight frames of their huts which they found. All these were built on eminences, and from their situation, they judged that the weather here, at certain seasons, is invariably calm and mild. On their return to the ship, the captain named this place Lizard Island, on account of their having seen no other animals but lizards. When returning, they landed on a low sandy island, upon which were birds of various kinds. They

took a nest of young eagles, and therefore called the place Eagle Island. They found also the nest of some other bird of a most enormous size; it was made of sticks upon the ground, and was not less than twenty-six feet in circumference, and two feet eight inches high. They perceived that this place had also been visited by the Indians. During their absence from the ship, the master had landed on several low islands, where he had seen great heaps of turtle shells, and found the fins of them, which the Indians had left hanging on the trees, so fresh, that they were dressed and eaten by the boat's crew.

On Sunday, the 12th, the officers held a consultation, and were unanimous in opinion, that it would be best to leave the coast altogether, till they could approach it with less danger; in consequence of which opinion, they sailed on Monday, the 13th, and got through one of the channels in the reef, happy at finding themselves once more in the open sea, having been surrounded by shoals and rocks for three months. They had now sailed above 1000 miles, during which they had been obliged to keep sounding, without intermission of a single minute; a circumstance which it is supposed never happened to any ship but the Endeavour. The passage through which they passed into the open sea beyond the reef, is in latitude 14 deg. 32 min. S. and may always be known by the three high islands within it, which Capt. Cook called the Islands of Direction, because by these a stranger may find a safe channel through the reef quite to the main. The channel lies from Lizard Island N. E. half N. distant three leagues, and is about one third of a mile broad, and much the same in length. The islands abound in turtle and other fish, and on the beach they found bamboos, cocoa nuts, pumice-stone, and the seeds of plants, supposed to have been wafted thither by the trade winds, as the plants themselves are not natives of this country.

On the 15th, they steered a westerly course, in order to get sight of land, that they might not overshoot the passage,

If a passage there was between this land and New Guinea. Early in the afternoon they had sight of land, which had the appearance of hilly islands, and saw breakers between the vessel and the land, in which there was an opening; to get clear, they set all sail, and stood to the northward till midnight, and then went on a southward tack for about two miles, when the breeze died away to a dead calm. When day-light came on they saw a dreadful surf break at a vast height, within a mile of the ship, towards which the rolling waves carried her with great rapidity. Thus distressed, the boats were sent ahead to tow, and the head of the vessel was brought about, but not till she was within a hundred yards of the rock, between which and her there was nothing left but the chasm, and which had risen and broke to a wonderful height on the rock; but in the moment they expected instant destruction, a breeze hardly discernible, aided the boats in getting the vessel in an oblique direction from the rock. The hopes, however, afforded by this providential circumstance, were destroyed by a perfect calm, which succeeded in a few minutes; yet the breeze once more returned, before they had lost the little ground which had been gained. At this time a small opening was seen in the reef, and a young officer being sent to examine it, found that its breadth did not much exceed the length of the ship, but that there was smooth water on the other side of the rocks. Animated by the desire of preserving life, they now attempted to pass the opening, but this was impossible; for it having become high-water in the interim, the ebb tide rushed through it with amazing impetuosity, carrying the ship about a quarter of a mile from the reef, and she soon reached the distance of near two miles by the help of the boats. When the ebb tide was spent, the tide of flood again drove the vessel very near the rocks, so that the prospect of destruction was renewed, when they discovered another opening, and a light breeze springing up, they entered it, and were driven through it with a rapidity that prevented the ship from striking against either side of the channel. The

ship now came to an anchor, and the crew were grateful for having regained a station, which they had been very lately most anxious to quit. The name of Providence Channel was given to the opening through which the ship had thus escaped the most imminent dangers. A high promontory on the main land in sight, was denominated Cape Weymouth, and a bay near it Weymouth Bay. This day the boats went out to fish, and met with success, particularly in catching cockles, some of which were of such an amazing size, as to require the strength of two men to move them. Mr. Banks likewise succeeded in his search for rare shells and different kinds of coral.

On the 18th, they discovered several small islands, which were called Forbes's Islands, and had a sight of a high point of land on the main, which was named the Bolt Head. On the 19th, they discovered several other small islands, the land of which was low, barren, and sandy. A point was seen, and called Cape Greuville, and a bay which took the name of Temple Bay. In the afternoon many other islands were seen, which were denominated Bird Isles, from their being frequented by numerous flocks of birds. On the 20th, many more small islands were seen, on one of which were a few trees, and several Indian huts, supposed to have been erected by the natives of the main land, as temporary habitations during their visit to these islands. On the 21st, they sailed through a channel, in which was a number of shoals; and they gave the name of York Cape to a point of the main land which forms the side of the channel. A large bay is formed to the south of the cape, which was called Newcastle Bay, and in which are several little islands: on the north side of the cape the land is rather mountainous, but the low parts of the country abound with trees: the islands discovered in the morning of this day, were called York Isles. Afterwards they anchored between some islands and observed that the channel began to grow wider; they perceived two distant points, between which no land could be seen,

so that the hope of having at length explored a passage into the Indian Sea, began to animate every breast; but to bring the matter to a certainty, the captain took a party, and being accompanied by Messrs. Solander and Banks, they landed on an island on which they had seen a number of Indians, ten of whom were on a hill, one of them carrying a bow and a bundle of arrows, the rest armed with lances; and round the neck of two of them hung strings of mother of pearl. Three of these Indians stood on shore as if to oppose the landing of the boat, but they retired before it reached the beach. The captain and his company now ascended a hill, from whence they had a view of nearly forty miles, in which space there was nothing that threatened to oppose their passage, so that the certainty of a channel seemed to be almost indubitable. Previous to their leaving the island, Capt. Cook displayed the English colours, and took possession of all the eastern coast of the country, from the 38th deg. of S. latitude to the present spot, by the name of New South Wales, for his sovereign the King of Great Britain: and three volleys of small arms being fired, and answered by an equal number from the Endeavour, the place received the name of Possession Island. The next morning they saw three naked women collecting shell fish on the beach; and weighing anchor, gave the name of Cape Cornwall to the extreme point of the largest island on the north-west side of the passage: some low islands near the middle of the channel received the name of Wallis's Isle; soon after which the ship came to an anchor, and the long-boat was sent out to sound. Towards evening they sailed again, and the captain landed with Mr. Banks, on a small island which was frequented by immense numbers of birds, the majority of which being boobies, the place received the name of Booby Island. They were now advanced to the northern extremity of New Holland, and had the satisfaction of viewing the open sea to the westward. The N. E. entrance to the passage is formed by the main land of New Holland, and by a number of islands, which took

the name of the Prince of Wales's Islands, and which Capt. Cook imagined may reach to New Guinea. This passage he called Endeavour Straits.

New South Wales is a larger country than any hitherto known which is not deemed a continent, being larger than all Europe, as is proved by the Endeavour having coasted more than 2000 miles, even if her track were reduced to a straight line. Northward of the latitude of 33 deg. the country is hilly, yet not mountainous; but to the southward of that latitude it is mostly low and even ground. The hills in general are diversified by lawns and woods, and many of the valleys abound with herbage, though, on the whole, it cannot be deemed a fertile country. To the northward the grass is not so rich, nor the trees so high as in the southern parts, and almost every where even the largest trees grow at a distance of not less than thirteen yards asunder. In all places where the land forms a bay, the shore is covered with man-groves, that grow about a mile inland, in a swampy ground, which the spring tides always overflow; in some parts are bogs, covered with thick grass and plenty of underwood in the valleys; the soil in general seems unfit for cultivation, though there are many parts where the arts of tillage might be practised with success. There are several salt creeks, running in many directions through the country, where there are also brooks of fresh water, but there are no rivers of any considerable extent; yet it seemed to be well watered, as the time when the ship was on the coast was reckoned the driest season of the year. The gum-tree yields a resin like dragons blood. Here are three kinds of palm-trees, two of which are found only in the northern district. Nuts somewhat resembling chesnuts, which were supposed to be eatable, are produced by one of these trees, but some of the seamen having made free with them were taken ill: two died within a week, and it was not without difficulty that the third was recovered. Another sort of palm is much like the West Indian cabbage-tree, which yields a cabbage of an

agreeable taste. A third sort abounds in the southern part, and produces a small cabbage of a very agreeable flavour, with many nuts, which furnish food for hogs. There is likewise a tree on which grows a purple apple that tastes like a damson, as before observed. Besides these, there is a fig-tree, producing figs, but not of the finest sort, and they have another which bears a sort of plum that is flat on the sides like a cheese. A plant was found here, the leaves of which were like those of the bulrush, yielding a bright yellow resin resembling gambouge, but it did not stain; it had a very agreeable smell. They found two sorts of yams, the one round and covered with stringy fibres, the other in shape like a radish; both of which are of a pleasant taste. A fruit of a disagreeable flavour was found, in shape resembling a pine-apple; and another that was much like a cherry, but had a soft kernel. The country produces purslain and wild parsley. They saw here, besides the beast already mentioned, one that was called a quail: the belly of this animal was quite white, its back was brown with white spots, and it was like a pole-cat. Vast numbers of beautiful pigeons were observed, and the seamen shot many of them, also eagles, hawks, cranes, herons, bustards, crows, parrots, parroquets, cockatoos, and some other birds of fine plumage, besides quails and doves.

In this country there are but few insects, and the ants and moschettos are the chief among them. There are four kinds of the former which deserve particular notice. The first of these are entirely green, and live on trees, where they build their nests in a very curious manner, bending the leaves and glueing them together with an animal juice, supposed to proceed from their own bodies. While several of these animals were busied in this employ, thousands were joined to keep the leaf in its proper situation, which when they were disturbed in their work, flew back with a force that any one would have imagined to be superior to their united strength; at the same time they avenged themselves by severely sting-

ing their disturbers. The second species of ants here are black, and live in the inside of the branches, after they have worked out the pith. The third sort lodged themselves in the root of a plant that twines round the trunks of other trees. This they made hollow, and cut into a great number of passages that ran across each other, yet there was no appearance of the plants having been injured. They are not above half the size of the red ants of this country. As to the fourth sort, they are like the East-Indian white ants, and had one sort of nests as big as a half-peck loaf, which hung from the boughs of trees, and were composed of several minute parts of vegetables, which appeared to be stuck together by the glutinous juice before-mentioned. There was a communication between the cells and passages to other nests upon the same tree; they had also a hollow covered passage to another nest on the ground, at the root of a different tree. The height of the ground nests was found to be of about six feet, and the breadth nearly the same; the outside was plastered with clay almost two inches thick. These had a subterraneous passage leading to the roots of the trees near which they were constructed, from whence these creatures ascended the trunk and branches by covered ways calculated for the purpose. It was concluded that the ants resorted to these ground nests during the wet season, as they were water-proof.

The country does not appear to be inhabited by numbers any way proportioned to its great extent; not above thirty having been seen together but once, which was when those of both sexes and all ages got together on a rock off Botany Bay, to view the ship. None of their villages consisted of more huts than would afford shelter for fourteen or fifteen men, and these were the largest numbers that were assembled with a view to attack the English. No part of the country appeared to be cultivated, whence there must necessarily be fewer inhabitants on the inland parts than on the sea coast. The men are well made, of the middle size, and

active in a high degree ; but their voices are soft, even to effeminacy. Their colour is chocolate ; but they were so covered with dirt, as to look almost as black as negroes. Their hair is naturally long and black, but they commonly cropped it short ; in some few instances it was slightly curled, but in common quite straight ; it was always matted with dirt, yet wholly free from lice ; their beards are thick and bushy, but kept short by singeing. The women were seen only at a distance, as the men constantly left them behind when they crossed the river. The chief ornament of these people is the bone that is thrust through the nose, which the sailors whimsically called the sprit-sail yard ; but besides this they wore necklaces formed of shells, a small cord tied twice or thrice round the arm between the elbow and the shoulder, and a string of plaited human hair round the waist. Some few of them had an ornament of shells hanging across the breast. Besides these ornaments, they painted their bodies white and red, in stripes of different dimensions ; and they had a circle of white round each eye, and spots of it on the face. Their ears were bored, but they did not wear ear-rings. They accepted whatever was given them, but seemed to have no idea of making an adequate return ; and they would not part with their ornaments for any thing that was offered in exchange. Their bodies were marked with scars, which they signified were in remembrance of the deceased. Their huts were built with small rods, the two ends of which were fixed in the ground, so as to form the figure of an oven ; they were covered with pieces of bark and palm-leaves. The door of this building, which is only high enough to sit upright in, is opposite to the fire place. They sleep with their heels turned up towards their heads, and even in this posture the hut will not hold more than four people. In the northern parts, where the weather is warmer, one side of the houses was left open, and the other opposed to whatever wind might blow at the time there ; huts were only built for temporary use, and left behind

when they removed to other parts of the country; but if their stay was only for a night or two, they had no other protection from the weather than what the grass and bushes afforded. While the huts on the main land were turned from the wind, those on the islands were towards it: a kind of proof that they visit these islands in fine weather, and enjoy the refreshing breeze while they slept. These huts are furnished with a kind of bucket for fetching water, made of an oblong piece of bark, tied up at each end with a twig of a tree; and this is the only furniture of the house. On their backs they have a kind of bag, of the size and form of a cabbage-net, in which they carry their fish-hooks and lines, and the shells of which they make these hooks; the ornaments which they wear consist of some points of darts, and two or three bits of paint: and in this narrow compass lie all their riches. They feed on the kangaroo, and several kinds of birds, when they can catch them; they likewise eat yams, and various kinds of fruit; but the principal article of their subsistence is fish. They were frequently observed with the leaves of a tree in their mouths, but whether it had the quality either of tobacco or beetle could not be known; but it was observed not to discolour their lips or teeth.

From the notches that were seen in a great number of trees, for the purpose of climbing them, it was imagined that their method of taking the kangaroo, was by striking it with their lances as it passed under the tree. In these likewise, it is probable, that they took the birds while they were roosting, as they seemed too shy to be otherwise caught. Their method of producing fire, and extending the flames of it, is very singular: having wrought one end of a stick to an obtuse point, they place this point upon a piece of dry wood, and turning the upright stick very fast backward and forward between their hands, fire is soon produced, nor is it increased with less celerity. One of the natives was frequently observed to run along the sea coast, leaving fire in different places. The method taken to do this was as

follows : before he set off he wrapped up a little spark of fire in dry grass, and the quickness of his motion soon fanning it into a flame, he then placed it on the ground, and putting a spark of it in another bit of grass, ran on again and increased the number of fires at pleasure. These fires were supposed to be intended for the taking of the kangaroo, as that animal was so very shy of fire, that when pursued by the dogs, it would not pass places which had been newly burnt, even when the fire was extinguished.

The natives of New South Wales make use of spears or lances, but these are very differently constructed : those that were seen in the southern parts of the country had four prongs, pointed with bone, and barbed, and the points were rubbed with a kind of wax, the smoothness of which made an easier passage into what was struck by them. On the contrary, the lances in the northern parts have only one point; the shafts of them are of different lengths, from eight to fourteen feet, are made of the stalk of a plant not unlike a bulrush, and consist of several joints let into each other, and tied together. The points of these lances are sometimes made of fish-bone, and sometimes of a hard heavy wood ; they are barbed with other pieces of wood or stone, so that when they have entered any depth into the body, they cannot be drawn out without tearing the flesh in a shocking manner, or leaving splinters behind them. When the natives intend to wound at a considerable distance, they discharge this instrument with a throwing stick, but if the object be near them, it is thrown from the hand only. The throwing stick is a piece of smooth, hard, red wood, half an inch thick, two inches broad, and about three feet in length, having a cross piece near four inches long at one end, and a small knob at the other. A small hollow is made in the shaft of the lance, near the point, and in this hollow the knob is received, but on being forced forward, it will easily slip from it. The lance being placed on this throwing stick, the Indian holds it over his shoulder, shakes it, and then throws both lance

and stick with his utmost power; but as the cross-piece strikes the shoulder, the sudden jerk stops the stick, while the lance is driven forward with amazing rapidity, and is generally so well aimed, that a mark at the distance of fifty yards is more surely struck with it than by a bullet from a gun. These people make use of shields made of the bark of trees, of about eighteen inches broad, and three feet long. Many trees were seen from whence the bark had been taken, and others on which the shields were cut out but not taken away. In the northern parts of this country the canoes are formed by hollowing the trunk of a tree, and it was conjectured that this operation must have been performed by fire, as the natives did not appear to have any instrument proper for the purpose. The canoes are in length about fourteen feet, and so narrow that they would be frequently overset but that they are provided with an out-rigger. The natives row them with paddles, using both hands in that employment. The canoes in the southern parts are formed of a piece of bark, four yards long, fastened together at each end, and kept open by a piece of wood passing from side to side. In deep water these are rowed by paddles, of about a foot and a half in length, the rower having one in each hand, but in shallow water they are pushed forward by means of a long stick. As these vessels are extremely light, and draw very little water, the Indians run them on the mud banks in search of shell-fish, some of which, it is probable, they broil and eat as soon as they are taken, as it was remarked that in the centre of these vessels there was a fire usually kept burning on a quantity of seaweed. The natives have no tools but a wooden mallet, a kind of wedge, and an adze made of stone, with some pieces of coral and shells, which may possibly be applied to the purposes of cutting. They polish the points of their lances, and their throwing-sticks, with the leaves of a tree which has the appearance of the wild fig, which bites with a sharpness almost equal to that of a rasp. Four people

are the greatest number that a canoe will contain; and when more than this number were to pass a river, three were landed out of the first freight, and one man went back for the rest.

The following may serve as a specimen of their language.

Aco, the arms	Moree, the hair of the head
Aibudje, to yawn	Mootjel, a woman
Bamma, a man	Mulere, the teeth
Bonjoo, the nose	Nakil, the little finger
Boota, to eat	Peegoorga, the legs
Chuoula, to drink.	Peeta, the forehead
Cotta, a dog	Poapoa, the earth
Coyor, the breast	Pongo, the knee
Deomboo, the neck	Poona, to sleep
Dunjo, a father	Poorai, water
Eboorbalga, the thumbs	Poteea, fish
Edamal, the feet	Putai, a turtle
Eiyamoae, the crown of the head	Tabugga, a fly
Eya & ba, that or this	Tacal, the chin
Galan, the sun	Te, a or the
Garbar, the eye-brows	Tannapuke, the hole made in the nostrils for the bone ornament.
Gippa, the belly	Tocaya, sit down
Kere, the sky	Tumurre, a son
Kolke, the nails	Unjar, the tongue
Mailelel, to swim	Wagegee, the head
Maianang, fire	Walloo, the temples
Marra, to go	Waller, the beard
Mangal, the hands	Walboolbool, a butterfly
Meul, the eyes	Wonanania, asleep
Melea, the ears	Wulgar, the clouds
Mingoree, to dance	Yembe, the lips
Mocoo, the back	Zococoo, wood
Morcol, the throat	

Though it appeared evident that the natives of these islands waged war with each other, by the weapons they

possessed, yet not a wound received from their enemies, appeared on any part of their bodies.

On Friday, the 24th, they got under sail, steering N. W. and in a few hours one of the boats a-head made the signal for shoal-water. They instantly brought the ship to, with all her sails standing, and a survey being taken of the sea around her, it was found that she had met with another narrow escape, as she was almost encompassed with shoals, and was likewise so situated between them that she must have struck before the boat's crew had made the signal, if she had been half the length of a cable on either side. In the afternoon they made sail with the ebb tide, and got out of danger before sun-set.

On the 27th, they pursued their voyage, shortening sail at night, and tacking till day-break of the 28th, when they steered due N. in search of New Guinea. Many parts of the sea were covered with a kind of brown scum, to which the sailors gave the name of spawn. It is formed of an incredible number of minute particles, each of which, when seen through a microscope, was found to consist of a considerable number of tubes, and these tubes were subdivided into little cells. The scum being burnt, and yielding no smell like what is produced by animal substances, they concluded it was of the vegetable kind. This has often been seen on the coast of Brazil, and generally makes its appearance near the land. A bird called the Noddy was taken this evening among the rigging of the ship. Land having been this day discovered from the mast head, they stood off and on all night, and at day-break they sailed towards it with a brisk gale.

On Thursday, the 30th, they had sight of land; its appearance was flat and woody. Abundance of the brown scum was still seen on the surface of the sea, and the sailors, convinced that it was not spawn, gave it the whimsical name of sea-saw-dust. They now held a northward course, scarcely within sight of land, and as the water was but just deep

enough to navigate the vessel, many unsuccessful attempts were made to bring her near enough to get on shore; it was therefore determined to land in one of the boats, while the ship kept plying off and on. In consequence of this resolution, on the 3rd of September Capt. Cook, Mr. Banks, and Dr. Solander, attended by the boat's crew, and Mr. Banks's servant, set off from the ship in the pinnace, being in all twelve persons, well armed. They rowed directly to the shore, but when they came within two hundred yards of it, they found the water so shallow, that they were obliged to leave the boat in the care of two of the sailors, and wade to land. They saw several prints of human feet on the sand, below high water mark, from whence it was evident that the natives had been there. They walked by the side of a wood, and came to a grove of cocoa-nut trees, not far from which was a shed or hut, which had been covered with leaves, and near it lay a number of fresh shells of the fruit. At a small distance from this place they found plantains. Having now advanced about a quarter of a mile from the boat, three Indians rushed from the wood with a hideous shout, at about the distance of a hundred yards; and as they ran towards the English, the foremost threw something out of his hand, which flew on one side of him, and burnt like gun-powder, but made no report: the other two threw their lances. The crew then discharged their pieces, loaded with small shot only; upon which the Indians cast a third dart. The crew now loaded with ball, and fired a second time, and it is probable some of them were wounded, as they all took to their heels with great agility. They now returned to the boat. On the way they perceived signals on board, that more natives were coming in a body; and before they got to the water, perceived several Indians coming round a point at the distance of five hundred yards. When they saw the crew they halted, and seemed to wait till their main body should join them. They continued in this station,

without giving any further interruption, while the crew entered the water and waded to the boat.

These Indians made much the same appearance as the New Hollanders, being nearly of the same stature, with their hair cropped short. They were also, like them, stark naked. During this time they were shouting at a distance, and letting off their fires, which seemed to be discharged by a short piece of stick, probably a hollow cane; this being swung sideways, produced fire and smoke like that occasioned by a musket. The crew on board the ship saw this strange appearance, and thought the natives had fire arms. Those who went out in the boat, and had rowed abreast of them, fired some muskets over their heads, the balls of which being heard by the natives rattling among the trees, they retreated very deliberately, and the people in the boat returned to the ship. Upon examining the lances that were thrown, it was found they were made of a reed, or bamboo cane, the points of which were of hard wood, and barbed in many places. They were light, ill made, and about four feet long. Such was the force with which they were discharged, that they went beyond the English, though they were at sixty yards distance, but in what manner they were discharged they could not determine: probably they might be thrown with a stick, in the manner practised by the New Hollanders. This place is in latitude 6 deg. 15 min. S. The whole coast of this country is low land, but covered with a luxuriance of wood and herbage, beyond description beautiful. The cocoa-nut, bread-fruit, and plantain trees all flourished here in the highest perfection, besides most of the shrubs, trees, and plants, that were common to the South Sea Islands. This day, Monday, Sep. 3rd, they made sail to the westward, being resolved to spend no more time upon this coast.

On Saturday, the 8th, they passed two small islands, on one of which Capt. Cook would have landed, but having only ten fathoms water, the ground being also rocky, and the wind

blowing fresh, they might have endangered the safety of the ship. They now sailed at a moderate rate till next morning at three o'clock, after which they had no ground with 120 fathoms. Before noon they had sight of land, which was conjectured to be either the Arrou Islands, or Timor Laoet. On Wednesday, they saw a number of fires and smoke in several places, from whence it was conjectured that the place was well peopled. The land near the shore was covered with high trees, not unlike pines; farther back were cocoon-trees and mangroves. It was observed that the hills reached in many places quite to the sea-coast, and where that was the case, there were large and noble groves of the cocoon-nut tree, which ran about a mile up the country. The plantations were surrounded with fences, and extended nearly to the summits of the most lofty hills, yet neither natives nor cattle were seen on any of them. Fine groves of the fan-palm shaded the houses from the rays of the sun.

On the 16th, at ten o'clock at night, a dull reddish light was seen in the air, many parts of which emitted rays of a brighter colour, which soon vanished and were succeeded by others of the same kind. This phenomenon, which reached about ten degrees above the horizon, bore a considerable resemblance to the Aurora Borealis, only that the rays of light which it emitted had no tremulous motion: it was surveyed for hours, during which time its brightness continued undiminished. As the ship was clear of all the islands which had been laid down in such maps as were on board, they made sail during the night, and were surprised the next morning at the sight of an island to the W. S. W. which they supposed was a new discovery. Before noon they had sight of houses, groves of cocoon-nut trees, and large flocks of sheep. This was a welcome sight to people whose health was declining for want of refreshment, and it was instantly resolved to attempt the purchase of what they stood so much in need of. The second lieutenant was immediately dispatched in the pinnace in search of a landing-place; and he took with him such

things as it was thought might be acceptable to the natives. During Mr. Gore's absence, the people on board saw two men on horseback upon the hills, who frequently stopped to take a view of the vessel. The lieutenant soon returned with an account that he had entered a little cove, near which stood a few houses; that several men advanced and invited him to land; and that they conversed together as well as they could by signs. He reported that these people were very like the Malays, in person and dress, and that they had no other arms but a knife, which each of them wore in his girdle.

The lieutenant not being able to find any place in which the ship might come to anchor, he was dispatched with money and goods to buy such necessaries as were immediately wanted for the sick. Dr. Solander attended the lieutenant, and during their absence, the ship stood on and off the shore. Soon after the boat had put off, two other horsemen were seen from the ship, one of whom had a laced hat on, and was dressed in a coat and waistcoat, of the fashion of Europe. These men rode about on shore taking little notice of the boat, but regarding the ship with the utmost attention. As soon as the boat reached the shore, some other persons on horseback, and many on foot, hastened to the spot, and it was observed that some cocoa-nuts were put into the boat, from whence it was concluded, that a traffic had commenced with the natives. A signal being made from the boat that the ship might anchor in a bay at some distance, she immediately bore away for it. When the lieutenant came on board, he reported, that he could not purchase any cocoa-nuts, as the owner of them was absent, and that what he had brought were given him, in return for which he had presented the natives with some linen. The method by which he learned that there was a harbour in the neighbourhood, was by the natives drawing a kind of rude map on the sand, in which the harbour and a town near it, was represented; it was likewise hinted to him, that fruit, fowls, hogs, and sheep might be had in great abundance. He saw several of the principal

inhabitants of the island, who had chains of gold about their necks, and wore fine linen. The word Portuguese being frequently repeated by the Indians, it was conjectured that some natives of Portugal were in the island, and one of the boat's crew being of that kingdom, he spoke to the islanders in his own language, but soon found that they had only learned a few words, of which they did not know the meaning. While the natives were endeavouring to represent the situation of the town near the harbour, one of them, in order to be more particular in directions, informed the English that they would see something which he endeavoured to describe by placing his fingers across each other; and the Portuguese sailor took it for granted, that he could mean nothing but a cross. When the boat's crew were on the point of returning to the ship, the gentleman who had been seen on horseback, in the dress of Europe, came down to the beach; but the lieutenant did not think it proper to hold a conference with him, because he had left his commission on board the ship.

When the ship entered the bay, an Indian town was seen at a distance; upon which a jack was hoisted on the fore-top-mast head; presently afterwards three guns were fired, and Dutch colours were hoisted in the town; the ship however held on her way, and came to an anchor at seven in the evening. The colours being seen hoisted on the beach in the morning, the captain concluded that the Dutch had a settlement on the island; he therefore dispatched his second lieutenant to acquaint the governor, or other principal resident, who they were, and that the ship had put in for necessary refreshments. The lieutenant having landed, was received by a kind of guard of something more than twenty Indians, armed with muskets, who after they had taken down their colours from the beach, proceeded without the least military order, and thus escorted him to the town, where the colours had been hoisted the preceding evening. The lieutenant was now conducted to the raja, or king of the

island, to whom, by means of a Portuguese interpreter, he made known his business. The raja said he was ready to supply the ship with the necessary refreshments, but that he could not trade with any other people than the Dutch, with whom he was in alliance, without having first obtained their consent; he added, however, that he would make application to the Dutch agent, who was the only white man among them. To this agent, whose name was Lange, and who proved to be the person that was seen from the ship in the European dress, a letter was dispatched, and in a few hours he came to the town, behaved politely to the lieutenant, and told him he might buy what he thought proper of the inhabitants of the island. This offer being freely made, and readily accepted, the raja and Mr. Lange intimated their wishes to go on board the ship, and that two of the boat's crew might be left as hostages for their safe return. The lieutenant gratified them in both these requests, and took them on board just before dinner was served. As Dr. Solander and another gentleman on board, were tolerably proficient in Dutch, they acted as interpreters between Mr. Lange and the officers, while some of the sailors, who understood Portuguese, conversed with such of the raja's attendants as spoke that language. The dinner consisted chiefly of mutton, which when the raja tasted, he requested of them an English sheep, and the only one they had left was presented to him. Their compliance in this particular, encouraged the king to ask for an English dog, and Mr. Banks politely gave up his greyhound. A spying glass was also put into his hand, Mr. Johan Christopher Lange having intimated that such a present would be very acceptable. Their visitors now informed them that the island abounded with buffaloes, sheep, hogs, and fowls, plenty of which should be driven down to the shore the next day. This put them all in such high spirits that the liquor circulated rather faster than either the Indians or the Saxon could bear; but they had, however, the resolution to express a

desire to depart before they were quite intoxicated. They were dismissed with many presents, and on their departure were saluted with nine guns. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander accompanied them, and when they put off returned their compliments with three cheers. These gentlemen on their arrival at the town, tasted their palm-wine, which was the fresh juice of the trees, unfermented. It had a sweet, but not disagreeable taste and hopes were entertained that it might contribute to recover the sick from the scurvy. The houses of the natives consisted of only a thatched roof, supported over a boarded floor, by pillars about four feet high.

Wednesday, the 19th, in the morning, Capt. Cook, attended by several gentlemen, went on shore to return the raja's visit; but their principal intention was to purchase the cattle and fowls, which they had been assured the preceding day should be driven down to the beach. They were greatly chagrined at finding no steps had been taken to fulfil this promise: however, they proceeded to the house of assembly which, with a few other houses, built by the Dutch East India Company, are distinguished from the rest, by having two pieces of wood, resembling a pair of cows' horns, fixed at each end of the roof; and these they supposed to be what the Portuguese sailor construed into crosses, from the Indian having crossed his fingers when he was describing the town. At the house of assembly they saw Mr. Lange and the raja, whose name was A Madocho Lomi Djara, surrounded by many of the principal people. Capt. Cook having informed them, that he had loaded his boat with goods, which he wished to exchange for necessary refreshments, permission was given him to land them. They now endeavoured to make an agreement for the hogs, sheep, and Buffaloes, which were to be paid for in cash; but this business was no sooner hinted than Mr. Lange took his leave, having first told the captain that he had received a letter from the governor of Concordia, in Timor, the contents of which should be disclosed at his return. As the morning was now

far advanced, and they had no fresh provisions on board, they requested the raja's permission to buy a small hog and some rice, and to order his people to dress the dinner. He very obligingly replied, that if they could eat victuals dressed by his subjects, which he could scarcely suppose, he would do himself the honour of entertaining them. A dinner being thus procured, the captain sent off his boat to bring liquors from the ship. It was ready about five o'clock, and after they were seated on mats, which were spread on the floor, it was served in six and thirty baskets. They were then conducted by turns to a hole in the floor, near which stood a man with water in a vessel, made of the leaves of the fan-palm, who assisted them in washing their hands. This done, they returned to their places and expected the king. Having waited some time, they inquired the reason of his absence, and were informed that the person who gave the entertainment never partook of it with his guests; but that the raja was ready to taste of what was provided, if they entertained a thought that the victuals were poisoned. They declared that they did not harbour any such suspicion, and desired that the custom of the country might not be violated on their account.

When dinner was ended, the captain invited the raja to drink wine with them; but he excused himself, saying, the man who entertained his guests should never get drunk with them. The prime minister and Mr. Lange were of the party, and the English made a luxurious meal. The pork and rice were excellent, and the broth not to be despised; but the spoons, made of leaves, were so small, that few had patience to use them. When the wine had circulated some time, they took an opportunity to inquire after the buffaloes and sheep, of which they had not yet heard a syllable, though they were to have been at the beach early in the morning. Mr. Lange informed the captain that in a letter, which he pretended to have received from the governor of Concordia, instructions were given, that if the ship should touch at this island, and

be in want of provisions, she should be supplied ; but he was not to permit her to remain longer than was necessary : nor were any large presents to be made to the natives of low rank, but that any trifling civilities received from the Indians might be acknowledged by a present of beads, or other articles of very small value. It is probable that the whole of this story was a fiction ; and that by precluding our liberality to the natives, the Saxon Dutchman hoped more easily to draw all the presents of any value into his own pocket. In the evening they were informed that a few sheep had been brought to the beach, which had been driven away before the captain could procure money from the ship to pay for them. Some fowls however were bought, and a large quantity of syrup, made of the juice of the palm-tree. This, though infinitely superior to molasses or treacle, sold at a very low price. Vexed at being thus disappointed, they remonstrated with Mr. Lange, who said, had they gone down to the beach themselves, they might have purchased what they pleased ; but that the natives were afraid of being imposed upon by the seamen with counterfeit money. Although this story was not credited, yet Capt. Cook repaired to the beach, but no cattle were to be seen, nor were any at hand to be bought. During his absence, Lange told Mr. Banks that the Indians were offended that gold had not been offered, and without which nothing could be bought. Mr. Banks declined holding farther conversation with a man who had been guilty of such repeated falsities, and left him abruptly.

On the 20th, Dr. Solander went on shore with Capt Cook, and while the former went up to the town to speak to Lange, the captain remained on the beach with a view of purchasing provisions. Here he met with an old Indian, who appeared to have some authority, and had among the crew been distinguished by the name of the prime minister. In order to engage this man in their interest, the captain presented him with a spying glass. Nothing but a small buffalo was offered to be sold, and the price asked was five guineas : nearly

twice its real value. Three however were offered, which the dealer thought a good price; but said, that he must acquaint the king with what had been bid before he could strike the bargain. A messenger was immediately dispatched to inform the raja, who on his return brought word that not less than five guineas would be taken. The captain refused to give this sum, and a second messenger was sent. During his absence, Dr. Solander was seen coming from the town, followed by above a hundred men, some of whom were armed with muskets, and others with lances. Upon enquiring into the meaning of this hostile appearance, the doctor said that Lange stated that the people would not trade with them, because they had refused to give more than half the value for their commodities, and that all trade would be prohibited after that day.

The English gentlemen had no doubt but that this order of the raja was a contrivance of Lange, and while they were debating how to act in this critical conjuncture, anxious to bring the affair to a speedy issue, Lange's adherents began to drive away such of the natives as had brought palm-syrup and fowls to sell, and others who were now bringing sheep and buffaloes to the market.

At this juncture Capt. Cook happening to look at the old man who had been distinguished by the name of prime minister, imagined he saw in his features a disapprobation of the present proceedings; and, willing to improve the advantage, he grasped the Indian's hand, and gave him an old broad-sword. This well-timed present produced all the good effects that could be wished; the prime minister was enraptured with this honourable mark of distinction, and the whole business was now accomplished. The natives, eager to supply whatever was wanted, brought their cattle for sale, and the market was soon stocked. For the first two buffaloes, Capt. Cook gave ten guineas; but he afterwards purchased them by exchange, giving a musket for each, and at this rate he might have bought any number he thought

proper. There remained no doubt but that Lango had a profit out of the two that were sold; and that his reason for saying that the natives would take nothing but gold for their cattle, was, that he might the more easily share in the produce. Capt. Cook purchased of the natives of this island some hundred gallons of palm-syrup, a small quantity of garlic, a large number of eggs, some limes and cocoa-nuts, thirty dozen of fowls, three hogs, six sheep, and nine buffaloes. Having obtained these necessary articles, they now prepared for sailing from this place.

This island is named Savu and is situated in 10 deg. 35 min. S. latitude, and 237 deg. 30 min. W. longitude. Its length is between twenty and thirty miles; but its breadth could not be ascertained. At the time the Endeavour lay there, it was near the end of the dry season, when it had not rained for almost seven months, nor was there a running stream of fresh water to be seen, and the natives were supplied only by small springs, situated at a distance up the country. The rains in this country cease in March or April, and fall again in October or November. This island produces indigo, millet, maize, tobacco, cotton, betel, tamarinds, limes, oranges, mangoes, guinea-corn, rice, callavances, and water-melons. A small quantity of cinnamon was seen, and some European herbs. There are fruits of various kinds, and particularly the blimbi, which has a sharp taste, and is a fine pickle.

Several buffaloes were seen on this island which were almost as large as an ox; and from a pair of enormous horns of this animal, which Mr Banks saw, it was supposed that some of them were much larger; yet they did not weigh more than half as much as an ox of the same size, having lost the greater part of their flesh through the late dry weather; the meat however was juicy, and of a delicate flavour. The horns of these animals bend backwards; they have no dewlaps, and scarce any hair on their skins, and their ears are remarkably large. The other tame animals on the island

are dogs, cats, pigeons, fowls, hogs, goats, sheep, asses, and horses. Few of their horses are above twelve hands high, yet they are full of mettle, and pace naturally in an expeditious manner. The hogs of this country are fed on the husks of rice and palm-syrup mixed with water, and are remarkably fine and fat. The sheep are not unlike a goat and are therefore called Cabaritos ; their ears, which are long, hang down under their horns ; their noses are arched, and their bodies covered with hair. The fowls are of the game kind, and though they are rather large, the hen lays a very small egg. The sea coast furnishes the inhabitants with turtle, but not in any great abundance.

The people of this island are rather below the middle stature ; their hair is black and straight, and persons of all ranks, as well those that are exposed to the weather, as those that are not, have one general complexion, which is dark brown. The men are well formed and sprightly, and their features differ much from each other : the women, on the contrary, have all one set of features, are very short and broad built. The men have silver pincers hanging by strings round their necks, with which they pluck out the hair of their beards ; and both men and women root out the hair under their arms : the hair of the women is tied in a club behind, while the men wear a kind of turban of muslin, cotton, or silk handkerchiefs, but the heads of the women have no covering. The dress of the men consists of two pieces of cotton cloth, one of which is bound round the middle, and the lower edge of it being drawn pretty tight between the legs, the upper edge is left loose, so as to form a kind of pocket, in which they carry knives and other things ; the other piece being passed under the former on the back of the wearer, the ends of it are carried over the shoulders, and tucked into the pocket before. The women draw the upper edge of the piece round the waist tight, while the lower edge dropping to the knees, makes a kind of petticoat : the other piece of cloth is fastened across the breast, and under the arms.

This cloth, which is manufactured by the natives, is dyed blue while in the yarn; and as it is of various shades, it looks very beautiful.

Their ornaments are very numerous, and consist of rings, beads, worn round the neck and on the wrists, and chains of plaited gold wire are likewise worn by both sexes; but the women had likewise girdles of beads round their waists, which served to keep up their petticoats. Both sexes had their ears bored, but no ornaments were observed in any of them. One person, by way of finery, had a silver headed cane, marked with a kind of cypher, consisting of the Roman letters V. O. C. which might have been a present from the Dutch East India Company, whose mark it is. They saw boys about twelve or fourteen years old, having spiral circles of thick brass wire passed three or four times round their arms, above the elbow; and upon the same part of the arm, some of the men had rings of ivory, two-inches broad, and about one in thickness; these were the sons of the raja or chief, whose high births were distinguished by these cumbrous ornaments. Most of the men had their names marked on their arms, and the women had a square ornament of flourished lines imprinted just under the elbow. On enquiry it was found that this practice had been common among the Indians long before they were visited by any Europeans; and in the neighbouring islands, it was said, the inhabitants were marked with circles upon their necks and breasts. There was great similitude between these marks and those made by tattowing in the South Sea islands.

The houses of Savu are all built upon the same plan, but differ in size, according to the rank and wealth of the proprietors, being from twenty feet to four hundred, and they are fixed on posts of about four or five feet from the ground. One end of these is driven into the ground, and upon the other is laid a floor of wood, which makes a vacant space of four feet between the floor of the house and the ground.

On this floor are raised other pillars that support a roof of sloping sides, which meet in a ridge at the top, like those of our barns; the eaves of this roof, which is thatched with palm leaves, reach within two feet of the floor, and overhang it as much. The space within is generally divided lengthways into three equal parts; the middle part, or centre, is inclosed by a partition of four sides, reaching about six feet above the floor, and one or two small rooms are also sometimes taken off from the sides; the rest of the space under the roof is open, so as freely to admit the air and the light. The particular uses of these apartments the English could not learn, except that the close room in the centre was appropriated to the women.

These people eat of all the tame animals produced in the island; but they prefer the hog to all others; next to this they admire horse-flesh; to which succeeds the buffalo, then poultry; and they prefer cats and dogs to goats and sheep. Fish is not eaten but by the poor, nor by them, except when their duty or business requires them to be upon the beach.

The most remarkable and useful tree that grows on the island is the fan-palm. Its uses are so various, that it requires particular notice. At certain times it is a succedaneum for all other food both to man and beast. A kind of wine, called toddy, is extracted from this tree, by cutting the buds, and tying under them small baskets, made of the leaves. The juice which trickles into these vessels is collected morning and evening, and is the common drink of all the inhabitants. The natives call this liquor *dua* or *duao*, and both the syrup and sugar *gula*. The syrup is not unlike treacle, but is somewhat thicker, and has a more agreeable taste. The sugar is of a reddish brown, and to the taste was more agreeable than any cane sugar unrefined. It was apprehended that the syrup, of which some of the crew eat great quantities, would occasion fluxes, but the effects produced were rather salutary than hurtful. This syrup is used to fatten hogs, dogs, and fowls; and the inhabitants

themselves have subsisted upon this alone for several months when other crops have failed and animal food has been scarce. With the leaves of this tree the natives thatch their houses, and make baskets, cups, umbrellas, and tobacco-pipes. They make least account of the fruit ; and as the buds are wounded for the tuac or toddy, there is very little produced. It is nearly of the size of a full grown turnip ; and the kernel must be eaten before it is ripe, otherwise it is so hard that the teeth will not penetrate.

As fire-wood is scarce, the natives make a little fuel answer the ends of cookery and distillation. A hollow is dug under ground, like a rabbit burrow, in an horizontal direction, about two yards long, with a hole at each end, one of which is large, and the other small. The fire is put in at the large hole, and the small one serves for a draught. Circular holes are made through the earth which covers this cavity, on which are set earthen pots, large in the middle, and smaller towards the bottom, so that the fire acts upon a large part of the surface. They contain generally about eight or ten gallons each, and it is surprising to see with what a small quantity of fuel they are kept boiling. In this manner they boil all their victuals, and make all their syrup and sugar. The Peruvian Indians have a contrivance of the same kind ; and perhaps by the poor in other countries it might be adopted with advantage.

In this island both sexes are enslaved by the pernicious custom of chewing beetle and areca, contracted even while they are children. With these they mix a sort of white lime, composed of coral stones and shells, to which is added frequently a small quantity of tobacco, whereby their mouths are rendered disgusting both to the sight and the smell ; for the tobacco infects their breath, and the beetle and lime make their teeth both black and rotten. Many of both sexes had their fore teeth consumed almost down to the gums, and corroded like iron by rust. This loss of teeth has generally been attributed to the tough stringy coat of the areca nut ;

but the English gentlemen imputed it wholly to the lime ; for the teeth are not loosened or broken, as might be the case by chewing of hard or rough substances, but they are gradually wasted, as metals are by powerful acids ; and they may not be mistaken who suppose that sugar has a bad effect upon the teeth of Europeans, seeing refined sugar contains a considerable quantity of lime, and it is well known that lime will destroy bone of any kind. When the natives are not at any time chewing beetle and areca, they then are smoking. The manner of doing this is by rolling up a small quantity of tobacco, and putting it into one end of a tube, about six inches long, as thick as a goose quill, and made of a palm-leaf. The women in particular were observed to swallow the smoke.

This island is divided into five districts or nigrees, each of which is governed by a raja. The inhabitants are also divided into five ranks ; namely, the rajas, the land owners, manufacturers, servants, and slaves. The rajas are chief ; the land owners are respected in proportion to their estates, and number of their slaves, which last are bought and sold with the estates. A fat hog is the price of a slave if sold separately. Notwithstanding a man may thus sell his slave, or convey him with his lands, yet his power does not extend farther, as he may not even strike him without the raja's permission. The estates of these land-holders are of very different extent ; some of them not possessing above five slaves whilst others have 500. When a man of rank goes abroad, one of his slaves follows him with a silver hilted sword or hanger, ornamented with horse-hair tassels, and another carries a small bag containing tobacco, beetle, areca, and lime. This is all the state that even the rajas themselves take upon them.

These people have a great veneration for antiquity. Their principal boast is of a long line of venerable ancestors. Those houses that have been well tenanted for successive generations, are held in the highest esteem : even the stones which

have been worn smooth by having been sat upon for ages, derive a certain value from that circumstance. He whose progenitors have bequeathed him any of these stones, or whose wealth has enabled him to purchase them, causes them to be ranged round his habitation, for his servants and slaves to sit upon. The raja causes a large stone to be set up in the chief town of each district, as a monument of his reign. In the province of Seba, thirteen such stones were seen, as well as the remains of several others which were much worn. These stones were all placed on the top of a hill, and some of them were of such an enormous size, that it was amazing by what means they could have been brought thither; nor could any information on this head be obtained from the natives: these monuments, however, indicated that for a series of generations this island had been regularly governed. When a raja dies, proclamation is made that all those who have been his subjects shall hold a solemn festival. On this they proceed to the hill where the stones are erected, and feast for several weeks, killing all the animals that suit their purpose, wherever they can be found, in order to furnish the treat, which is daily served up on the monumental stones.

The inhabitants of this island are in general robust and healthy, and had every mark of longevity. The small pox, however, is a distemper with which they are acquainted, and which they dread as much as a pestilence. When any person is attacked by it, he is carried to a spot at a distance from the houses, where his food is conveyed to him by means of a long stick, as no one dares to venture near him, and he is there left to live or die!

The Portuguese very early visited this island, on which they established a settlement, but they were soon afterwards succeeded by the Dutch, who without formally taking possession of the place, sent a number of trading vessels to establish a treaty of commerce with the natives. The principal object of this treaty is, that the rajas shall furnish the Dutch with

rice, maize, &c. annually, and the Dutch in return supply them with arrack, cutlery wares, linen, silk, &c. The raja stipulated that a Dutch resident should be constantly on the island; and Mr. Lange was sent thither in that capacity. He had been ten years on the island, when the Endeavour touched there, during all which time he had not seen any white persons, except those who came annually in the Dutch vessel, to carry off the rice, as above mentioned. He was married to a native of Timor, and lived in the same manner as the natives of Savu, whose language he spoke better than any other. He sat on the ground like the Indians, and chewed beetle, and seemed in every thing to resemble them except in his complexion and the dress of his country.

Robberies are scarcely ever committed. Murder is unknown among them; and though no man is allowed more than one wife, they are strangers to adultery. When any disputes arise between the natives, the determination of the raja is decisive and satisfactory. Some observations were made on the language of the natives, by the gentlemen, while the vessel lay here; and a kind of vocabulary formed, a sketch of which is here inserted:

Momonne, a man	Tooga, the thighs
Mobunne, a woman	Rootoo, the knees
Catoo, the head	Baibo, the legs
Row catoo, the hair	Dunceala, the feet
Matta, the eyes	Kissovei yilla, the toes
Rowna matta, the eye-lashes	Camacoo, the arms
Swanga, the nose	Wulaba, the hand
Cavarunga, the cheeks	Cabaou, a buffalo
Wodeele, the ears	Djara, a horse
Vaio, the tongue	Vavee, a hog
Lacoco, the neck	Doomba, a sheep
Soosoo, the breasts	Kesavoo, a goat
Caboo, soosoo, the nipples	Guaca, a dog
Dulloo, the belly	Maio, a cat
Assoo, the navel	Mannu, a fowl

Carow, the tail	Tatee too, to rise
Pangoutoo, the beak	Usse, one
Ica, a fish	Lhua, two
Unjoo, a turtle	Tullu, three
Nieu, a cocoa-nut	Uppah, four
Boacerec, fan-palm	Lumme, five
Calella, areca	Unna, six
Canana, beetle	Pedu, seven
Aou, lime	Arru, eight
Maanadoo, a fish-hook	Saou, nine
Tata, tatau, marks on the skin	Singooroo, ten
Lodo, the sun	Singurungusse, eleven
Wurroo, the moon	Lhuangooroo, 20
Aidassee, the sea	Singassu, 100
Ailea, water	Setuppah, 1000
Aoe, fire	Selacussa, 10, 000
Maate, to die	Serata, 100,000
Tabudge, to sleep	Sereboo, 1,000,000

It is necessary to observe, that this island has not been laid down in any charts hitherto published, and except a few facts in which the English were parties, the account here given is founded merely upon the report of Mr. Lange.

About two years before the Endeavour was in these seas, a French ship was wrecked on the coast of Timor: she had been lodged on the rocks several days, when the wind tore her to pieces in an instant, and the captain, with the greater part of the seamen were drowned; but the lieutenant and about eighty men, having reached the shore, travelled across the country of Concordia, where their immediate wants were relieved, and they afterwards returned to the wreck, in company with some Dutchmen and Indians, who assisted them in recovering all their chests of bullion and other effects. This done, they returned to Concordia, where they remained several weeks; but during this interval death made such

havoc among them that not above half their number remained to return to their native country.

On the 21st of September, the Endeavour got under sail, and bent her course westward : on the 28th, they steered all day N.W. with a view of making the land of Java, and on the 30th, Capt Cook took into his possession the log-book and journals, at least all he could find of the officers, petty officers, and seamen, whom he strictly enjoined secrecy with respect to where they had been. At seven in the evening they had thunder and lightning, and at twelve by the light of the flashes saw the west end of Java.

On the 2nd of October, they were close in with the coast of Java, along which they now steered. In the forenoon a boat was sent ashore, in order to procure some fruit for Tupia, who was at this time extremely ill. The people returned with four cocoa-nuts, and a small bunch of plantains, for which they paid a shilling, and also herbage for the cattle. The country had a delightful appearance, being every where covered with trees, which looked like one continued wood. About eleven o'clock they saw two Dutch East India-men, from whom they heard that the Swallow had reached the English channel in safety, having been at Batavia about two years before.

At six o'clock in the evening of the 3rd, the country boats came along side, on board of which was the master of the packet. They brought fowls, ducks, parrots, turtle, rice, birds, monkeys, and other articles, with an intention to sell them, but having fixed very high prices on their commodities, few articles were purchased. The captain indeed gave two dollars for twenty-five fowls, and a Spanish dollar for a turtle, which weighed about six and thirty pounds. The master of the packet brought with him two books, in one of which he desired one of the officers would write down the name of the ship and her commander ; the place from whence she came ; to what port bound ; with other particulars relating to the crew, for the information of any Englishmen

who might come after. In the other book the master himself entered the name of the ship and its captain, in order to transmit them to the governor and council of the Indies. Mr. Hicks having written the name of the ship, only added, "from Europe." The master of the packet took notice of this, but said, that he was satisfied with any thing they thought fit to write, it being intended solely for the information of their friends.

On the 5th, they made several attempts to sail, and as often came to an anchor. In the morning a proa, with a Dutch officer, came along-side the ship and sent to Capt. Cook a printed paper, in the name of the governor and council of the Indies, containing the following inquiries.

"1. The ship's name, and to what nation she belonged? 2. If she came from Europe, or any other place? 3. From what place she last departed? 4. Whereunto designed to go? 5. What and how many ships of the Dutch company they saw on departure from the last port, and their names? 6. If one or more of these ships, in company with the Endeavour, sailed for this or any other place? 7. If during the voyage any particularities have happened? 8. If any ships at sea, or in the streights of Sunda, have been seen, or hailed? If any other news worthy of attention, at the place from whence the ship last departed, or during the voyage?

"BATAVIA in the Castle. By order of the governor general, and the counsellors of India, J. BRANDER BUNGL. Sec."

As soon as the Dutch officer departed, the anchor was weighed, but the ship was soon obliged to come to an anchor again for want of wind; a breeze however springing up, she held on her course till the next morning, when on account of the rapidity of the current, the anchor was dropped again. They weighed anchor and brought to several times till the 8th, when they anchored near a little island not laid down in any chart on board called the Milles Isles. Messrs. Banks and Solander having landed upon it, col-

lected a few plants, and shot a bat which was a yard long, being measured from the extreme points of the wing.

In a little time after the gentlemen returned to the ship, some Malays came along-side in a boat, bringing with them pompions, dried fish, and turtle, for sale; one of the turtle, which weighed near one hundred and fifty pounds, they sold for a dollar. The ship made but little way till night, when the land-breeze springing up, they sailed to the E. S. E. and on the following day, came to an anchor in the road of Batavia. The Endeavour had no sooner anchored, than a ship was observed, with a broad pendant flying, from which a boat was dispatched to demand the name of the vessel, with that of the commander, &c. To these enquiries Capt. Cook gave such answers as he thought proper, and the officer who commanded the boat departed. This gentleman, and the crew that attended him, were so worn out by the unhealthiness of the climate, that it was apprehended many deaths would follow among the crew; yet then there was not one invalid on board except the Indian Tupia. The ship was become so leaky, that she made nine inches water in an hour, on the average; part of the false keel was gone; one of her pumps was totally useless, and the rest so much decayed, that they could not last long; the officers and seamen concurring in opinion that the ship could not safely put to sea in this condition, the captain resolved to solicit permission to heave her down; but as he had learned that this must be done in writing, he drew up a petition, and had it translated into Dutch.

On Wednesday, October the 10th, the captain and the rest of the gentlemen went on shore, and applied to the only English resident at Batavia: this gentleman, whose name was Leith, received his countrymen in the politest manner, and entertained them at dinner with great hospitality. In the afternoon the captain attended the governor-general, who received him politely, and told him to wait on the council the next morning, when his petition should be laid

before them, and every thing that he solicited should be granted. Late in the evening of this day, there happened a most terrible storm of thunder and lightning, accompanied with very heavy rain, by which a Dutch East India-man was greatly damaged. The Endeavour, which was a small distance from the Dutch ship, escaped without damage, owing, most probably, to an electrical chain which conducted the lightning over the vessel. A centinel on board the Endeavour, who was charging his musket at the time of the storm, had it shaken out of his hand, and the ram-rod broken in pieces; the electrical chain looked like a stream of fire, and the ship sustained a very violent shock.

On the 11th, Capt. Cook waited on the gentlemen of the council, who informed him that all his requests should be complied with. In the interim the other gentlemen made a contract with the master of the hotel, to furnish them and their friends with as much tea, coffee, punch and tobacco, as they might have occasion for, and to keep them a separate table, for nine shillings a day English money; and that every person who should visit them, should pay at the rate of four shillings and sixpence for his dinner, and the same sum for his supper and bed, if he chose to sleep at the hotel: they were likewise to pay for every servant that attended them fifteen pence a day. It was soon discovered that they had been much imposed on; for these charges were twice as much as could have been demanded at a private house. They appeared to live elegantly, but at the same time were ill supplied. Mr. Banks disliking the conduct of the master of the hotel, hired for himself and attendants, a small house, for which he paid forty-five shillings a month; but they were far from having the conveniences and privacy expected: for no person was permitted to sleep in it as an occasional guest, under a penalty; and Dutchmen were continually running in without the least ceremony, to ask what was to be sold, it being a custom for most private persons in Batavia to be furnished with some articles of traffic.

Every one here hires a carriage, and Mr. Banks engaged two. These carriages are open chaises; they hold two persons, and are driven by a man sitting on a kind of coach-box: for each of these Mr. Banks paid two rix-dollars a day.

Tupia had hitherto continued on board on account of his disorder, which was of the bilious kind, yet he persisted in refusing every medicine that was offered him. Mr. Banks now sent for him to his house, in hopes that he might recover his health. While in the ship, and even in the boat, he was exceedingly listless and low spirited, but he no sooner entered the town than he seemed as if re-animated. The houses, the carriages, streets, people, and a multiplicity of other objects, excited his astonishment. But if Tupia was astonished at the scene, his boy Tayeto was perfectly enraptured, dancing along the streets in a kind of extacy, and examining every object with a restless curiosity. Tupia remarked particularly the variety of dresses worn by the passing multitude, concerning which he made several inquiries. Being informed that here were people of different nations, each of whom wore the habit of his respective country, he desired that he might conform to the custom, and appear in that of Otaineite; some South Sea cloth being sent for from the ship, he dressed himself with great expedition and dexterity. The people of Batavia, who had seen an Indian brought thither in M. Bougainville's ship, named Otourou, mistook Tupia for that person, and frequently asked if he was not the same. The captain found an unexpected difficulty in procuring money for the expences that would be incurred by refitting the Endeavour, private persons having neither the ability nor inclination to advance the sum required; he therefore sent a written application to the governor himself, who ordered a supply to the captain out of the company's treasury.

Thursday the 18th, after a delay of some days, they sailed to Ourust, and laid the ship along-side of the wharf,

on Cooper's Island, in order to take out her stores. After little more than nine days, they began to feel the fatal effects of the climate. Tupia sunk on a sudden and grew every day worse and worse. Tayeto, his boy, was seized with an inflammation on his lungs. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander were attacked by fevers, and the two servants of the former became very ill; in short, almost every person both on board and ashore fell sick in a few days, owing, as was imagined, to the low swampy situation of the place, and the numberless dirty canals that intersect the town in all directions.

By the 26th, few of the crew were able to do duty. Tupia desired to be removed to the ship, in hopes of breathing a freer air; however this could not be done, as she was unrigged, and preparing to be laid down at the careening-place. On the 28th, however, Mr. Banks conveyed him to Cooper's Island, and a tent was pitched for him in a situation where the sea and land breezes might blow over him. On the 30th, Mr. Banks returned to town, having, from humanity alone, been two days with Tupia, whose fits of an intermitting fever, now became a regular tertian, and were so violent as to deprive him of his senses while they lasted, and left him so weak, that he could scarcely crawl from his bed.

On the 5th of November, died Mr. Monkhouse, the surgeon, whose loss was more severely felt, by his being a sensible, skilful man, and dying at a time when his abilities were most wanted. Dr. Solander was just able to attend his funeral, but Mr. Banks, in his turn, was confined to his bed. The power of disease, from the pestiferous air of the country, daily gaining strength, several Malay servants were hired to attend the sick, but they had so little sense either of duty or humanity, that the patient was obliged frequently to get out of bed to seek them.

On the 9th, the Indian boy Tayeto paid the debt of nature, and poor Tupia was so affected at the loss, that it was evident he could not long survive him. The ship's bottom having been carefully examined, it was found to be in a

worse condition than had been apprehended. The false keel was in a great measure gone, the main keel was injured in many places, much of the sheathing was torn off, and several planks were greatly damaged; and the worms had made their way quite into the timbers; yet in this condition, the Endeavour had sailed many hundred leagues, where navigation is as dangerous as in any part of the globe.

Dr. Solander and Mr. Banks were now so worn down by their disorders, that the physician declared they had no chance for recovery but by removing into the country. In consequence of this advice a house was hired for them, at the distance of about two miles from the town, and they bought two Malay women, who, from the tenderness of their sex became good nurses. While these gentlemen were taking measures for the recovery of their health, Tupia sunk under his disorder and the loss of his boy, Tayeto, whom he loved with the tenderness of a parent. When Tayeto was first seized with the fatal disorder, he seemed sensible of his approaching end, and frequently said to those that were about him Tynau mate, "See, my friends, I am dying;" he was very tractable, and took any medicines that were offered him: they were both buried in the island of Edam.

On the 25th, in the night, there fell such a shower of rain, for the space of four hours, as the voyagers had scarcely ever remembered. The water poured through every part of Mr. Banks's house, and the lower apartments admitted a stream sufficient to turn a mill. As this gentleman was now greatly restored in health, he went to Batavia the following day, and was surprised to see that the inhabitants had hung out their bedding to dry. About the 26th of this month the westerly monsoon set in; blowing in the day-time from the N. or N. W. and from the S. W. during the night; previous to this, there had been violent showers of rain for several nights. The moschittos and gnats, whose company had been sufficiently disagreeable in dry weather, now began to swarm in immense numbers, rising from the puddles of water like bees from a

hive ; they were extremely troublesome during the night, but the pain arising from the sting, though very severe, seldom lasted more than half an hour, and in the day-time they seldom made their attack. The frogs kept a perpetual croaking in the ditches, a certain sign that the wet season was commenced, and that daily rain might be expected.

The ship being repaired, the sick people received on board her, and the greater part of her water and stores taken in, she sailed from Onrust on the 8th of December, and anchored in the road of Batavia ; twelve days were employed in receiving the remainder of her provisions, water, and other necessaries, though the business would have been done in much less time, but that some of the crew died, and the majority of the survivors were so ill, as to be unable to give their assistance.

On the 24th, Capt. Cook took leave of the governor, and some other gentlemen, who had distinguished themselves by the civilities they shewed him ; but at this juncture an incident occurred, that might have produced consequences by no means desirable. A sailor belonging to one of the Dutch ships in the road of Batavia, deserted from the vessel, and entered himself on board the Endeavour. The captain of the Dutch ship having made application to the governor, claiming the delinquent as a subject of the States General, the governor issued his order for the restoration of the man ; when this order was delivered to the British officer, he said, the man should be given up, if he were a Dutchman. As the captain was at this time on shore, and did not intend going on board till the following day, he gave the Dutch officer a note to the lieutenant, who commanded on board the Endeavour, to deliver the deserter on the condition above-mentioned. On the following day the Dutchman waited on Capt. Cook, informing him that the lieutenant had absolutely refused to give up the seaman, saying he was an Irishman, and of course a subject of his Britannic majesty. Capt. Cook applauded the conduct of his officer, and added, that it could

not be expected that he should deliver up an English subject. The Dutch officer then said, he was authorised by the governor to demand the fugitive as a Danish subject, adding that his name was entered in the ship's books as having been born at Elsineur : to this Capt. Cook very properly replied, that the governor must have been mistaken, when he gave this order for delivering the deserter, who had his option whether he would serve the Dutch or the English ; but in compliment to the governor, the man should be given up as a favour, if he appeared to be a Dane, but that in this case he should by no means be demanded as a right, and that he would certainly keep him, if he appeared to be a subject of the crown of Great Britain. The Dutchman now took his leave, and had not been long gone before the captain received a letter from the commanding officer on board, containing full proof that the man was an English subject. This letter the captain carried to the shebander, desiring him to lay it before the governor, and to inform him, that the man should not be delivered up on any terms whatever. This spirited conduct on the part of Capt. Cook, had the desired effect ; and thus the matter ended.

This day the captain, attended by Mr. Banks and the other gentlemen who had hitherto lived in the town, repaired on board the ship, which got under sail the next morning. The Endeavour was saluted by the fort, and by the Elgin East Indiaman, which then lay in the road ; but soon after these compliments were returned, the sea-breeze setting in, they were obliged to come to anchor. Since the arrival of the ship in Batavia Road, every person belonging to her had been ill, except the sail-maker, who was more than seventy years old, and who had been drunk every day they remained there. The Endeavour buried seven of her people at Batavia, viz. Tupia and his boy, three of the sailors, the servant of Mr. Green the astronomer, and the surgeon ; and at the time of the vessel's sailing, forty of the crew were sick, and the rest

so enfeebled by their late illness, as to be scarcely able to do their duty.

Batavia, situated in 6 deg. 10 min. S. lat. and 106 deg. 50. min. E. longitude from the meridian of Greenwich, is built on the bank of a large bay, something more than twenty miles from the Strait of Sunda, on the north side of the island of Java, on a low boggy ground. Several small rivers which rise forty miles up the country, in the mountains of Blaeuwen Berg, discharge themselves into the sea at this place, having first intersected the town in different directions. There are wide canals of nearly stagnated water in almost every street, and as the banks of the canals are planted with trees, the effect is very agreeable ; but these trees and canals combine to render the air pestilential. Some of the rivers are navigable, more than thirty miles up the country ; and, indeed, the Dutch appear to have chosen this spot to build the town on, for the sake of water carriage, in which convenience Batavia exceeds every place in the world, except the towns of Holland.

The new church in Batavia, is a fine piece of building, and the dome of it may be seen far off at sea. This church is illuminated by chandeliers of the most superb workmanship, and has a fine organ ; most of the other public buildings are ancient, constructed in an ill taste, and gave a very complete idea of Dutch clumsiness. Their method of building their houses seems to have been suggested by the climate. On the ground-floor there is no room but a large hall, a corner of which is parted off for the transaction of business ; the hall has two doors, which are commonly left open, and are opposite each other, so that the air passes freely through the room, in the middle of which there is a court, which at once increases the draught of air, and affords light to the hall ; the stairs, which are at one corner, lead to large and lofty apartments above.

Batavia is encompassed by a river of shallow water, the stream of which is very rapid ; within this river, which is

of different widths in various places, is an old stone wall, much decayed in many places, and within the wall is a canal, wider in some places than in others, so that there is no entering the gates of the town but by crossing two draw-bridges ; There is a castle in the N. E. corner of the town, and no persons are permitted to walk on the ramparts.

Apartments are provided in this castle for the governor-general and all the council. In the castle are likewise a number of store-houses, in which the effects of the company are deposited. The company have in their possession large quantities of gun-powder, which is kept in different places, that the lightning may not destroy the whole stock at once ; a great number of cannon are likewise laid up within the castle. There are a great many forts built in different parts of the country, several miles distant from Batavia, most probably erected to keep the natives in submission ; and, besides these, there are a number of fortified houses, each mounting eight guns, which are so stationed as to command the canals and roads on the borders. There are houses of this kind in many parts of the island of Java, and the other islands in its neighbourhood, of which the Dutch have obtained possession. The Chinese having rebelled against them in the year 1740, all their principal houses were demolished by the cannon of one of these fortified houses, which is in the town of Batavia, where, likewise, there are a few more of them.

The roads of this country are only banks between the ditches and canals, and the fortified houses being erected among the morasses near these roads, nothing is easier than to destroy them, and consequently to prevent an enemy from bringing any heavy artillery near the town ; if, indeed, an enemy be only hindered a short time in his approach, he is effectually ruined ; for the climate will preclude the necessity of the use of weapons for his destruction. Before the Endeavour had been a week at Batavia, her crew began to feel the ill effects of the climate ; half of them were rendered

incapable of doing their duty before the expiration of a month. They were informed, that it was a very uncommon thing for 50 soldiers out of 100 brought from Europe, to be alive at the expiration of the first year, and that of the 50 who might happen to be living, not ten of those would be in sound health, and, probably, not less than half of them in the hospital.

In the harbour of Batavia, any number of ships may anchor, the ground is so excellent that the anchor will never quit its hold. This harbour is sometimes dangerous for boats, when the sea-breezes blow fresh ; but upon the whole, it is the best and most commodious in all India. There are a considerable number of islands, which are situated on the outside of the harbour, and all these are in the possession of the Dutch, who destine them to different purposes. On one of them, which is called Purmerent, an hospital is erected, on account of the air being purer than it is at Batavia. In a second, the name of which is Kuyper, are erected numbers of warehouses, wherein are lodged the rice and some other commodities, which belong to the Dutch East-India Company ; at this island those ships belonging to different nations, which are to be repaired at Ourust, unload their cargoes ; and it was here that the stores of the Falmouth man of war were laid up, when she was condemned on her return from Manilla : her warrant officers were sent to Europe in some Dutch ships about half a year before the Endeavour anchored in the road of Batavia. A third of these islands, the name of which is Edam, is appropriated to the reception of certain offenders, whose crimes are not deemed worthy of death, and thither they are transported from Holland, and detained from five to forty years, in proportion to the heinousness of the offence they have committed : making of ropes is the principal part of the employment of these criminals.

The environs of Batavia have a very pleasing appearance, and would, in any other country, be an enviable situation.

Gardens and houses occupy the country for several miles ; but the former are so covered with trees, that the advantage of the land having been cleared of the wood that originally covered it, is almost wholly lost, while these gardens and the fields adjacent to them are surrounded by ditches which yield a disagreeable smell ; and the bogs and morasses in the adjacent fields are still more offensive. For the space of 30 miles beyond the town, the land is totally flat, except in two places, on one of which the governor's country seat is built, and on the other they hold a large market ; but neither of these places is higher than ten yards from the level of the plain. At near 40 miles from the town, the land rises into hills, and the air is purified in a great degree ; to this distance the invalids are sent by their physicians, when every other prospect of their recovery has failed, and the experiment succeeds in most instances, for the sick are restored to health ; but they no sooner return to the town, than their former disorders revisit them. On these hills, the most opulent of the inhabitants have country seats, to which they pay an annual visit. Those who reside constantly on the hills, enjoy an almost perpetual flow of health, and most of the vegetables of Europe grow as freely there as in their own native ground : the strawberry in particular flourishes greatly, which is a sufficient proof of the coolness of the air.

The fruits of this country are near forty in number, and of some of these there are several kinds. Pine-apples grow in such abundance, that they may be purchased, at the first hand, for the value of an English farthing ; the crew bought some very large ones for a halfpenny a-piece at the fruit shops, and their taste is very excellent. They grow so luxuriantly, that seven or eight suckers have been seen adhering to one stem. The shaddocks of the West-Indies, called here pamplemooses, have an agreeable flavour. Lemons were very scarce when the Endeavour lay in the harbour, but limes were altogether as plentiful, and sold at little more than two-pence the score. There are many kinds

of oranges and lemons, but none of them excellent. The pumpions are boiled as turnips, and eaten with salt and pepper. This fruit is admirably adapted to voyagers, as it will keep many months, without care, and makes an excellent pie, when mixed with the juice of lemons and sugar. The papans of this country are superior to turnips; if the cores are extracted, after paring them when they are green. The guava has a strong smell, and a taste not less disagreeable: it is probable, that the guava of the West-Indies, which many writers have distinguished by their praises, has a different flavour. The cocoa-nut is plentiful in this country, and there are several kinds of this fruit, the best of which is very red between the shell and the skin. The jamboo is a fruit that has but little taste, but it is of a cooling nature: it is considerably less than a common sized apple, and those that have grown to their full size, are always the best; its shape is oval, and its colour a deep red. The pomegranate in these parts differs in nothing from that in England. The durion takes its name from the word *Dure*, which, in the language of that country, means prickles, and the name is well adapted to the fruit, the shell of which is covered with sharp points, shaped like a sugar-loaf: its contents are nuts not much smaller than chesnuts, which are surrounded with a kind of juice resembling cream; and of this the inhabitants eat with great avidity: the smell of this fruit is more like that of onions, than any other European vegetable, and its taste is like onions, sugar, and cream intermixed: the inside of the durion, when ripe, is parted, lengthways, into several divisions.

At Batavia vast quantities of fruit are eaten. There are two markets held weekly, at distant places, for the accommodation of those who reside in different parts of the country. Here the fruit-sellers meet the gardeners, and purchase the goods at low rates. They were told that it is not uncommon to see fifty or sixty loads of pine-apples carelessly thrown together at those markets. Flowers are strewn by the inha-

bitants of Batavia and Java, about their houses, and they are constantly burning aromatic woods and gums, which is supposed to be done by way of purifying the air from the stench that arises from the canals and ditches about the town.

In this country sweet-scented flowers are plentiful, many species of which being entirely unknown, are worth remarking. The combang tonquin, and combang carenassi, are particularly fragrant flowers, which bear scarcely any resemblance to any of those flowers with which we are acquainted. They are very small, and seem to be of the dog's-bane species. The camunga, which is more like a bunch of leaves than a flower, is of a singular smell, but very grateful. The bontanjong is of a pale yellow cast, and has a very agreeable smell; it is about an inch and a half in circumference, and consists of pointed leaves, which give it the appearance of a star. The champacka smells somewhat like a jonquil but is rather of a deeper yellow. A large tree upon the island produces this flower. There is also an extraordinary kind of flower called fundal malam, which signifies the intriguer of the night. This flower has no smell in the day-time, but as night comes on, it has a very fragrant scent, and is very much like the English tuberose. These flowers being made into nosegays of different shapes, or strung upon thread, are carried through the street for sale on an evening. The gardens of the gentlemen produce several other sorts of flowers besides these which have been mentioned, but they are not offered to sale, because there is not a sufficient plenty of them. A plant, called the pandang, is produced here, the leaves of which being shred small, and mixed with other flowers, the natives fill their clothes and hair with this mixture, which they likewise sprinkle on their beds and sleep under this heap of sweets, a thin piece of chintz being their only covering.

Formerly the only spice that grew on the island of Java was pepper. A considerable quantity is brought from thence

by the Dutch, but very little of it is made use of in the country. The inhabitants prefer cayen pepper, and are fond of cloves and nutmegs, but the first are too dear to be commonly used. Near the island of Amboyna are some little isles, on which the cloves grow, and the Dutch were not easy till they all became their property. The island of Java, which has been already spoken of, produces horses, buffaloes, sheep, goats, and hogs. The horned cattle of the country are different from those of Europe. They are quite lean, but of a very fine grain. The Chinese and the natives of Java eat the buffalo's flesh, which the Dutch constantly refuse, being impressed with an idea that it is feverish. The sheep are hairy like goats, and have long ears: they are mostly found to be tough and ill-tasted. There happening to be a few from the Cape of Good Hope at Batavia, some of them were purchased at the rate of one shilling a pound. The hogs, especially those of the Chinese stock, are very fine food, and so fat that the lean is separately sold to the butchers, who are Chinese; the fat they melt and sell to their countrymen to be eaten with their rice.

The Portuguese shoot the wild hogs and deer, which are sold at a moderate price, and are good eating. The goats are as indifferent as the sheep. Dogs and cats are found in great abundance, and there are numbers of wild horses at a considerable distance from Batavia, on the mountains.

Of fish an astonishing quantity is taken, and all are fine food, except a few that are scarce; yet the inhabitants will not eat those found in abundance, but purchase those which are worse and scarcer, a circumstance that contributes to keep up the price of the latter. A prejudice likewise prevails among the Dutch which prevents them from eating any of the turtle caught in these parts, which are very good food, though not equal to those that are found in the West-Indies. Very large lizards are common at Batavia; some of them are said to be as thick as a man's thigh and Mr.

Banks shot one five feet long, which being drest, proved very agreeable to the taste.

In Java, the religion of Mahomet is professed, for which reason the natives do not make use of wine publicly; but in private few of them will refuse it. They also chew opium, whose intoxicating qualities prove its recommendation to the natives of India.

If the Chinese, and the Indians of different nations who inhabit Batavia and its environs are excluded, the inhabitants amount to a small number, not a fifth part of whom are said to be Dutchmen even by descent. The Portuguese outnumber all the European settlers on the island. The troops in the service of the states of Holland, are composed of the natives of almost all the nations of Europe; but the greater part of them are Germans. When any person goes to reside at Batavia, he is obliged to enter as a soldier, to serve their company for five years. Afterwards he applies for leave of absence to the council, which being granted as a thing of course, he engages in any business that he thinks proper to choose; the Dutch have thus always a force ready to arm and join their troops in this country upon any emergency. All places of power and profit are held by the Dutch, and no foreigner has any share in the management of public affairs.

It appeared the whole place could not furnish fifty females who were natives of Europe; yet the town abounded with white women, who were descended from Europeans that had settled there at different times, all the men having paid the debt of nature. These women follow the delicate custom of chewing beetle, after the example of the native Javanese, whose dress they imitate, and whose manners they copy, in all respects. Mercantile business is conducted at Batavia with the slightest trouble imaginable. When a merchant receives an order for goods of any kind, he communicates the contents of it to the Chinese, who are the universal manufacturers. The Chinese agent delivers the effects on

board the ship for which they are bespoke, and taking a receipt for them from the master of the vessel, delivers it to the merchant, who pays the Chinese for the goods, and reserves a considerable profit, without the least trouble, risque, or anxiety. But when a merchant imports goods of any kind, he receives them himself, and lodges them in his own warehouses. The Portuguese of Batavia are so only in name: for they have neither any connection with, or knowledge of the kingdom of Portugal; but with the manners of the natives, they are familiar, and commonly speak their language, though they are able to converse in a corrupt kind of Portuguese. They dress in the habit of the country, with a difference only in the manner of wearing the hair; their noses are more peaked and their skin of a deeper cast than that of the natives. Some of them are mechanics and artificers, others subsist by washing of linen, and the rest procure a maintenance by hunting.

The Indians of Batavia, and the country in its neighbourhood, are not native Javanese, but are either born on the several islands from whence the Dutch bring their slaves, or the offspring of such as have been born on those islands; and these having been made free either in their own persons or in the persons of their ancestors, enjoy all the privileges of freemen. The various other Indian inhabitants of this country attach themselves each to the original customs of that in which themselves or their ancestors were born; keeping themselves apart from those of other nations, and practising both the virtues and vices peculiar to their own countries. The cultivation of gardens, and the consequent sale of flowers and fruit, afford subsistence to a great number of them. Some of the Indians are very rich, keep a great number of slaves, and live, in all respects, according to the custom of their respective countries; while others are employed in carrying goods by water; and others again subsist by fishing. They sometimes make very superb entertainments, after the fashion of their respective countries; but, in general, they

are a very temperate people. Of wine, they drink very little, if any, as the religion of Mahomet, which they profess, forbids the use of it. When a marriage is solemnized among them, all the gold and silver ornaments that can be procured, are borrowed to deck out the young couple, who on these occasions never fail to make the most splendid appearance.

A number of absurd customs prevail among these people, and opinions no less ridiculous. They believe that the devil, whom they call Satan, is the author of sickness and adversity; therefore, when sick, or in distress, they offer meat, money, and other things, as propitiatory sacrifices. Should one among them be restless, or should he dream for two or three nights successively, he imagines the devil has laid his commands upon him, which if he neglects to fulfil, he concludes his punishment will certainly be sickness or death, though such commands may not be revealed with sufficient perspicuity. To interpret his dream, therefore, he strains his wits to the uttermost, and if, by taking it literally or figuratively, directly or by contraries, he can put no explanation that satisfies him, he applies to the cawin or priest, who unravels the suggestions of the night by a comment in which it generally appears Satan wants victuals or money. Mr. Banks once asked, whether they thought Satan spent the money, or eat the victuals; they said, that as to the money it was considered rather as a mulct upon an offender, than a gift to him who had enjoined it; and that therefore if it was devoted by the dreamer, it did not signify into whose hands it came, and they supposed it was generally the prize of some stranger who wandered that way; but respecting the meat, they were clearly of opinion, that, although the devil did not eat the gross parts, yet by bringing his mouth near it, he sucked out all its savour without changing its position, so that afterwards it was as insipid as water.

Another superstitious notion of this people is still more unaccountable. They imagine that women, when delivered of children, are at the same time delivered of a young croco-

dile; and that those animals being received carefully by the midwives, are immediately carried down to the river, and put into the water. The family in which such a birth is supposed to have happened, constantly puts victuals into the river for their amphibious relation, especially the twin, who, as long as he lives, goes down to the river at stated times, to fulfil his fraternal duty; for an omission of which, according to the general opinion, he will be visited with sickness or death. It will not be easy to account for an opinion so extravagant and absurd, especially as it seems to be unconnected with any religious mystery, and how it should be pretended to happen by those who cannot be deceived into a belief of it by appearances, nor have any apparent interest in the fraud, is a problem very difficult to solve. The strange belief of this absurdity, however, is certain, for which there is the concurrent testimony of every Indian who was questioned about it; and as to its origin, it seems to have taken its rise in the islands of Celebes and Boutou, at which places, many of the inhabitants keep crocodiles in their families; but however that may be, this opinion has spread over all the eastern islands, even to Timor and Ceram, and westward as far as Java and Sumatra. The crocodile twins are called Sudaras, and the following is one of the innumerable and incredible stories, related among them of their existence, as was confidently affirmed, from ocular demonstration, this relation will shew their credulity.

At Bencoolen was born and bred among the English a young female slave, who had learnt a little of the language. This girl told Mr. Banks that her father, when on his death bed, informed her that he had a crocodile for his Sudara, and in a solemn manner charged her to give him meat when he should be dead, telling her in what part of the river he was to be found, and by what name he was to be called up. That in consequence of her father's injunctions, she repaired to that part of the river he had described, and stand-

ing upon the bank, called out radja pouti, "white king;" whereupon the crocodile came to her out of the water, and eat from her hand the provisions she had brought him. Being desired to describe this paternal uncle, she said, that he was not like other crocodiles, but much handsomer, that his body was spotted and his nose red; that he had bracelets of gold upon his feet, and ear-rings of the same metal in his ears. This ridiculous tale was heard by Mr. Banks patiently to the end, and he then dismissed the girl with reminding her that a crocodile with ears was as strange a monster as a dog with a cloven foot. Not long after this a servant whom Mr. Banks hired at Batavia, a son of a Dutchman by a Javanese woman, told his master, that he had seen a crocodile of the same kind, and it had been seen by several others, both Dutchmen and Malays. This crocodile the servant said was very young, two feet long, and its feet were ornamented with bracelets of gold. I cannot credit these idle stories, said Mr. Banks; the other day a person asserted that crocodiles had ear-rings, and you know that cannot be true, because crocodiles have no ears. Ah, sir, replied the man, these Sudara Oran are unlike other crocodiles; for they have five toes upon each foot, a large tongue that fills their mouth, and ears likewise, though indeed they are very small. Who can set bounds to the ignorance of credulity and folly! However, in the girl's relation were some things in which she could not be deceived; and therefore must be guilty of wilful falsehood. Her father might command her to feed a crocodile, in consequence of his believing it to be his Sudara; but its coming out of the river at her call, and eating the food from her hand, must have been a fable of her own invention, and being such, it was impossible that she could believe it to be true. However, the girl's story, and that of the man's, evinces that they both believed the existence of crocodiles that were Sudaras to men; and the fiction invented by the girl may be easily accounted for, if we do

but consider, how earnestly every one desires to make others believe what he believes himself. The Bougis, Macassars, and Boetons, are so firmly persuaded that they have relations of the crocodile species, that they perform a periodical ceremony in remembrance of them. Large parties go out in a boat, furnished with great plenty of provisions, and all kinds of music. They then row backwards and forwards, in places of the river where crocodiles and alligators are most common, singing and weeping by turns, each invoking his kindred till a crocodile appears, when the music instantly stops, and provisions, beetle, and tobacco, are thrown into the water.

The Chinese stand in the next rank to the Indians, and are numerous, but possess little property. Many of them live within the walls, and are shop-keepers, but the far greater part live without the walls, in a quarter by themselves, which is called Campang China. Most part of them are carpenters, joiners, smiths, taylor, slipper-makers, dyers of cotton, and embroiderers. They maintain the character of industry universally bestowed upon them; and many are scattered about the country, where they cultivate gardens, sow rice and sugar, or keep cattle and buffaloes, whose milk they bring every day to town. Yet notwithstanding their commendable spirit of industry, there is nothing honest or dishonest, provided there is no danger of a halter, that the Chinese will not readily do for money; and though they work with much diligence, nor are sparing of their labour, yet no sooner have they laid down their tools, than they begin to game either at cards or dice, or at other diversions altogether unknown to the Europeans. To these they apply with such eagerness, as scarcely to allow time for necessary refreshments of food and sleep. In manners they are always obsequious; and in dress they are remarkably neat and clean, in whatever rank of life they are placed. The food of the poor is rice, with a small proportion of flesh or fish; and they have the advantage of the Mahometan Indians on account

of their religion ; for the Chinese, being under no restraint, eat, besides pork, dogs, cats, frogs, lizards, serpents, and a great variety of sea animals, which the other inhabitants do not consider as food. They also eat many vegetables, which an European, except he was perishing with hunger, would not taste. They have a singular custom respecting the burying their dead ; for they cannot be prevailed upon to open the ground a second time, where the body has been deposited. On this account, in the neighbourhood of Batavia, their burying-grounds contain many hundred acres ; and the Dutch pretending this to be a waste of land, will not sell any for this purpose but at an exorbitant price. The Chinese, however, contrive to raise the purchase money, and afford another instance of the folly and weakness of human nature, in transferring a regard for the living to the dead, and making that an object of solicitude and expence, which cannot receive the least benefit from either. Under the influence of this universal prejudice, they take an uncommon method to preserve the body entire, and to prevent the remains of it from mixing with the earth that surrounds it. To this end they enclose it in a large thick wooden coffin, hollowed out of solid timber like a canoe. This when covered and let down into the grave, is surrounded with a coat of mortar, called chinam, about eight or ten inches thick, which in a short time cements, and becomes as hard as stone. The relatives of the deceased attend the funeral ceremony, with a considerable number of female mourners, hired to weep. In Batavia, the law requires, that every man should be interred according to his rank, which is in no case to be dispensed with ; so that if the deceased has not left sufficient to pay his debts, an officer takes an inventory of what was in his possession when he died, and out of the produce buries him in the manner prescribed, leaving only the overplus to his creditors.

The lowest class of people in this country are the slaves, by whom the Dutch, Portuguese, and Indians, whatever their rank or situation, are constantly attended. They are bought

in almost all the Eastern Islands ; but the natives of Java are exempted from slavery, under the sanction of severe penal laws, which are seldom violated. Being of an indolent disposition, they will not do much work, and are therefore content with a little victuals, subsisting altogether upon boiled rice, and a small quantity of the cheapest fish. They are natives of different countries, on which account they differ from each other extremely both in person and temper. The African negroes are the worst, most of them are thieves, and incorrigible ; consequently they may be had for the least money. The next class to these are the Bougis and Macassars, both from the island of Celebes ; who in the highest degree are lazy, though not so much addicted to theft as the negroes ; yet they are of a cruel and vindictive spirit, whereby they are rendered exceedingly dangerous, especially as to gratify their resentment, they make no scruple of sacrificing life itself. Besides these there are Malays, and slaves of other denominations : but the best, and of course the dearest, are those brought from the island of Bali ; and the most beautiful women from Nias, a small island on the coast of Sumatra ; but being of a tender and delicate constitution, they quickly fall a sacrifice to the unwholesome air of Batavia. All these slaves are wholly in the power of their masters, who may inflict upon them any punishment that does not take away life ; but should one die in consequence of punishment, though his death may be proved not to have been intended, yet the master is called to a severe account, and generally sentenced to suffer capitally. For this reason a master seldom corrects a slave with his own hands, but by an officer called a *Marineu*, one of whom is stationed in every district. The duty of this officer is to quell riots, and to take offenders into custody ; but more particularly to apprehend runaway slaves, and punish them for such crimes as the master has supported by proper evidence ; the punishment, however, is not inflicted by the *Marineu* in person, but by slaves who are appointed to the business. The punish-

ment is stripes, the number being proportioned to the nature of the offence ; and the instruments are rods made of rattans, which are split into tender twigs for that purpose, and every stroke draws blood. A common punishment costs the master a rixdollar, and a severe one a ducatoon, about six shillings and eight-pence. The master is also obliged to allow a slave, as an encouragement, three dubbelcheys, equal to seven-pence half-penny a week ; this is also done to prevent his indulging his strong temptations to steal.

The chief officer in this place has the title of governor-general of the Indies, to whom the Dutch governors of all other settlements are subordinate ; and are obliged to repair to Batavia to have their accounts passed by him. Should they appear to have been criminal, or even negligent, he detains them during his pleasure ; sometimes three years ; for they cannot without his permission quit the place. The members of the council, called by the natives Edele Heeren, and by the English, Idoleers, are next in rank to the governor-general. These assume so much state, that whoever meets them in a carriage, are expected to rise up and bow, and after this compliment, they drive to one side of the road and stop, till the members of the council are past : their wives and children expect also the same homage, and it is commonly paid them by the inhabitants.

Justice is administered in Batavia by lawyers, who have peculiar ranks of distinction among themselves. Their decisions in criminal cases seem to be severe with respect to the natives, but lenient to their own people. A Christian is always indulged with an opportunity of escaping before he is brought to trial, whatever may be his offence, and when convicted, he is seldom punished with death. On the contrary, the poor Indians are hanged, broken upon the wheel, and even impaled alive. As to the Malays and Chinese, they have judicial officers of their own, named captains and lieutenants, who determine in civil cases, subject to an appeal to the Dutch tribunal. The taxes laid upon these people by

the company are very considerable, among which, that exacted for liberty to wear their hair is not the least. The time of payment is monthly, and to save the charge and trouble of collecting them, notice is given of this by hoisting a flag upon the top of a house in the middle of the town, and the Chinese find that it is their interest to repair thither when a payment is due without delay.

On Thursday, the 27th of December, early in the morning, the ship left the harbour of Batavia, and stood out to sea. On the 29th, after much delay by contrary winds, they weathered Pulo Pare, and stood for the main. On the same day passed a small island between Batavia and Bantam called Maneater's island.

On the morning of new year's day, Tuesday, January the 1st, 1771, they steered for the Java shore, and continued their course, as the wind permitted, till three o'clock in the afternoon of the 5th, when they cast anchor on the south-east side of Prince's Island, to recruit their stores, and procure refreshments for the sick, many of whom were much worse than they were at their departure from Batavia. Mr. Banks and Dr. Solander, accompanied by the captain and other gentlemen, went ashore. They met upon the beach some Indians, by whom they were conducted to one, who, they said, was their king. Having exchanged a few compliments with this person, they entered upon business; but in settling the price of turtle they could not agree. Upon this the Indians dispersed, and the English proceeded along shore in search of a watering place. They happily succeeded in a very convenient one, and had reason to believe, with care in filling, it would prove agreeable to their wishes. On their return, some Indians, who remained with a canoe upon the beach, sold three turtles, but they were obliged to promise that they would not tell the king. On Sunday, the 6th, they renewed with better success their traffic for turtle. About noon the Indians lowered their demands slowly, inso-much, that before the evening they accepted the stipulated

price, and turtle were plenty. In the mean time, the three purchased were served to the ship's company, who had not fed on salt provisions from the time of their arrival at Savu, which was now near three months. Mr. Banks, in the evening, paid a visit to the king, by whom he was received very graciously at his palace, in the middle of a rice field, notwithstanding his majesty was busily employed in dressing his own supper. The day following, Monday the 7th, the Indians resorted to the trading place with fowls, fish, monkeys, small deer, and some vegetables; but no turtle appeared till next day, Tuesday the 8th, after which some were brought to market every day, while they staid, but the whole quantity together was not equal to that bought the day after their arrival.

Friday, the 11th, Mr. Banks having received intelligence from a servant he had hired at Batavia, that the Indians of this island had a town situated near the shore, to the westward, he determined to go in search of it. With this view he set out in the morning, accompanied by the second lieutenant; and apprehending his visit might not be agreeable to the natives, he told such of them as he met, that he was in search of plants, which was indeed also true. Having come to a place where there were three or four houses, they met with an old man, of whom they ventured to make a few inquiries concerning the town. He would have persuaded them, that it was at a great distance; but perceiving they proceeded forward, he joined the company, and went along with them. The old man attempted several times to lead them out of the way, though without success: but when at length they came within sight of the houses, he entered cordially into their party, and conducted them into the town, the name name of which is Samadang. It consisted of about four hundred houses, divided by a brackish river into two parts, one called the old, and the other the new town. When they had entered the former, they were accosted by several Indians whom they had seen at the trading place

and one of them undertook to carry them over to the new town, at two-pence per head. The bargain being made, they embarked in two small canoes, placed along-side each other, and lashed together, to prevent their over-setting. They landed safely, though not without some difficulty; and when they came to the new town, the people shewed them every mark of a cordial friendship, shewing them the houses of their king and principal people. Few of the houses were open at this time, the inhabitants having taken up their residence in the rice-grounds, to defend their crops against the birds and monkeys, who without this necessary precaution would destroy them. When their curiosity was satisfied, they hired a large sailing boat for two rupees, value four shillings, which conveyed them to the ship time enough to dine upon one of the small deer, weighing only forty pounds, which proved to be exceeding good and savoury food. In the evening they again went on shore, to see how the people went on, who were employed in wooding and watering, when they were told that an ax had been stolen. Application was immediately made to the king, who, after some altercation, promised that the ax should be restored in the morning, and it was accordingly brought by a man who pretended that the thief, afraid of a discovery, had left it at his house in the night.

On Sunday, the 13th, having nearly completed their wood and water, Mr. Banks took leave of his majesty, to whom he made several trifling presents, and at parting gave him two quires of paper, which he graciously accepted. During their conversation, the king inquired why the English did not touch at the island as they used to do? Mr. Banks replied, that the reason was, he supposed, because they found a deficiency of turtle, of which there not being enough to supply one ship, many could not be expected; and to supply the defect, Mr. Banks advised his majesty to breed cattle, buffaloes, and sheep; but he did not seem disposed to adopt this prudent measure.

On Tuesday, the 15th, in the morning, they weighed, with a light breeze at N. E. and stood out to sea. Prince's Island, where they were stationed about ten days, in the Malay language called Pulo Selan, and in that of the inhabitants Pulo Paneitan, is a small island, situated in the western mouth of the strait of Sunda. It is woody, a very small part of it having been cleared. They could perceive no remarkable hill upon it ; but a small eminence, just over the landing place, has been named, by the English, the Pike. Formerly this place was much frequented by India ships belonging to various nations, especially from England ; but of late they have forsaken it, because the water is bad, and touch either at North Island, or at New Bay, a few leagues distant from Prince's Island, at neither of which places any considerable quantity of other provisions can be procured. The first, second, and perhaps the third ship that arrives here in the season, may be well supplied with turtle, but such as come afterwards must be content with small ones.

In this island the inhabitants are Javanese, and their raja is subject to the Sultan of Bantam. They profess the Mahometan religion ; but not a mosque was seen in the whole island. While the Endeavour lay here they kept the fast called by the Turks Ramadan, with extreme rigour, not one of them touching a morsel of victuals, nor would they chew their beetle till sun-set. Their food is the same with that of the Batavian Indians, except the addition of the nuts of the palm, by eating of which, upon the coast of New Holland, some of the crew were made sick, and some of the hogs were poisoned. They inquired by what means these nuts were deprived of their noxious deleterious quality, and were informed, that they were first cut into thin slices, and dried in the sun, then steeped them in fresh water for three months, and afterwards, pressing out the water, dried them a second time in the sun.

The houses of these people are built upon piles, or pillars, and elevated about four or five feet above the ground. Upon

these is laid a floor of bamboo canes, at such a distance from each other, as to leave a free passage for the air from below. The walls also are of bamboo, interwoven hurdlewise, with small sticks, and fastened perpendicularly to the beams which form the frame of the building ; it has a sloping roof, so well thatched with palm-leaves, that neither the sun nor rain can find entrance. The ground-plot, upon which the building is erected, is an oblong square. On one side is the door, and in the space between that and the other end of the house, in the centre, towards the left hand, is a window. A partition runs out from each end of the house, which continues so far as to leave an opening opposite the door. Each end of the house therefore, to the right and left of the door, is divided into two apartments, all open towards the passage from the door to the wall on the opposite side. In that on the left hand, next to the door, the children sleep ; that opposite to it is for the use of strangers ; in the inner room, on the left hand, the master and his wife sleep ; and that opposite to it is the kitchen. The only difference between the poor and the rich, with respect to these houses, consists in their size.

It is worthy of observation, that the Malay, the Javanese, and the language in Prince's Island, have words, which if not exactly similar to those used in the South Sea islands, are manifestly derived from the same source ; but the similitude in these languages was more remarkable in words expressing number, which seem to prove that they have one common root.

In the month of February, the Endeavour held on her course, and made the best of her way for the Cape of Good Hope ; the fatal seeds of disease, the people had imbibed at Batavia, began now to appear with the most alarming symptoms, in dysenteries and slow fevers. In a short time the ship was little better than an hospital ; many were in the last stage of the destructive disorder, and almost every night a corpse was committed to the sea. Mr. Banks was among the number of the sick, and for some time his life was de-

spaired of. In the course of six weeks they buried Mr. Sporting, a gentleman of Mr. Banks's retinue, Mr. Parkinson, his natural history painter, Mr. Green the astronomer, the boatswain, the carpenter and his mate, Mr. Monkhouse the midshipman, the sail-maker and his assistant, the cook, the corporal of the marines, two of the carpenters crew, a midshipman, and nine sailors; in all three and twenty persons, besides the seven that had been buried in Batavia. Such was the havoc disease made among the ship's company, though they omitted no means, which might prevent the infection from spreading.

Friday, the 15th of March, about ten o'clock P. M. the ship came to an anchor off the Cape of Good Hope. Capt. Cook repaired immediately to the governor, who cheerfully promised him every refreshment the country afforded; on which a house was hired for the sick, and it was agreed that they should be lodged and boarded for two shillings each man a day.

At the time the Endeavour lay at the Cape of Good Hope, the Houghton Indiaman sailed for England. She had buried near forty of her crew, and when she left the Cape, had many of her hands in a helpless condition, occasioned by the scurvy. Other ships also experienced a proportionable loss by sickness; so that the sufferings of the Endeavour were comparatively light, considering they had been absent near three times as long. They continued at the Cape till the 13th of April, to recover the sick, procure stores, and do some necessary work upon the ship and rigging; and on Sunday, the 14th, having taken leave of the governor, unmoored, and got ready to sail.

The air at the Cape of Good Hope is salutary in a high degree; so that those who bring diseases from Europe generally recover health in a short time; but the diseases that are brought thither from India are not so certainly cured. The weather at the Cape may be divided into two seasons, namely, the wet monsoon, and the dry monsoon;



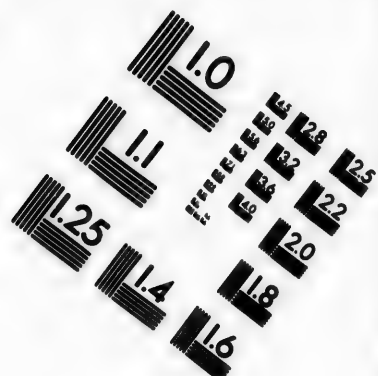
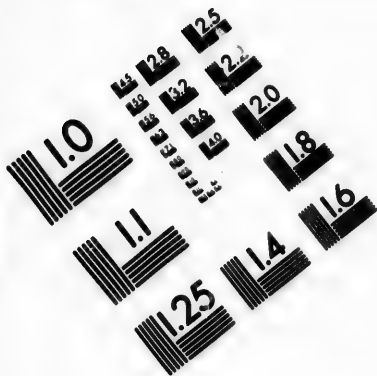
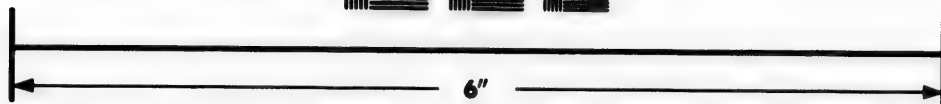
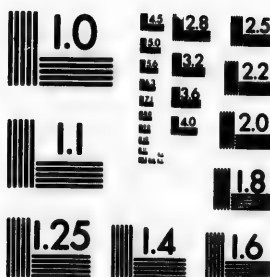


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5 2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0 4.5 5.0 5.6 6.3 7.1 8.0 9.0 10.0 11.2 12.5 14.0 16.0 18.0 20.0 22.5 25.0 28.0 31.5 36.0 40.0 45.0 50.0 56.0 63.0 71.0 80.0 90.0 100.0

100 50 20 10 5 2 1 0.5 0.2 0.1 0.05 0.02 0.01

the former begins in March, and the latter in September; so that summer commences at the Cape about the time it ends with us. The inconveniences of the climate are, excessive heat in the dry season, and heavy rains, thick fogs, and N. W. winds in the wet season. Thunder and lightning are never known here but in March and September. Water seldom freezes, and when it does, the ice is but thin, and dissolves upon the least appearance of the sun. In the hot weather, the people are happy when the wind blows from the S. E. because it keeps off the sea-weeds which otherwise float to the shore, and corrupt. The appearance of two remarkable clouds, which frequently hang over the summits of the two mountains of Table-hill and Devil-hill, commonly enable the inhabitants of this country to prognosticate what weather will happen. The clouds are at first small, but gradually increasing, they at length unite into one cloud, which envelops both mountains, when a terrible hurricane soon ensues. A gentleman who resided many years at the Cape, says "The skirts of this cloud are white, but seem much more compact than the matter of common clouds. The upper parts are of a lead colour, owing to the refracted rays of light. No rain falls from it, but at times it discovers great humidity, when it is of a darker hue; and the wind issuing from it is broken, raging by gusts of short continuance. In its usual state, the wind keeps up its first fury, unabated for one, two, or three, or eight days, and sometimes a whole month. The cloud seems all the time undiminished, though little fleeces are seen torn from the skirts from time to time, and hurried down the sides of hills, vanishing when they reach the bottom; so that during the storm the cloud seems to be supplied with new water. When the cloud begins to brighten up, these supplies most commonly fail, and the wind proportionably abates. At length the cloud growing transparent, the wind ceases." During the continuance of the S. E. winds, the Table-valley is torn by furious whirlwinds. If they blow warm, they are

generally of short duration, and in this case the cloud soon disappears ; but when the wind blows cold, it is a sure sign it will last long, except an hour or two at noon, or midnight, when it seems to recover new strength, and afterwards renews its boisterous rage.

The soil in general about the Cape consists of a clay earth, and is so fat, that it requires but little manuring. White and red chalk are found in abundance ; the former is used by the Dutch, to whitewash their houses, and the latter by the Hottentot women to paint their faces. Various bituminous substances of several colours are found in Drakenstein colony, particularly a kind of oil which trickles from the rocks, and has a very rank smell. With respect to minerals, silver ore has been found in some of the mountains, and also several iron mines. The Namaqua Hottentots, who are situated above three hundred miles from the Cape, bring copper to trade with the Dutch.

The working of the plough here is so laborious from the stiffness of the soil, that it frequently requires near twenty oxen to one plough. The sowing season is in July, and the harvest about Christmas. The corn is not thrashed with a flail, but trod out by horses or oxen, on an artificial floor made of cow-dung, straw, and water, which when mixed together cement, and soon become perfectly hard. It is laid in an oval form. The cattle are confined by halters which run from one to the other, and the driver stands in the middle, where he exercises a long stick to keep them continually to a quick pace. By this method half a dozen horses will do more in one day, than a dozen men can in a week.

The women of the Cape are in general handsome ; they have fine clear skins, and a bloom of colour that indicates a purity of constitution, and high health. They make the best wives in the world, both as mistresses of a family and mothers, and there is scarcely a house that does not swarm with children. The common method in which strangers live here, is to lodge and board with some of the inhabitants

many of whose houses are always open for their reception ; the rates are from five shillings to two a day, for which all necessaries are found. Coaches may be hired at twenty-four shillings a day, and horses at six ; but the country affords very little temptation to use them. There are no public entertainments, but to those that are private, strangers of the rank of gentlemen are always admitted.

The stature of the Hottentot men is from five to six feet in height, their bodies are proportionable, and well made: they are seldom either too fat or lean, and scarce ever any crooked or deformed persons amongst them, any farther than they disfigure their children themselves by flattening and breaking the gristles of their noses, looking on a flat nose as a beauty. Their heads, as well as their eyes, are rather of the largest ; their lips are naturally thick ; their hair black and short like the negroes, and they have exceeding white teeth : and after they have taken a great deal of pains with grease and soot to darken their natural tawny complexions, resemble the negroes pretty much in colour.

The heads of the men are covered with grease and soot mixed together; and going without any thing else on their heads in the summer-time, the dust sticks to it, and makes them a very filthy cap, which they say cools them, and preserves their heads from the scorching heat of the sun ; and in the winter, they wear flat caps of cat-skin or lamb-skin, half dried, which they tie with a thong of the same leather under their chins. The men also wear a krosse or mantle, made of sheep skins, or other skins, over their shoulders, which reaches to the middle; and being fastened with a thong about their neck, is open before. In winter they turn the woolly or hairy sides next their backs, and in summer the other; this serves the man for his bed at night; and this is all the winding sheet or coffin he has when he dies. If he be a captain of a village, or chief of his nation, instead of a sheep-skin, his mantle is made of tyger-skins, wild cat-skins, or some other skins that they set a value

upon : but though these mantles reach no lower, generally, than their waists, yet there are some nations who wear them as low as their legs, and others that have them touch the ground.

Like the Tartars and Arabs, they remove their dwellings frequently for the conveniency of water and fresh pasture : they encamp in a circle formed by twenty or thirty tents, and sometimes twice the number, contiguous to each other ; within the area whereof they keep their lesser cattle in the night, and the larger on the outside of their camp : their tents, or, as some call them, houses, are made with slender poles, bent like an arch, and covered with mats or skins, and sometimes both : they are of an oval figure, the middle of a tent being about the height of a man, and decreasing gradually (the poles being shorter) towards each end, the lowest arch, which is the door or entrance, being about three feet high, as is the opposite arch at the other end ; the longest diameter of the tent being about twelve or fourteen feet, and the shortest ten ; and in the middle of the tent is a shallow hole about a yard in diameter, in which they make their fire, and round which the whole family, consisting of nine or ten people of all ages and sexes, sit or lie night and day in such a smoke (when it is cold, or they are dressing of victuals) that it is impossible for an European to bear it, there being usually no vent for the smoke but the door, though some have seen a hole in the top of some of their huts, to let out the smoke, and give them light. Such a circle of tents or huts as have been described, is called by the Hottentots a kraal, but sometimes by the Europeans a town or village ; but seems to be more properly a camp : for a town consists of more substantial buildings, and is seldom capable of being removed from one place to another ; whereas these dwellings consist of nothing more than small tent-poles, covered with skins or mats, which are moveable, and carried away upon their baggage oxen whenever they remove to a distant pasture. As to the fur-

niture of their tents, they consist of little more than their mantles which they lie on, some other skins of wild beasts they have killed or purchased, an earthen pot they boil their meat in, their arms, and perhaps some other trivial utensils. The only domestic animals they keep, are dogs, as ugly in their kind as their masters, but exceeding useful to them in driving and defending their cattle.

The arms of a Hottentot are, 1. His lance, which resembles a half-pike, sometimes thrown, and used as a missive weapon; and at others, serves to push with in close fight, the head or spear whereof is poisoned. 2. His bow and arrows, the arrows bearded and poisoned likewise, when they engage an enemy or wild beast they do not intend for food. Their bows are made of iron, or olive-wood; the strings of the sinews or guts of some animal; the quiver is a long narrow case, made of the skin of an elephant, elk, or ox, and slung at their backs, as soldiers sling their knapsacks. 3. A dart of a foot long, which they throw exceeding true, scarce ever missing the mark they aim at, though it is not above the breadth of half a crown: these are also poisoned, when they engage an enemy or a wild beast that is not to be eaten: and lastly, when they have spent the rest of their missive weapons, they have recourse to stones, seldom making a discharge in vain; and, what is most remarkable in their shooting or throwing arrows, darts, or stones, they never stand still, but are all the while skipping and jumping from one side to the other, possibly to avoid the stones and darts of the enemy.

The Hottentots, in war, have very little conception of discipline, nor indeed is it possible they should; for the only method of raising an army, is for the kraal captains to order the people to follow them; the only method of maintaining one is by hunting as they march; and the only way of deciding a dispute between two nations, is, by fighting one battle, the success of which determines the whole affair. In an engagement, they attack with an hideous yell, fight

in great confusion, and put more confidence in their war oxen than their own skill ; for these animals, when trained to the business, are better disciplined and much more formidable, than the Hottentots themselves.

Instances are not wanting of a Hottentot's engaging singly with the fiercest wild beasts, and killing them ; but usually the whole kraal or village assemble, when a wild beast is discovered in their neighbourhood, and, dividing themselves into small parties, endeavour to surround him. Having found their enemy, they usually set up a great cry, at which the frightened animal endeavours to break through and escape them : if it prove to be a rhinoceros, an elk, or elephant, they throw their lances at him, darts and arrows being too weak to pierce through their thick hides : if the beast be not killed at the first discharge, they repeat the attack, and load him with their spears ; and, as he runs with all his rage at the persons who wound him, those in his rear follow him close, and ply him with their spears ; on which he turns again, but is overpowered by his enemies, who constantly return to the charge, when his back is towards them, and scarce ever fail of bringing the creature down, before he has taken his revenge on any of them. How hazardous soever such an engagement may appear to an European, these people make it their sport ; and have this advantage, that they are exceeding swift of foot, and scarce ever miss the mark they aim at with their spears : if one of them is hard pressed by the brute, he is sure to be relieved by his companions, who never quit the field till the beast is killed, or makes his escape : though they sometimes dexterously avoid the adversary, they immediately return to the charge, subduing the fiercest either by stratagem or force. When attacking a lion, or a tyger, their darts and arrows are of service to them ; and therefore they begin the engagement at a greater distance, than when they charge an elephant or rhinoceros ; and the creature has a wood of darts and arrows upon his back, before he can approach his enemies, which

makes him fret and rage and fly at them with the greatest fury ; but those he attacks, nimbly avoid his paws, while others pursue him, and finish the conquest with their spears. Sometimes a lion takes to his heels, with abundance of poisoned darts and arrows in his flesh ; but, the poison beginning to operate, he soon falls, and becomes a prey to those he would have preyed upon. The elephant, the rhinoceros, and the elk, are frequently taken in traps and pitfalls without any manner of hazard. The elephants are observed to go in great companies to water, following in a file one after another, and usually take the same road till they are disturbed : the Hottentots therefore dig pits in their paths, about eight feet deep, and four and five over ; in which they fix sharp stakes pointed with iron, and then cover the pit with small sticks and turf, so as it is not discernable : and as these animals usually keep in one track, frequently one or other of them falls in with his fore feet into the pit, and the stakes pierce his body ; the more he struggles, the deeper the weight of his monstrous body fixes him on the stake : when the rest of the herd observe the misfortune of their companion, and find he cannot disengage himself, they immediately abandon him ; whereupon the Hottentots, who lie concealed, in expectation of the success of their stratagem, approach the wounded beast, stab him with their spears, and cut his largest veins, so that he soon expires ; whereupon they cut him to pieces, and carrying the flesh home, feast upon it as long as it lasts. His teeth they make into rings for their arms, and, when they have any ivory to spare, dispose of it to the Europeans. The rhinoceros and elk are frequently taken in pitfalls, as the elephants are. The Hottentot, who kills any of these, or a lion, leopard, or tyger, singly, has the highest honour conferred upon him, and several privileges, which belong only to such intrepid heroes.

The manner of the Hottentots swimming is particular, for he stands upright in the sea, and rather walks and treads the

water, than swims upon it, his head, neck, and shoulders being quite above the waves, as well as his arms, and yet they move faster in the water than any European can; even in a storm, when the waves run high, they will venture into the sea, rising and falling with the waves like a cork.

When the father of a family is become useless and superannuated, he is obliged to assign over his stock of cattle, and every thing else he has in the world, to his eldest son; and in default of sons, to his next heir male: after which the heir erects a tent or hut in some unfrequented place, a distance from the kraal or camp he belongs to, and having assembled the men of the kraal, acquaints them with the condition of his superannuated relation, and desires their consent to expose him in a distant hut; to which the kraal scarce ever refuse their consent. Whereupon a day being appointed to carry the old man to the solitary tent, the heir kills an ox, and two or three sheep, and invites the whole village to feast and be merry with him; and at the end of the entertainment, all the neighbourhood come and take a formal leave of the old wretch, thus condemned to be starved or devoured by wild beasts; then the unfortunate creature is laid upon one of their carriage oxen, and carried to his last home, attended to the place where he is to be buried alive by most of his neighbours. The old man being taken down, and set in the middle of the hut provided for him, the company return to their kraal, and he never sees the face of a human creature afterwards. In the same manner they deal with a superannuated mother; only as she has nothing she can call her own, she has not the trouble of assigning her effects to her son.

Their language is very inarticulate and defective; one word signifies several things, the definitive meaning being determined by the manner of pronouncing; and the pronunciation is so harsh and confused, that they seem to stammer in all they speak. Hence, though they are easily taught to

understand other languages, they can seldom be brought to speak them with any degree of intelligibility.

On Sunday, the 14th of April, in the morning, the Endeavour left the Cape, and on Thursday the 25th, Mr. Robert Mollineux, a youth of good parts, died. They continued their voyage without any remarkable incident; and on Monday the 29th, crossed the first meridian, having circumnavigated the globe from E. to W. and consequently lost a day, for which, upon correcting their reckoning at Batavia, they made allowance. On Monday, the 1st of May, they came to anchor before James's fort in the Island of St. Helena, and Mr. Banks employed his time in visiting the most remarkable places, and in surveying every object of notice.

St. Helena is situated in the Atlantic ocean, in six degrees W. longitude, and sixteen S. latitude, almost in the midway between Africa and America, being twelve hundred miles distant from the former, and eighteen hundred from latter. It was so named by the Portuguese, who discovered it on St. Helen's day. This island is 36 miles long, 18 broad, and about 61 in circumference. It is the summit of an immense mountain rising out of the sea, and of a depth unfathomable at a small distance round it. It may be discerned at sea, at above twenty leagues distance, and looks like a castle in the middle of the ocean, whose natural walls are of that height, that there is no scaling them. The small valley called Chapel-valley, in a bay on the east side of it, is defended by a battery of forty or fifty guns, planted even with the water; and the waves dashing perpetually on the shore, make it difficult landing even here. There is, also, one little creek besides, where two or three men may land at a time; but this is defended by a battery of five or six guns, and rendered inaccessible. No anchorage is to be found any where about the island, but at Chapel-valley bay, and as the wind always sets from the S. E. if a ship overshoots

the island ever so little, she cannot recover it again. The sent of volcanoes has been found to be the highest part of the countries in which they are found. Hecla is the highest hill in Iceland ; and the peak of Teneriffe is known to be the covering of subterraneous fire. These are still burning : but there are other mountains which bear evident marks of fire that is now extinct : among these is St. Helena, where the inequalities of the ground, and its external surface, are evidently the effects of the sinking of the earth ; and that this was caused by subterraneous fire, is equally manifest from the stones, for some of them, especially those in the bottom of the valleys, are burnt almost to cinders. This island, as the Endeavour approached it on the windward side, appeared like a rude heap of rocks, bounded by precipices of an amazing height, and consisting of a kind of stone, which shews not the least sign of vegetation : nor is it more promising on a nearer view. Sailing along shore, they came near the huge cliffs, that seemed to overhang the ship. At length they opened Chapel-valley, which resembles a trench, and in this valley discovered the town. The sides of it are as naked as the cliffs next the sea ; but the bottom is slightly clothed with herbage.

In Chapel-valley, a little beyond the landing place, the governor resides with the garrison ; and the town stands just by the sea-side. The greater part of the houses are ill built. The church, which was originally a mean structure, is in ruins ; and the market-place nearly in the same condition. The town consists of forty or fifty buildings, constructed after the English fashion, whither the people of the island resort when any shipping appears, as well to assist in the defence of the island, as to entertain the seamen if they are friends : for the governor has always centinels on the highest part of the island, to the windward, who give notice of the approach of all shipping, and guns are thereupon fired, that every man may be at his post. It is impossible for an enemy to approach by sea in the night time, and if disco-

vered the day before, preparations are speedily made for his reception.

Notwithstanding the island appears a barren rock on every side, yet on the top it is covered with a fine layer of earth, producing grain, fruits, and herbs of various kinds; and the country, after ascending the rock, is diversified with rising hills and plains, plantations of fruit trees, and kitchen gardens, among which the houses of the natives are interspersed, and in the open fields, are herds of cattle grazing, some of which are fatted to supply the shipping, and the rest furnish the dairies with milk, butter and cheese. Hogs, goats, turkeys, and all manner of poultry also abound, and the seas are well stored with fish. But amidst all this affluence, the people have neither bread nor wine of their own growth; for though the soil is proper for wheat, yet the rats that harbour in the rocks, and cannot be destroyed, eat up all the seed, before the grain is well out of the ground; and though their vines flourish and produce them grapes enough, yet the latitude is too hot for making wine. This therefore they have from the Canaries, the Madeiras, or the Cape, as well as their flour and malt. Their very houses are some of them brought from Europe, ready framed, there being no timber on the island, trees not taking deep root here on account of the rock that lies so near the surface: however, they have underwood enough for necessary uses. Besides grapes, they have plantains, bananas, figs, lemons, and such other fruits as hot countries usually produce. They also raise kidney beans, and some other kinds of pulse in their gardens; and the want of bread they supply with potatoes and yams.

In the year 1701, there were upon the island about two hundred families, most of them English, or descended from English parents. Every family has a house and plantation on the higher part of the island, where they look after their cattle, fruits, and kitchen garden. They scarce ever come down to the town, unless it be to church, or when the ship-

ning arrive, when most of the houses in the valley are converted into punch-houses, or lodgings for their guests, to whom they sell their poultry, and other commodities ; but they are not suffered to purchase any merchandise of the ships that touch here. Whatever they want of foreign growth or manufacture, they are obliged to buy at the company's warehouse, where twice every month, they may furnish themselves with brandy, European or Cape wines, Batavia arrack, malt, beer, sugar, tea, coffee, china, and japanned ware, linen, calicoes, chintz, muslins, ribbons, woollen-cloth, and stuffs, and all manner of clothing, for which they are allowed six months credit. Among the very few native productions of this island must be reckoned ebony, though the trees are now nearly extinct. Pieces of this wood are frequently found in the vallies of a fine black colour, and a hardness almost equal to iron ; these pieces, however, are so short and crooked, that no use can be made of them.

The Portuguese, who discovered this island in 1502, stored it with hogs, goats and poultry, and used to touch at it for water and fresh provisions in their return from India ; but we do not find they ever planted a colony here ; or, if they did, having deserted it afterwards, the English East-India Company took possession of the island A. D. 1600, and held it till 1673, without interruption, when the Dutch took it by surprise. However, the English, commanded by Capt. Munden, recovered it again within the space of one year, and took three Dutch East-India ships that lay in the road at the same time. The Hollanders had fortified the landing place, and planted batteries of great guns to prevent a descent ; but the English being acquainted with a small creek where only two men could go abreast, climbed up to the top of the rocks in the night time, and appearing next morning at the backs of the Dutch, they threw down their arms without striking a stroke : but this creek has been since fortified, so that there is now no place

where an enemy can make a descent with any probability of success.

The affairs of the East-India Company are managed here by a governor, deputy-governor, and storehouse-keeper, who have certain settled salaries allowed, besides a public table, well furnished, to which all commanders, masters of ships, and eminent passengers are welcome. The natives sometimes call the result of their deliberations, severe impositions; and though relief might perhaps be had from the company in England, yet the unavoidable delays in returning answers to addresses at that distance puts the aggrieved under great hardships; and on the other hand, was not the situation of this island very serviceable to our homeward-bound East-India ships, the constant trouble and expence would induce the company to abandon the island; for though it is furnished with the conveniences of life, the merchants find no other profitable commodities there. The masters of the plantations keep a great many blacks, who, upon severe treatment, hide themselves for two or three months together, keeping among the rocks by day, and roving at night for provisions: but they are generally discovered and taken.

The children and descendants of white people have not the least red in their cheeks, in all other places near the tropics, but the natives of St. Helena are remarkable for their ruddy complexions, and robust constitutions. Their healthfulness may, in general, be ascribed to the following causes. They live on the top of a mountain always open to the sea breezes that constantly blow here; they are usually employed in the most healthful exercises of gardening and husbandry; the island is frequently refreshed with moderate cooling showers; and no noxious fens, nor salt marshes annoy them. They are used also to climb the steep hill between the town in Chapel-valley and their plantations; which hill is so steep, that having a ladder in the middle of it, they call it Ladder-hill; and this cannot be

avoided without going three or four miles about ; so that they seldom want air or exercise, the great preservers of health. As to the genius and temper of these people, they seemed to be the most hospitable people ever met with of English extraction, having scarce any tincture of avarice or ambition. Some of them were asked if they had no curiosity to see the rest of the world, and how they could confine themselves to so small a spot of earth, separated at such a distance from the rest of mankind ? They replied, that they enjoyed the necessaries of life in great plenty ; they were neither parched with excessive heat, or pinched with cold ; they lived in perfect security ; in no danger of enemies, of robbers, wild beasts, or rigorous seasons ; and were happy in the enjoyment of a continued state of health : that as there were no rich men among them (scarce any planter being worth more than a thousand dollars) so there were no poor in the island, no man being worth less than four hundred dollars, and consequently not obliged to undergo more labour than was necessary to keep him in health.

Having sufficiently recruited their stores, on Saturday, the 4th of May, the ship weighed, and sailed out of the road in company with the Portland man of war, and his convoy, consisting of twelve sail of East Indiamen. With this fleet they continued their course for England until Friday the 10th, when perceiving they out-sailed the Endeavour and consequently might make their port before them, Capt. Cook, made the signal to speak with the Portland, upon which Capt. Elliot came on board the Endeavour ; to whom a letter for the Admiralty was delivered, with a box, containing the common log books of the ship, and the journals of some of the officers. The Endeavour did not lose sight of the fleet till Thursday the 23rd, and about one o'clock in the afternoon they lost the first lieutenant, Mr. Hicks, an active, skilful and judicious officer. He died of a consumption, of which lingering disorder he discovered some symptoms when he left England ; so that

it might be said, that he was dying the whole voyage; his decline was very gradual till he arrived at Batavia, from whence to the time of his dissolution, the slow consuming disease gained strength daily. The whole ship's company attended the funeral rites, and in the evening committed his body to the sea with the usual ceremonies. The next day the captain appointed Mr. Charles Clark, a young man, to act in the room of Mr. Hicks.

They now drew near their desired haven, and held on their course without any material occurrence, till Monday, the 10th of June, when to their great joy, Nicholas Young, the boy who first discovered New Zealand, called out land from the mast head, which proved to be the Lizard. The next day, being Tuesday, the eleventh, they proceeded up the channel. On Wednesday, the 12th, with the pleasing hopes of seeing their relatives and friends, exciting sensations not to be described by the pen of the most able writer, they passed Beachy Head. At noon, they were a breast of Dover, and about three o'clock, P. M. came to an anchor in the Downs.

Whoever considers the situation of the Endeavour during this voyage in cases of danger the most imminent, particularly when encircled in the wide ocean, with rocks of coral, her sheathing beaten off, and her false keel floating by her side, a hole in her bottom, and the men by turns fainting at the pumps, cannot but acknowledge the existence of a particular Providence. The history of Joseph can only afford a more striking instance of the interposition of a divine invisible hand. This our countrymen experienced; and the crew of the Endeavour acknowledged, that the hand of a Superior Power was particularly concerned in their protection and deliverance. This omniscient and omnipotent power, it is the incumbent duty of every christian to believe, confide in and adore.

THE
SECOND VOYAGE
OF
CAPT. JAMES COOK
ROUND THE WORLD.

THE king's expectations were not answered by former discoveries, and therefore his majesty Geo. III. projected this second voyage of Capt. Cook, and the Navy-board was ordered to equip two such ships as were most suitable to the service. Accordingly two vessels were purchased of Capt. William Hammond, of Hull, being about sixteen months old. They were both built at Whitby, by the same person who built the Endeavour. The largest of the two, named the Resolution, burthen four hundred and sixty-two tons, was sent to Deptford to be fitted out; and the Adventure, a vessel of three hundred and thirty-six tons, was equipped at Woolwich. On the 28th of November, 1771, Capt. Cook was appointed to the command of the Resolution; and Tobias Furneaux, who had been second lieutenant with Capt. Wallis, was promoted to the command of the Adventure. The Resolution had one hundred and twelve hands on board, officers included: and the Adventure had eighty-one.

The two ships were ordered to be got in readiness with the utmost expedition, and both the Navy and Victualling

boards paid an uncommon attention to their equipment. Capt. Cook sailed with greater advantages in this expedition, than any of his predecessors who had gone out before on discoveries; probably no future commander will ever have a commission of a more liberal kind, nor be furnished with a greater profusion of the very best stores and provisions. He had the frame of a vessel of twenty tons, one for each ship, to serve occasionally, or upon any emergency, as tenders; he had on board fishing-nets, lines and hooks of every kind; he was supplied with innumerable articles of small value, adapted to the commerce of the tropical islands: he had on board additional clothing for the seamen, particularly suited to a cold climate, to all which were added the best instruments for astronomical and nautical observations; in which were included four time-pieces on Mr. Harrison's principles, constructed by Messrs. Arnold and Kendal. And that nothing might be wanting to procure information, and that could tend to the success of the voyage, Mr. William Hodges, a landscape painter, was engaged for this important undertaking, accompanied by Mr. (afterwards Dr.) John Reinhold Foster and Son, who were thought the most proper persons for the line of Natural History, to which they were appointed with parliamentary encouragement. Mr. William Wales, and Mr. William Bailey, were likewise engaged to make astronomical observations; the former being placed by the board of longitude, in the *Resolution*, and Mr. Bailey in the *Adventure*. A number of medals were also struck by order of the Lords of the Admiralty, intended to be left as presents and testimonies in new discovered countries.

The two ships were victualled and provided with all manner of necessaries for a three years' voyage; among which were the following extra articles: 1 Malt, for sweet wort, designed for those whose habit of body might engender the scurvy, and as a remedy for such who might be afflicted with that disorder. The quantity prescribed for each patient,

from one to six pints a day, at the discretion of the surgeon. 2. Sour kroust, of which each seaman was to be allowed two pounds a week. This is cabbage salted down, and close packed in casks, after having been properly fermented. It is esteemed by our navigators an excellent antiscorbutic. 3. Cabbage cut small and salted down, to which is added juniper berries, and anniseeds, which are likewise put to the sour kroust. 4. Portable soup, very nourishing, and of great utility both for invalids, and those that are in good health. 5. Oranges, rob of lemons, and saloup, for the use of the surgeons, to be administered to the sick and scorbutic only. 6. Marmalade of carrots, recommended by Baron Storch of Berlin, as a very great antiscorbutic; but it did not as such answer their expectations. This syrup is extracted from yellow carrots, by evaporating the finer parts, till it is brought to the consistence of treacle, which it much resembles both in taste and colour. 7. Juice of wort and beer, inspissated as the foregoing article, and intended to supply at times the place of beer, by mixing it with water. For this they were indebted to Mr. Pelham, Secretary of the Victualling Office; the commissioners of which ordered thirty-one half barrels of this juice to be prepared for trial; nineteen whereof were stowed in the Resolution, and twelve on board the Adventure. Thus all the conveniences necessary for the preservation of health during a long voyage, were provided in abundance; and even some alterations were made in the customary articles of provisions: wheat being substituted in the room of a quantity of oatmeal, and sugar instead of oil.

A voyage attended with such extraordinary preparations, patronized by parliament, as well as royal bounty, and the execution superintended by the first officers of the Admiralty, the Navy, and by Capt. Cook himself, might with propriety be pronounced the most important ever performed in any age, or by any country; and it may be also with truth asserted, that the able navigator made choice of by his ma-

jesty, was equal to the task on which he was embarked. Every person who has read the account of his first voyage cannot but admire his skill; his fortitude; his care of his men, his vigilance in attending to the minutest intimations of former navigators, his perseverance amidst the dangers and hardships of rigorous seasons, his prowess in leading his company as they were capable of proceeding; in short, his conduct throughout, which while he kept every man singly in strict obedience to his duty, he conciliated the affections of all, and secured their esteem.

Capt. Cook received from the board of Admiralty his instructions, dated the 25th of June, the tenor and substance of which were, that the Adventure was to be under his command; that the two ships were to proceed to the island of Madeira, from thence to the Cape of Good Hope; that having at this place refreshed the ships' companies, and supplied them with provisions and other necessaries, they were to make the best of their way to the southward, in search of Cape Circumcision, which by M. Bouvet is said to be in latitude 54 deg. S. and in about 11 deg. 20 min. E. longitude, from the Royal Observatory in the Park at Greenwich; that if they fell in with this cape, Capt. Cook was to endeavour, by all means in his power, to discover whether the same was part of the supposed continent, which had so much employed the national attention of different European powers, or only the promontory of an island: that in either case, the gentlemen on board the two ships were diligently to explore the same, to the utmost extent possible; and make such observations of various kinds, as might correspond with the grand object in view, and be in any respect useful to either navigation or commerce; not omitting at the same time proper remarks on the genius and temper of the inhabitants; whose friendship and alliance they were directed to conciliate, by all prudential means in their power: that they were to proceed on new discoveries to the eastward or westward, as the captains might judge

most eligible, endeavouring only to run into as high a latitude, and as near the south pole as possible: that whatever might be the result of their investigations with respect to Cape Circumcision, they were to continue their surveys to the southward, and then to the eastward, either in search of the said continent, should it not have been ascertained, or to make discoveries of such islands, as might be seated in the hitherto unexplored and unknown parts of the southern latitudes: that, having circumnavigated the globe, they were to return to Spithead by the way of the Cape of Good Hope; and that to answer the intentions of government in this voyage as fully as possible, when the season of the year rendered it unsafe to continue in high latitudes, they were to repair to some known port to the northward; and after having refitted, &c. they were to return again, at the proper season to the southward, in prosecution of new discoveries there. It may not be amiss here to observe, that these orders were not intended to cramp Capt. Cook, who was allowed, in case the Resolution should be lost, to continue his voyage in the Adventure: he had to this end assistants out of number: his stay was not even hinted at: he was not obliged to return at any limited time; in short he had ample power, full authority, and in all unforeseen cases, he was to proceed according to his own discretion, and act entirely as he pleased. It may be proper to observe, that in the history of this voyage, Greenwich is made the first meridian, and from thence the longitude is reckoned E. and W. to 180 deg. each way. It may also be proper to notice, that whenever the initial letters, A. M. and P. M. of ante-meridianum, and post-meridianum, are used, the former signifies the forenoon, and the latter the afternoon of the same day.

A copy of the above instructions were transmitted to Capt. Furneaux, inclosed with Capt. Cook's orders, in which he appointed, should the two ships be separated, the Island of Madeira for the first place of rendezvous; Port

Praya for the second; the Cape of Good Hope for the third; and New Zealand for the fourth.

While they remained at Plymouth, Mr. Wales and Mr. Bayley made observations on Drake's Island; when the latitude was found to be 50 deg. 21 min. 30 sec. N. and the longitude 4 deg. 20 min. W. of Greenwich; whereby the true time for putting the time-pieces and watches in motion was ascertained. This was done on the 13th of July, and they were set a going, in the presence of the two astronomers, Capt. Furneaux, Capt. Cook, and the two first lieutenants of the ships. These had each of them keys of the boxes which contained the watches, and were always to be present at the winding them up, and comparing the one with the other, unless prevented by indisposition. This day, the ships' crews, according to the custom of the navy, received two months' wages in advance. As a further encouragement, and that they might provide necessaries for the voyage, they were likewise paid the wages due to them to the 28th of the preceding May.

On Sunday, the 12th of July, the Resolution broke from her moorings in the Sound, and was adrift together with the transport buoy to which she was fastened. All hands were on deck instantly, the cables were cleared, and the sails spread. The ship passed the Adventure, and came to an anchor, after having escaped the very apparent danger of being dashed against the rocks that are under the fort. This favourable event was looked upon by the seamen as an omen of the success of the voyage. It was undoubtedly an instance of the care of Divine Providence exerted for their protection in so critical a moment.

On Monday the 18th the ships left Plymouth: as they stood off shore, the wind increased, and the billows rolled higher and higher, and most of the seamen were affected with sickness. When in sight of Cape Finisterre, they met a small French tartan from Marseilles, freighted with flour from Ferrol and Corunna, and obtained from them a small

supply of fresh water, which they much wanted, having been obliged to subsist on bread and wine. On the 22nd, in the afternoon, they passed two Spanish men of war, one of which fired a shot at the Adventure to bring her to; but on hailing her, and being told they were king's ships, made an apology, and took their leave, wishing them a good voyage. On Wednesday, the 29th, they anchored in Funchiale road, in the island of Madeira. The captain went on shore, accompanied by the two Mr. Forsters, and were conducted by Mr. Sills, a gentleman from the vice-consul, to the house of Mr. Loughnans, a considerable English merchant, who assisted them with every thing the island and his house afforded, during their stay.

The Madeira, or Madera Islands are only three in number: namely, Madeira properly so called; the Island of Puerto, or Porto Santo; and Isla Deserta, or the Desolate Isle. They were thus named from the principal of them, which was called by the Portuguese Madeira, signifying a wood or forest, from its being overgrown with trees. They were first discovered by an English gentleman, and many years afterwards by the Portuguese; and as there is something singular in both these occurrences, but more particularly the first, it may be entertaining to relate the circumstances.

In the reign of Edward III. king of England, a young gentleman, named Robert Machin, conceived a violent passion for Ann D' Arfet, a beautiful and accomplished lady of a noble family. Machin, with respect to birth and fortune, was inferior to the lady; but his personal qualifications overcame every scruple on that account, and she rewarded his attachment with a reciprocal affection. Her friends, however, beheld the young gentleman in a different light; they fancied their blood would be contaminated by an alliance with one of a lower rank, and therefore determined to sacrifice the happiness of the young lady, to the hereditary pride of blood, and their own mercenary and interested

motives. In consequence of these ideas, a warrant was procured from the king, under the sanction of which Machin was apprehended, and kept in close confinement, till the object of his affections was married to a nobleman, whose chief merit lay in his honorary title and large possessions; and immediately after the nuptial ceremony was over, the peer took his beautiful bride with him to a strong castle which he had in the neighbourhood of Bristol, and then the unfortunate lover was set at liberty.

After being released from his cruel confinement, Machin was acquainted that his mistress had been compelled to give her hand to another. This rendered him almost frantic, and he vowed to revenge the violence done to the lady, and the injury he himself had sustained; and with this view, imparted his design to some of his friends and companions, who engaged to accompany him to Bristol, and assist him in whatever enterprise he undertook. Accordingly one of his comrades contrived to get himself hired by the nobleman as a servant, and by that means being introduced into the family, he soon found an opportunity to let the lady know the sentiments and intentions of her lover; when she fully entered into all his projects, and promised to comply with whatever he should propose. To facilitate their designs the lady appeared more cheerful than usual, which lulled asleep every suspicion that her lord might otherwise have entertained; she also entreated permission to ride out daily to take the air for the benefit of her health, which request her consort easily granted. This point being gained, she did not fail to take advantage of it, by riding out every morning accompanied by one servant only, which was her lover's companion, he having been previously pitched upon always to attend her by her own contrivance.

Matters being thus prepared, she rode out one day as usual, when her attendant conducted her to his friend, who waited at the sea side to receive her. They all three immediately entered a boat, and soon reached a ship that lay

at some distance ready to receive them on board: and Machin, having the object of his wishes on board, immediately set sail, intending to proceed to France; but all on board being ignorant of maritime affairs, and the wind blowing a hard gale, they missed their port, and the next morning, to their astonishment, found themselves driven into the main ocean. In this miserable condition, they abandoned themselves to despair, and committed their fates to the mercy of the waves. Without a pilot, almost destitute of provisions, and quite devoid of hope, they were tossed about for the space of thirteen days. At length, when the morning of the 14th day began to dawn, they fancied they could descry something very near them, that had the appearance of land; and when the sun rose, to their great joy they could distinctly perceive it was such. Their pleasure, however, was in some measure lessened by the reflection, that it was a strange country; for they plainly perceived it was covered with a variety of trees, whose nature and appearance they had not the least knowledge of. Soon after this, some of them landed from the sloop, in order to make their observations on the country; when, returning soon after to the ship, they highly commended the place, but at the same time believed there were no inhabitants in it.

The lover and his mistress, with some of their friends, then landed, leaving the rest to take care of the ship. The country appeared beautifully diversified with hills and dales, shaded with various trees, and watered by many clear meandering streams. The most beautiful birds of different species perched upon their heads, arms, and hands, unapprehensive of danger; and several kinds of wild beasts approached, without offering any violence to them. After having penetrated through several woody recesses, they entered a fine meadow admirably encircled with a border of laurels, finely enamelled with various flowers, and happily watered with a meandering crystal rivulet. Upon an eminence in the midst of this meadow, they saw a lofty

spreading tree, the beauty of which invited them to repose under its shade, and partake of the shelter it would afford them from the piercing rays of the sun. They at length attempted to make a temporary residence beneath the tree; and providing themselves with boughs from the neighbouring woods, they built several small huts or arbours. They passed their time very agreeably in this place, from whence they made frequent excursions into the neighbouring country, admiring its strange productions and various beauties. Their happiness, however, was of no very long continuance; for one night a terrible storm arose from the N. E. which tore the ship from her anchor, and drove her to sea. The crew were obliged to submit to the mercy of the elements, when they were driven to the coast of Morocco, where the ship being stranded, the whole crew were made captives by the Moors.

Machin and his companions, having missed the ship the next morning, they concluded she had foundered, and was gone to the bottom. This new calamity plunged them into the deepest melancholy, and so affected the lady, that she could not support herself under it. She had indeed before continually fed her grief, by sad presages of the enterprise's ending in some fatal catastrophe to all concerned; but the shock of the last disaster struck her dumb; so that she expired in three days afterwards, in the most bitter agonies. The death of the lady affected Machin to such a degree, that he survived her but four days, notwithstanding the utmost endeavours of his companions to afford him consolation. Previous to his death he begged them to place his body in the same grave with her's, which they had made at the foot of an altar, erected under the beautiful lofty tree before-mentioned. They afterwards placed upon it a large wooden cross: and near that an inscription, drawn up by Machin himself, containing a succinct account of the whole adventure; and concluding with a request, that if any Christians should come thither to settle, that they would

build and dedicate a church to Jesus Christ upon that spot. The remaining companions of Machin, after his death, determined to attempt returning to England in the sloop, which had been so well secured near the shore, as not to be in the least damaged by the storm which had driven away the ship. But, happening to take the same course the others had been forced upon, they unfortunately arrived in like manner upon some part of the coast of Morocco, where they met exactly the same fate, being seized in a similar manner and carried to the same prison. Here they met with several other Christian slaves, besides their own companions; particularly one John de Morales, a Spaniard of Seville. This man was an excellent sailor, and took a peculiar delight in hearing the English captives rehearse their adventures, by which means he learnt the situation and particular marks of this new discovered country, which he took care to retain in his memory.

In process of time, John I. king of Portugal, having entered into a war with the Moors, passed over into Africa with a formidable army; and in the year 1415 laid siege to and took Ceuta. In this expedition, he was accompanied by his sons, one of whom, prince Henry, took great delight in the study of the mathematics, particularly geography and navigation. Upon this occasion he had a great opportunity of conversing with the Moors and African Jews; and informing himself, by their means, of the situation of several foreign countries, the seas about them, their coasts, &c.

Hence grew an insatiable thirst for making new conquests; and from this time he was determined to devote his attention to the discovery of unknown countries. In consequence of which resolution, he retired, after the reduction of Ceuta, to the Algarves, where he found a new town within a league of Cape St. Vincent, erected a fort to defend it, and determined to send out ships from thence on discoveries. The person he intended to employ as chief commander, upon these occasions, was a gentleman of extraor-

dinary abilities, named Juan Gonsalvo Zarco, who became famous not only for his maritime discoveries, but for being the first person who introduced the use of artillery on board ships. In 1418 he discovered Puerto Santo, one of the Madeiras; and in 1420 he passed the straights, and surveyed a considerable extent of the coast of Africa. In the mean time, a Spanish prince dying, left by his will a large sum of money for the purpose of redeeming Spanish Christians, who were kept as slaves in Morocco. Terms being agreed upon between the emperor of Morocco and the commissioners, for the redemption of those captives, a Spanish ship was sent to Morocco to fetch home the redeemed Christians, among whom was John de Morales before-mentioned. On the return of this ship to Spain, it happened to fall in with the squadron of Juan Gonsalvo Zarco, who was, as we have just noticed, then passing the straights to make observations on the coast of Africa. Spain and Portugal being at this time at war, Juan Gonsalvo Zarco made prize of the Spanish ship; but finding it contained only redeemed captives, he was touched with compassion at the miseries they had already suffered during their slavery, and generously dismissed them, taking out only John de Morales, whom he found to be a very intelligent person, an able sailor, and an expert pilot.

When Morales was informed of the reason of his detention, and the discoveries that the Portuguese were upon, he was mightily rejoiced, and offered voluntarily to enter into the service of prince Henry. He then told the Portuguese commander, of the island which had been discovered by the English, related the story of the unfortunate lovers, and every other circumstance, which, during his captivity, he had heard from Machin's companions. Gonsalvo was so much delighted with his relation, that he tacked about, and returned to the new town which prince Henry had built, called Terra Nabal. On his arrival, he introduced Morales to the prince, when the Spaniard again repeated

all that he had told to Juan Gonsalvo. The prince thought this worthy of becoming a national affair; and therefore, communicating the whole to the king his father, and the Portuguese ministry, they determined to pursue the discovery; and for that purpose fitted out a good ship, well manned and provided, and a sloop to go with oars, when occasion required, and Juan Gonsalvo was appointed to take the command of the whole. Some Portuguese, on the discovery of Puerto Santo a short time before, had been left by Gonsalvo on that island; and judging by the account of Morales, concerning the situation of the island they were in quest of, that it could not be far from Puerto Santo, he determined to sail thither; where when he arrived, the Portuguese whom he had left behind, informed him, that they had observed to the north-east a thick impenetrable darkness, which constantly hung upon the sea, and extended itself upward to the heavens. That they never knew it to be diminished; but a strange noise, which they could not account for, was often heard from thence.

John de Morales appeared to be convinced that this was the island they were in search of; and Juan Gonsalvo was inclined to coincide with him; but all the rest were terrified at the accounts they had heard. It was therefore concluded to remain at Puerto Santo till the change of the moon, to see what effect that would have upon the shade, or whether the noise would cease. But perceiving no alteration of any kind, the panic increased among the generality of the adventurers. Morales, however, stood firm to his opinion of that being the island they were looking for; and very sensibly observed, that, according to the accounts he had received from the English, the ground was covered over with lofty shady trees; it was no wonder, therefore, that it should be exceeding damp, and that the humid vapours might exhale from it by the power of the sun, which spreading themselves to the sky, occasioned the dark clouds they saw; and with respect to the noise, that might be occasioned

by certain currents dashing against the rocks on the coast of the island.

Notwithstanding these obstacles, Juan Gonsalvo determined to proceed: and, setting sail the next day, he at length made land; and the fear of those who had been all along terrified now vanished. The first point they saw, they named St. Lawrence's Point: doubling this, they found to the southward, rising land, whither Morales and others were sent in a sloop to reconnoitre the coast; and came to a bay which seemed to answer the description given by the English. Here they landed; and finding the cross and the inscription over the grave of the two lovers, they returned to Juan Gonsalvo with an account of their success; whereupon he immediately landed, and took possession of the place, in the name of John I. king of Portugal, and prince Henry his son. Having built an altar near the grave, they searched about the island in order to discover if it contained any cattle; but not finding any, they coasted westward, till they came to a place where four fine rivers ran into the sea, of the waters of which Juan Gonsalvo filled some bottles, to carry as a present to prince Henry. Proceeding farther, they came to a fine valley, which was intersected by a beautiful river, and after that to a pleasant spot covered with trees, some of which being fallen down, Juan Gonsalvo ordered a cross to be erected of the timber, and called the place Santa Cruz, or Holy Cross. After this they began to look out for a place proper to fix their residence in while they stayed; and at length found a fine tract of land, not so woody as the rest of the country, but covered over with fennel, which, in Portuguese language, is called Funcho: from thence the town of Funchal, or Funchiale, took its name which was afterwards built on the same spot.

Juan Gonsalvo, after having viewed other parts of the island, and finding daily new cause for admiration of the beauties continually discovered, returned to Portugal,

and arrived at Lisbon in the end of August 1420, without having lost a single man in the whole enterprise : and a day of audience being appointed for him to make his report of his voyage, the king gave the name of Madeira to the new discovered island, on account of the great quantity of excellent wood found upon it. Soon after an order was made for Juan Gonsalvo to return to Madeira in the ensuing spring, with the title of captain governor of Madeira, to which title the heir of his family at present adds that of count. He accordingly set sail on his second voyage in May 1421, taking with him the greatest part of his family ; and arriving at Madeira, he cast anchor in the road, till then called the English Port ; but Gonsalvo, in honour of the first discoverer, then called it Puerto de Machino, from which name it was corrupted to Machico, which it now bears. He then ordered the large spreading beautiful tree before mentioned (under which Machin and his companions had taken up their residence) to be cut down, and a small church to be erected with the timber ; which, agreeably to Machin's request, he dedicated to Jesus Christ, and intersected the pavement of the choir with the bones of the two unfortunate lovers. He soon after laid the foundation of the town of Funchal, which afterwards became famous ; and the altar of the new wooden church was dedicated to St. Catherine, by his wife Constantia, who was with him.

The island of Madeira, properly so called, is composed of one continued hill of a wonderful height, extending from east to west ; the declivity of which, on the south side, is cultivated and interspersed with vineyards ; and in the midst of this slope, the merchants have fixed their country seats, which help to render the prospect very agreeable.

The ships departed from Madeira on the 1st of August, and on the 9th they crossed the tropic of Cancer. Capt. Cook now made from the inspissated juice of malt three puncheons of beer. The proportion of water to juice was ten of the former to one of the latter. They had on board

nineteen half barrels of inspissated juice, fifteen of which were made from wort that had been hopped before it was inspissated. This may be mixed with cold water; in a proportion of one part of juice to eight or twelve of water; in a few days it will be brisk and fit to drink; but the first sort, after having been mixed as above directed, requires to be fermented with yeast, in the manner as is done in making beer. This juice would be a most valuable article at sea, could it be kept from fermenting, which it did at this time by the heat of the weather, and the agitation of the ship, that all endeavours to stop it were in vain.

On Monday the 10th, they came to an anchor in Port Praya, in the isle of St. Jago, one of the Cape de Verds. An officer was sent on shore for leave to procure what refreshments they wanted, which was readily granted; and on his return the ships saluted the fort with eleven guns. Here both the ships were supplied with plenty of good water. They also recruited their live stock, such as hogs, goats, and poultry, some of which continued alive during the remainder of the voyage.

The island of St. Jago, or St. James's Island, is situated between the 15th and 16th deg. N. lat. and in the 23rd of W. long. This island is the most fruitful and best inhabited of all the Cape de Verd islands, notwithstanding it is very mountainous, and has a great deal of barren land in it. The principal town is called after the name of the island, and is situated in 15 deg. N. lat. It stands against the sides of two mountains, between which there is a deep valley two hundred yards wide, that runs within a small space of the sea. In that part of the valley next the sea is a straggling street, with houses on each side, and a rivulet of water in the bottom, which empties itself into a fine cove or sandy bay, where the sea is generally very smooth, so that ships ride there with great safety. A small fort stands near the landing place from this bay, where a guard is con-

stantly kept, and near it is a battery mounted with a few small cannon.

The town of St. John contains about three hundred houses, all built of rough stone, and it has one small church and a convent. The inhabitants of the town are in general very poor, having but little trade. Their chief manufacture is striped cotton cloth, which the Portuguese ships purchase of them, in their way to Brazil, and supply them with several European commodities in return.

A tolerable large town is on the east side of the island called Praya, where there is a good port, which is seldom without ships, especially in peaceable times. Most of the European ships bound to the East Indies touch at this port to take in water and provisions, but they seldom stop here on their return to Europe. The town of Praya does not contain any remarkable building, except a fort, situated on the top of a hill, which commands the harbour. When the European ships are here, the country people bring down their commodities to sell to the seamen and passengers; these articles generally consist of bullocks, hogs, goats, fowls, eggs, plantains, and cocoa-nuts, which they exchange for shirts, drawers, handkerchiefs, hats, waistcoats, breeches, and linen of any kind.

On Friday the 14th of August, both ships having got on board a supply of refreshments and provisions, they weighed anchor, put to sea, and continued their voyage to the Cape of Good Hope. On the 19th, one of the carpenter's mates fell overboard, and was drowned. He was sitting on one of the scuttles, from whence it was supposed he fell. All endeavours to save him were in vain, for he was not seen till the instant he sunk under the ship's stern. His loss was sensibly felt, he being a sober man, as well as a good workman and he was much regretted by his shipmates.

On Thursday the 20th, it rained in streams and they filled seven empty puncheons with fresh water. On the 27th, one of Captain Furneaux's petty officers died, but on board the

Resolution there was not one man sick, although a deal of rain fell, which in such hot climates is a great promoter of sickness. Capt. Cook took every necessary precaution for the preservation of health, by airing and drying the ship with fires made between decks, and by making the crew air their bedding, and wash their clothes at every opportunity.

On Tuesday, September the 8th, they crossed the line in longitude 8 deg. W. Some of the crew, who had never passed the line before, were obliged to undergo the usual ceremony of ducking, but some bought themselves off, by paying the required forfeit of brandy.

On Thursday, the 29th, at two o'clock P. M. they made the land of the Cape of Good Hope. They were visited by the master-attendant of the fort, some other officers belonging to the company, and Mr. Brandt. This last gentleman brought many articles that were very acceptable; and the master-attendant, as is customary, took an account of the two ships, inquiring particularly if the small-pox was on board, a disorder dreaded above all others by the inhabitants of the Cape; for which reason a surgeon always attends on these visits. Capt. Cook sent an officer to wait upon Baron Plettenberg the governor, to inform him of their arrival; to which he returned a polite answer; and on the return of the officer, the English saluted the fort with eleven guns, which compliment was acknowledged by the same number.

On the 22nd of November, having got every thing on board, and having taken leave of the governor, and other officers, who in a most obliging manner had afforded all the necessary assistance they required, they weighed, and saluted the fort with sixteen guns, which compliment was instantly returned. As soon as they had cleared the land, they directed their course, as ordered, to Cape Circumcision. As they were now advancing towards the antarctic circle, and expected to encounter with cold weather, the captain ordered a waste of fresh water to be as much as possible prevented; at the same time he supplied each man with a

fearnought jacket, and trowsers, allowed by the Admiralty and also slops to such who wanted them.

On the 29th, a heavy storm came from the W.N.W. with few intervals of moderate weather, for nearly a week : the sea ran very high, and frequently broke over the ships. The roaring of the waves, together with hail, rain, and a great agitation of the vessel, were circumstances that rendered their situation extremely disagreeable. A boy in the fore part of the ship hearing a noise of water running among the chests, turned out, and found himself half way up the legs in water ; upon which all hands worked at the pumps, but still the water increased : at last it was discovered to come in through a scuttle in the boatswain's store-room. This gale, attended with hail and rain, continued till the 8th, with such fury, that they could carry no sails ; and being driven by this means far to the eastward of their intended course, not the least hope remained of reaching Cape Circumcision. Their distress was augmented by the loss of a great part of the live stock they had brought from the Cape. Every man felt the effects of the sudden transition from warm to extreme cold weather ; for which reason an addition was made to the men's allowance of brandy in both ships. On the morning of the 7th of December, the rising sun gave a flattering prospect of serene weather ; but their expectations soon vanished ; the barometer was unusually low ; and by one o'clock P. M. the wind, which was at N. W. blew with such violence as obliged them to strike the top-gallant-masts. On the eighth, the gale was somewhat abated ; but the sea ran too high to carry more than the fore-top-mast stay-sail.

On Wednesday, the 9th, at three A.M. they wore the ship to the southward : showers of snow fell, with squally weather. At eight, made signal for the Adventure to make sail. On the 10th, made another signal for her to lead, and saw an ice island to the westward, in 50 deg. 40 min. S. latitude, and 2 deg. E. longitude of the Cape of Good Hope.

The weather being hazy, Capt. Cook by signal called the Adventure under their stern : a fortunate circumstance this ; for the fog increased so much, that they could not discern an island of ice, for which they were steering, till they were within a mile of it. The sea broke very high against this island of ice, which Captain Furneaux took for land, and therefore hauled off from it, till he was called back by signal. It being now necessary to proceed with great circumspection, they reefed their topsails, and upon sounding found no ground with 150 fathoms.

On Monday, the 14th, a boat was hoisted out for two gentlemen to make some observations and experiments. While they were thus engaged, the fog increased so much, that they lost sight of both ships. Their situation was truly alarming, as they were only in a small four oared boat, in an immense ocean, surrounded with ice, utterly destitute of provisions, and far from any habitable shore. They made various efforts to be heard, and rowed about for some time, without effect ; they could not see the length of their boat, nor hear any sound. They had neither mast nor sail, only two oars. They determined to lie still, as the weather was calm, and hoped that the ships would not sail out of sight. They now heard a bell sounded at a distance, and were at last taken up by the Adventure, and thus narrowly escaped. So great was the thickness of the fog sometimes, that the ships had the utmost difficulty to avoid running against the islands of ice, with which they were surrounded. There were two men on board the Resolution, who had been in the Greenland trade ; the one had lain nine weeks, and the other six, stuck fast in a field of ice. That which is called a field of ice is very thick, and consists but of one piece, be it ever so large. There are other pieces of great extent packed together and in some places heaped upon each other. They now found the weather so much colder, that all the crew complained. Those jackets which were too short were lengthened with baize, and each of them had a

cap made of the same stuff, which kept them as warm as the climate would admit. Scorbutic symptoms appearing on some of the people, the surgeons gave them fresh wort every day, made from the malt they took out for that purpose.

On the 27th, they had a dead calm, and they devoted the opportunity to shooting petrels and penguins. This afforded great sport, though they were unsuccessful in the chase of penguins; at last they wounded one repeatedly, but were forced finally to kill it with a ball; its hard glossy plumage having constantly turned the shot aside. The plumage of this bird is very thick, the feathers long and narrow, and lie as close as scales. These amphibious birds are thus secured against the wet, in which they almost continually live. Nature has likewise given them a thick skin, in order to resist the perpetual winter of these inhospitable climates. The penguin weighed eleven pounds and a half. The petrels are likewise well provided against the severity of the weather, and have an astonishing quantity of feathers, two feathers instead of one proceeding out of every root.

They had very bad weather, consisting of thick fogs, rain, sleet, hail, and snow, and were surrounded with innumerable quantities of ice, and in constant danger of being split by them. The crew were well supplied with portable broth and sour krout, which had the effect of keeping them from the scurvy. The habit of body in one man was not to be relieved by these expedients, but he was cured by the constant use of fresh wort.

On the 29th, the commanders, came to a resolution, provided they met with no impediment, to run as far west as Cape Circumcision, since the sea seemed to be pretty clear of ice, and the distance not more than eighty leagues. They steered for an island of ice this day, intending to take some on board and convert it into fresh water. They could not, however, take up any of the loose ice, for the wind increased so considerably, as made it dangerous for the ships to remain

among the ice ; besides which, they discovered an immense field of ice to the north, extending farther than the eye could reach.

On the 1st of January, 1773, the gale abated, but there fell a deal of snow and sleet, which froze on the rigging of the ships. The wind continued moderate the next day, and they were favoured with a sight of the moon, which they had not seen since they left the Cape of Good Hope. They were now in 59 deg. 12 min. S. lat. and in 9 deg. 45 min. E. long. and made several observations on the sun and moon, being nearly in the longitude assigned by M. Bouvet to Cape Circumcision : as the weather was very clear at this time, insomuch that they could see at least fifteen leagues distance, it is most probable what he took for land was no more than mountains of ice, surrounded by loose or packed ice.

On Friday the 8th, they passed several ice islands, and in the evening came to one which had a vast quantity of loose ice about it, and the weather being moderate, they sent the boats out to take up as much as they could. Large piles of it were packed upon the quarter-deck, and put into casks, from which, after it was melted, they got water enough for thirty days. A very little salt water adhered to the ice, and the water which this produced was fresh and good. Excepting the melting and taking away the ice, this is a most expeditious method of supplying ships with water. They observed here several white whales of an immense size.

On the 17th, they crossed the antarctic circle, and advanced into the southern frigid zone, which to all former navigators had remained impenetrable. In the afternoon they saw thirty-eight ice islands, large and small. This immense field was composed of different kinds of ice, such as field-ice, so called by the Greenlandmen, and packed ice. They saw several whales playing about, and large petrels. The latitude was now 67 deg. 15 min. S. and not

thinking it prudent to persevere in a southern direction, they resolved to go directly in search of the land lately discovered by the French.

On the 29th, several porpoises passed with amazing swiftness; they had a large white spot on their sides, which came almost up to their backs. They went at least three times as fast as the vessels, which went at the rate of seven knots and a half an hour. On the 31st, they passed a large ice island, which at the time of their sailing by was tumbling to pieces. The explosion equalled that of a cannon.

On the 4th of February, there was an exceeding thick fog, and they lost sight of the Adventure. They fired several signals, but were not answered; and they feared that a separation had taken place, though they could not well tell what had been the cause of it. Capt. Cook had directed Capt. Furneaux, in case of a separation, to cruise three days in that place he last saw the Resolution. Capt. Cook accordingly made short boards, and fired half-hour guns till the afternoon of the 7th, when the weather cleared up, but the Adventure was not to be seen in the limits of their horizon. They lay to till the 10th, firing guns, and burning false fires at night, but neither saw nor heard any thing of the Adventure. The crew universally regretted the loss of the Adventure; and seldom looked around the ocean without expressing some concern they were alone on this unexplored expanse.

On the 17th of March, Captain Cook came to a resolution to quit the high southern latitudes and to proceed to New Zealand, to look for the Adventure and to refresh his people. As the wind, which continued between the N. and W. would not permit them to touch at Van Dieman's Land, they shaped their course to New Zealand; and being under no apprehensions of meeting with any danger, the captain was not backward in carrying sail. For the three days past the mercury in the thermometer had risen to forty-six, and the weather was quite mild. Seven or eight degrees

of latitude had made a surprising difference in the temperature of the air, which they felt with an agreeable satisfaction.

On the 26th, they entered Dusky Bay, in New Zealand, but with much caution, as they were all strangers as to its soundings, Capt. Cook in his former voyage having only discovered and named it. After running about two leagues up the bay, and passing several of the isles which lay in it, they brought to, and hoisted out two boats; one of which was sent away, with an officer, round a point on the larboard side, to look for anchorage. This he found, and signified the same by signal. They then followed with the ship, and anchored in fifty fathoms water, so near the shore as to reach it with a hawser. This was a circumstance of great joy, having been 117 days at sea, and sailed 3660 leagues, without so much as once seeing land.

After such a long continuance at sea, in a high northern latitude, it is but reasonable to think that many of the people were ill of the scurvy. The contrary, however, was the fact: sweetwort had been given to such as were scorbutic; and this had so far the desired effect, that only one man on board could be called very ill of this disease, and his illness was principally aggravated by a bad habit of body, and a complication of other disorders.

The country appeared beautiful and pleasing. The Islands at the entrance of Dusky Bay, were shaded with evergreen, and covered with woods, and exhibited a delightful prospect. The rocky shores were enlivened with flocks of aquatic birds, and the whole country resounded with the wild notes of the feathered songsters. They caught great numbers of fish, which eagerly took the bait, and their first meal upon fish seemed the most delightful they ever made. Their situation was admirable for wood and water. The ship's yards were locked in the branches of trees, and near their stern ran a delightful stream of fresh water. They now made preparations on shore to set up the

astronomer's observatory, the forge, &c. for making all necessary observations and repairing the ships. The live cattle they had left, which consisted of a few sheep and goats, would not taste the grass which grew on the shore, nor were they fond of the leaves of tender plants which grew here. On examining these poor creatures it appeared that their teeth were loose, and that they had other symptoms of an inveterate scurvy.

On the 28th, some of the officers went on a shooting party in a small boat, and discovering some of the inhabitants, returned to acquaint Capt. Cook therewith. Shortly after a canoe filled with them came within musket shot of the ships. They remained for a short time and then returned, though every endeavour was used to induce them to approach nearer. Capt. Cook, with several officers and gentlemen, went in search of them the same day. They found the canoe hauled upon the shore, where were several huts, with fire-places and fishing-nets, but the people had probably retired into the woods. The gentlemen made but a short stay, and left in the canoe some medals, looking glasses, &c. not choosing to search any further, or enforce an interview which the natives wished to avoid.

On the 1st of April, they sent to see if the things left in the canoe remained there. It did not appear that any body had been there. On the 2nd, they went ashore and took with them a black dog they had brought from the Cape, who ran into the woods at the first musket they fired, and would not return.

On the 6th, a shooting party went out, and found a capacious cove, where they shot several ducks : on which account they called it Duck Cove. They had an interview with one man and two women, as they returned in the evening, who were natives, and the first that discovered themselves ; and had not the man hallooed they would have passed without seeing them. The man stood upon the point of a rock, with a club in his hand, and the women were

behind him with spears. As they approached, the man discovered great signs of fear, but stood firm; nor would he move to take up some things that were thrown to him. His fears were all dissipated by Capt. Cook's going up to embrace him; and the captain gave him such things as he had about him. The officers and seamen followed the captain, and talked some time with them; though they could not understand them. The youngest of the women bore the greatest share in the conversation.

On the 7th, they made them another visit, and presented them with several things; but they beheld every thing with indifference, except hatchets and spike nails. They now saw all the man's family, as they supposed, which consisted of his two wives, the young woman mentioned before, a boy about fourteen years old, and three small children. Excepting one woman (who had a large wen upon her upper lip,) they were well favoured; on account of her disagreeable appearance, she seemed to be neglected by the man. The Englishmen were conducted to their habitation, which consisted of two mean huts, situated near the skirts of a wood. Their canoe lay in a small creek near the huts, and was just large enough to transport the whole family from place to place. A gentleman of the party made sketches of them. On taking leave, the man presented Capt. Cook with some trifles and a piece of cloth of their own manufacture; and pointed to a boat cloak, which he wished to have. The hint was taken, and one was ordered to be made for him of red baize. On the 9th, they paid the natives another visit, and signified their approach by hallooing to them; but they neither met the English on shore, nor answered them as usual; the reason was, they were dressing themselves to receive the gentlemen. They had their hair combed and oiled, stuck with white feathers and tied upon the crowns of their heads, and had bunches of feathers stuck in their ears. They were received with great courtesy, and the man was so well pleased with the present

of the cloak, that he took his patta-patoe from his side, and gave it to Capt. Cook.

On Monday, the 12th, this family paid them a visit in their canoe, but proceeded with caution as they approached the ship. They could not be persuaded to come on board, but put ashore in a little creek near them, and sat themselves down. Capt. Cook ordered the bagpipes to play, and the drum to beat; the latter only they regarded. They conversed very familiarly (though not well understood) with such officers and seamen as went to them, and paid a much greater regard to some than to others. It was supposed that they took such for women. One of the females shewed a remarkable fondness for one man in particular, until she found out his sex; after which she would not let him approach her. Whether she had before taken him for a female, or some other circumstance had produced the change, was uncertain. In the evening the natives took up their quarters very near the watering-place, which was a clear proof of their confidence.

On the 19th, the man and his daughter before mentioned, ventured on board the ship, while the rest of the family were fishing in the canoe. Before the man would come into the ship, he struck the side of it with a green branch, and muttered some words as a prayer; after which he threw away the branch, and came on board. They viewed every part of the cabin with apparent curiosity and surprise, but it was not possible to fix their attention to any one thing for a moment. All that was shewn them seemed beyond their comprehension, and the works of nature and art were alike disregarded. The man appeared better pleased with hatchets and spike-nails than any thing the ship produced; and when he had once got possession of these, he would not quit them. Capt. Cook and three other gentlemen left the ship as soon they could disengage themselves from the visitors, whom they left in the gun-room, and went out in two boats to examine the head of the bay; at which

place they took up their night's lodging. The next day they continued their observations, and fired at some ducks. Upon the report of the gun, the natives, who had not discovered themselves before, set up a most hideous roar in different places. The gentlemen hallooed in their turn, and retreated to the boats. The natives did not follow them, neither indeed could they, because a branch of the river separated them, but still made a great noise. As they continued shooting and making their observations, they frequently heard the natives in the woods. A man and woman appeared at last on the banks of the river, waving something in their hands as a token of friendship. The gentlemen could not get near them, and the natives retreated into the woods. Two others appeared; but as the gentlemen advanced they retreated, and the woods afforded them thick cover. The captain and his party passed the next night in the same place, and after breakfast embarked to return on board; but seeing two men on the opposite shore, who hallooed to them, they were induced to row over to them. Capt. Cook with two other gentlemen landed unarmed, but the natives retreated, nor would they stand still till Capt. Cook went up alone. It was with some difficulty that he prevailed on one of them to lay down his spear; at last he did so, and met the captain with a grass plant in his hand, giving him one end to hold while he himself held the other. In this position they stood while the natives made a speech, which the captain did not understand, but returned some sort of answer; they then saluted each other, and the native took his coat from his back, and put it on the captain. The captain presented each of them with a hatchet and a knife, having nothing else with him. They invited the gentlemen to their habitation, and wanted them to eat, but the tide prevented their accepting of this invitation. More people appeared in the skirts of the woods, but did not approach any nearer. The two natives accompanied the gentlemen to their boats, but seemed very much agitated at the appearance of the

muskets, which they looked upon as instruments of death, on account of the slaughter they had observed among the fowls. It was necessary to watch them, for they laid their hands on every thing except the muskets. They assisted the seamen in launching the boat. It did not appear that they had any boats or canoes with them, but used two or three logs of wood tied together, which answered the same purposes; for the navigation of the river, on the banks of which they lived, was not very difficult, and swarmed with fish and fowl. Several parties were made in order to catch seals, which were very useful for food, for oil, and their skins were cured for rigging. Their flesh was nearly as good as beef-stakes, and their intrails were equal to those of a hog.

On Saturday, the 24th, Capt. Cook took five geese and a gander, which were all that remained of those brought from the Cape of Good Hope, and carried them to a cove, which on this account he called goose-cove; this was a convenient place, for they were not likely to be disturbed by the inhabitants, there was also plenty of food, and they were likely here to breed and spread their species. They had now several days of fair weather, which afforded a fine opportunity of making the necessary preparations for departure.

There are two entrances to Dusky Bay, and there are numerous anchoring places, which are at once safe and commodious; at Cascade Cave, so called on account of the magnificent cascade near it, there is room for a fleet of ships, and a very good passage in and out. The country is very mountainous, and the prospect is rude and craggy. The land bordering on the sea-coast, and all its lands, are covered with wood. There are trees of various kinds which are common in other countries, the timber of which is remarkably fine. Here are likewise a great number of aromatic plants, and the woods are so over-run with supple-jacks, that it is difficult to make way through them. The bay abounds with fish, which were caught in great numbers,

Seals are the only amphibious animals to be found here, but there are great numbers of them. Various kinds of ducks are to be found, as well as all other wild fowl.

The inhabitants of Dusky Bay are the same with those in other parts of New Zealand ; they speak the same language and adopt the same customs. It is not easy to divine what could induce these few families to separate themselves from the society of the rest of their fellow-creatures. It seems probable that there are people scattered all over this southern Island. They appear to lead a wandering life, and do not seem to be in perfect amity with each other.

On Tuesday the 11th of May, the ship again made sail, but met with more obstructions. They observed on a sudden a whitish spot on the sea, out of which a column arose which looked like a glass tube. It appeared that another of the same sort came down from the clouds to meet this, and they made a coalition and formed what is called a water-spout ; several others were formed in the same manner soon after. As they were not very well acquainted with the nature and causes of these spouts, they were very curious in examining them. Their base was a broad spot, which looked bright and yellowish when the sun shone upon it ; this appeared when the sea was violently agitated, and vapours rose in a spiral form. The columns were like a cylinder, and moved forward on the surface of the sea, and frequently appeared crossing each other, and at last broke one after another, this was owing to the clouds not following them with equal rapidity. The sea appeared more and more covered with short broken waves as the clouds came nearer to them ; the wind veered about, and did not fix in any one point. Within 200 fathoms they saw a spot in the sea, in violent agitation ; the water ascended in a spiral form towards the clouds ; the clouds looked black and lowering, and some hail stones fell on board. A cloud gradually tapered into a long slender tube directly over the agitated spot, and seemed descending to meet the rising spiral, and soon

united with it. The last water-spout broke like others ; no explosion was heard, but a flash of lightning attended this disjunction. The oldest mariners on board had never been so near a water-spout before, they were therefore very much alarmed. Had they been drawn into the vortex, it was believed that the masts and yards must have gone to wreck. From the first appearance, to the last disjunction, was three quarters of an hour.

On the 18th of May, at five o'clock in the morning, they opened Queen Carlotta's Sound, and saw three flashes arising from a strong hold of the natives. Imagining them to be signals of the Europeans, and probably of the Adventure, they fired some guns, and were answered, and in a short time saw the Adventure at anchor. They were saluted by Capt. Furneaux with 13 guns, which was cheerfully returned ; the joy at this happy meeting, was indescribable.

Capt. Furneaux gave the following account of his proceeding during their separation. On Sunday the 4th of February, having lost sight of the Resolution, in a thick fog, they continued to cruize in the place where they parted company ; soon after their separation they heard the report of a gun, which they judged to be on the larboard beam ; upon which they hauled to the S. E. and fired a four pounder every half hour ; but receiving no return, they kept the course they had steered before the fog came on. In the evening it began to blow hard. The storm was attended with a prodigious fall of rain, every drop of the size of a common pea ; and the sea broke over the ship's bows to the height of the yard arms ; yet, at intervals the weather was more clear, but they could not see the Resolution. They then stood to the westward, to cruise in the latitude where they last saw her, according to agreement, in case of separation ; but the storm returned with renewed fury, and the weather being again exceeding hazy, they were compelled to bring to, which untoward circumstance prevented them from reaching the intended place ; however, they cruized

as near the same as they could for three days, when after having kept beating about the seas, in the most terrible weather, giving up all hopes of joining their lost companion, they bore away for winter-quarters, 1400 leagues from them; and having to traverse a sea entirely unknown, they took every precaution for their safety, and reduced the allowance of water to one quart a day for each seaman.

On Monday, the 1st of March, having made no discovery of land; though they had traversed from lat. 48 to 45 deg. S. and from long. 36 to 146 deg. it was determined to bear away for Van Diemen's Land, to take in water and repair their shattered rigging. On Thursday the 11th, they found a most commodious harbour, and anchored in seven fathoms water, about one mile from the shore on each side. During their stay here, they did not see any of the natives, but perceived the smoke of their fires, eight or ten miles to the northward.

In a hut they found the stone they strike fire with, and some tinder made from the bark of a tree. In others of their wigwams were one of their spears, sharp at one end, with some bags and nets made of grass, which contained their provisions and other necessaries. They brought most of those things away, leaving in their room medals, gun flints, a few nails, and an old iron-hooped empty barrel. The huts of these people seemed to be built only for a day, the workmanship being so slender, that they would hardly keep out a shower of rain. The inhabitants lie on the ground, on dried grass, round their fires. They wander about in small parties, from one place to another in search of food, the chief end of their existence; and they are altogether an ignorant wretched race of mortals, though natives of a country capable of producing every necessary of life, and a climate the finest in the world. Having got on board wood and water, they set sail intending to coast it, with a view of discovering whether Van Diemen's Land is part of New Holland.

On the 24th, having left Van Diemen's Land, a very severe squall they had and shipped many waves, one of which stove the large cutter, and with much difficulty the small one was prevented from being washed over board. After this heavy gale, which continued twelve hours, they had more temperate weather, accompanied with calms. At length they made the coast of New Zealand, having run 24 deg. of longitude in a passage of fifteen days. When they first came in sight of land, it appeared high, forming a confused group of hills and mountains.

On the 9th of April, three canoes came along side the *Adventure*, having fifteen Indians of both sexes, all armed with battle axes, and with other offensive weapons made of hard wood, in the form of the officers' spontoons, about four feet in length; but they had neither bows nor arrows. A kind of mat was wrapped round their shoulders, and tied about their waists with a girdle made of grass. Both men and women exhibited a savage appearance, and were very unwilling to venture on board. The captain made them presents, and by signs invited them to trade. They accepted the presents, and some of them assumed courage enough to trust themselves on deck. In this visit they mentioned the name of Tupia, and upon being informed he died at Batavia, some of them with much concern inquired if he was killed or died a natural death.

On Tuesday, the 11th of May, several of the crew who were at work on shore, very sensibly felt the shock of an earthquake, from which circumstance it is probable, that there are volcanoes in New Zealand, as these phenomena generally go together. On the 12th, the weather continuing fair, and the Indians friendly, the captain and officers were preparing to go ashore, when not less than ten canoes came paddling down the Sound. They counted one hundred and twenty natives, all armed. When along side of the ship, they expressed a desire to be admitted on board; but Capt. Furneaux, not liking their looks and gestures,

gave orders that a few only should be admitted at a time. These behaved so disorderly that the sailors were obliged to turn them out, and it now appeared plainly that their intentions were to make themselves masters of the ship: however finding the crew to be upon their guard, they became more civil, but not before a great gun was discharged over their heads, which intimidated them. Being thus reduced to order, the people on board produced several articles, such as beads, small clasp knives, scissars, cloth, paper, and other trifles, which they bartered for battle axes, spears, weapons of various sorts, fish-hooks, and other curiosities, the manufacture of the country. Being visibly disappointed in the execution of their grand design, they took to their canoes; but previous to their departure, the captain and officers made presents to those among them who appeared to be their chiefs, which they accepted with great apparent satisfaction.

On the 17th, they had the pleasure of seeing the *Resolution* off the mouth of the Sound. Such is the detail of Capt. Furneaux after parting from the *Resolution*.

The effects of the boisterous weather which they had experienced in the course of the last few months, were felt by the crew of the *Resolution*; being sometimes surrounded with islands of ice, out of which they could only extricate themselves by the utmost exertion of their skill in seamanship, sometimes involved in sheets of sleet and snow, and in mists so dark, that a man on the fore-castle could not be seen from the quarter deck; sometimes the sea rolling mountains high, while the running tackle, made brittle by the severity of the frost, was frequently snapping, and sometimes rendered immoveable. Amidst the hardships of such a traverse, there is nothing more astonishing, than that the crew should continue in perfect health, scarce a man being so ill as to be incapable of duty. Nothing can redound more to the honour of Capt. Cook, than his paying particular attention to the preservation of health among his com-

pany. By observing the strictest discipline from the highest to the lowest, his commands were duly observed, and punctually executed. When the service was hard, he tempered the severity thereof by frequently relieving those employed in the performance, and having all hands at command, he was never under the necessity of continuing the labour of any set of men beyond what their strength and their spirits could bear. Another necessary precaution was, that in fine or settled weather, the captain never suffered any of his men to be idle, but constantly employed the armourers, carpenters, the professed navigators, foremastmen, &c. in doing something each in his own way, which, though not immediately wanted, he knew there might be a call for before the voyage was completed. Having by this means left no spare time for gaming, quarrelling, or rioting, he kept them in action, and punished drunkenness with the utmost severity; thus by persevering in a steady line of conduct, he was enabled to keep the sea till reduced to a very scanty portion of water; and when he despaired of finding any new land, and had fully satisfied himself of the non-existence of any continent in the quarter he had traversed, he directed his course to Charlotte's Sound, the place appointed for both ships to rendezvous in case of separation, and appeared off the same, (as been already related) on Tuesday, the 18th of May, 1773, and discovered her consort, the *Adventure*, by the signals she made, an event every one in both ships felt with inexpressible satisfaction.

The morning after their arrival, being Wednesday, the 19th, Capt. Cook went off in the boat, at day-break, to gather scurvy grass, celery, and other vegetables. At breakfast time he returned with a boat load, enough for the crews of both ships; and knowing their salutary efficacy in removing scorbutic complaints, he ordered that they should be boiled with wheat and portable broth, every morning for their breakfast, and with pease and broth for dinner, and thus dressed they are extremely beneficial.

Capt. Furneaux had planted a great quantity of garden seeds, which grew very well, and produced plenty of salad and European greens. This day Capt. Cook sent on shore, to the watering place, near the Adventure's tent, the only ewe and ram remaining of those they brought from the Cape of Good Hope. On the 21st they went over to Long Island, which consists of one long ridge, the top nearly level, and the sides steep. Here they sowed different kinds of garden seeds upon spots which were cleared for that purpose. On Saturday, the 22nd, they found the ewe and ram dead, supposed to have been occasioned by some poisonous plants. About noon they were visited by two small canoes in which were five men. They dined with them, and it was not a little they devoured. In the evening they were dismissed with presents.

On Monday the 24th, Capt. Cook, accompanied by Capt. Furneaux and Mr. Forster, set off in a boat to the west bay on a shooting party. They met a large canoe, in which were fourteen or fifteen people; and the first question asked was concerning the welfare of Tupia. Being told he was dead, they expressed some concern. The same inquiry, as has been observed, was made of Capt. Furneaux when he first arrived, and on getting on board in the evening, they were informed that some Indians, in a canoe, who were strangers, had also inquired for Tupia. This day the Resolution received another visit from a family who came with no other intent than partaking of their food and to get some iron work: one of them was a boy about twelve years of age, very lively and intelligent. He eat voraciously, and was very fond of the crust of a pie made of wild fowl. He did not much relish Madeira wine, which the captain gave him, but was very fond of some sweet Cape wine, which elevated his spirits and his tongue was perpetually going. He very much wanted the captain's boat cloak, and seemed much hurt at a refusal. An empty bottle and a table-cloth being also denied him, he grew exceeding angry, and at

length was so sullen, that he would not speak a word. On Saturday the 29th instant, a great number of natives surrounded the ship with canoes, who brought goods to exchange, for which they got good returns, owing to the eagerness with which the sailors outbid each other, all of them being desirous of having some of the productions of this country. The natives were so mercenary as to encourage the prostitution of their women for a bribe. One of the Indians, Capt. Cook took to Mortuara, and shewed him some potatoes, in a thriving condition, which were planted by Mr. Fannan, master of the Adventure. The man was so well pleased with them, that of his own accord, he began to hoe up the earth round the plants. He was then conducted to other plantations of turnips, carrots, and parsnips, of which it was easy to give them an idea, by comparing them with such roots as they were well acquainted with.

On the 2nd of June, in an excursion made by some of the crew to the east, they met with the largest seal they had ever seen. They discovered it swimming on the surface of the water, and got near enough to fire at it, but without effect; and after pursuing it near an hour, they were obliged to give over the chase. By the size of this animal, it probably was a sea-lioness; Capt. Cook was of this opinion from having seen a sea-lion when he entered this sound, in his former voyage; and he thought these creatures had their abode in some of the rocks, that lie off Admiralty Bay, and in the strait.

On Friday the 4th of June, being his Majesty's birth-day, they hoisted their colours, and prepared to celebrate the day with the usual festivities. Early in the morning their friends brought them a large supply of fish. One of them promised to accompany the ship in their voyage, but afterwards altered his mind, as did also some others who had made a like promise to the people of the Adventure. It was very common for these people to bring their children with them, not with the unnatural intention of selling them, as was reported, but in

expectation that they would make them presents. A man brought his son, about ten years of age, and presented him to Capt. Cook, who thought at first he wanted to sell him : but they soon found the desire of the father was inclined only towards a white shirt, which was given to his son. The boy was so highly delighted with his new garment, that he went all over the ship, presenting himself before every one who came in his way. This freedom, or perhaps the colour of his dress, or the boy's antic gestures, offended old Will, the ram goat, who by a sudden butt knocked him backwards on the back. The shirt was dirtied, and the misfortune seemed irreparable to the boy, who feared to appear before his father in the cabin, until brought in by Mr. Forster ; when he told a very lamentable story against Gourey, the great dog (for so they called all the quadrupeds on board) nor would he be reconciled till his shirt was washed and dried. From this trifling story may be seen how liable persons are to mistake these people's meaning, and to ascribe to the customs they are utter strangers to. This day a large double canoe approached, well manned ; it came within musket shot, and contained about thirty men. Their friends on board told them they were enemies very earnestly. Among these new visitors, one stood at the head of the canoe, and another at the stern, while the rest kept their seats. One of them held a green bough, the New Zealand flag, in his hand, and spoke a few words. The other made a long harangue, in solemn and well articulated sounds. Being invited aboard, he at last ventured, and was followed soon by the rest, who eagerly traded with the crew. They directly saluted the natives on board, by an application of their noses, and paid the same compliment to the gentlemen on the quarter-deck. The chief's name was Teiratu. They all inquired for Tupia, and were much concerned at hearing of his death. These people were taller than any hitherto seen in New Zealand, and their dress and ornaments bespoke them superior to the inhabitants of Queen Charlotte's Sound. Their

tools were made with great attention, and were elegantly carved : a few of these were obtained, and also some musical instruments. They made but a short stay, and embarking, they all went over to Mortuara, where, by the help of glasses, four or five canoes were discovered, and several people on the shore. About noon Capt. Cook, accompanied by several other gentlemen, followed them, and were received with every mark of friendship. The captain distributed several presents, among which were a number of brass medals inscribed with the king's title on one side, and the ship which undertook this voyage on the other. Teiratu appeared to be the chief among these people, by the great degree of respect paid him. Capt. Cook conducted Teiratu to the garden he had planted, and obtained a promise from him that he would not suffer it to be destroyed.

Early in the morning of the 7th of June, the ships sailed from this place, but had frequent hindrances from contrary winds. On the 22d of July, in lat. 32 deg. long. 133 deg. the weather was so warm they were obliged to put on lighter clothes. Capt. Cook having heard that the crew of the *Adventure* were sickly, went on board on the 29th of July, when he found the cook dead, and twenty men ill with the scurvy and flux. Only three men were on the sick list on board the *Resolution*, which was certainly owing to the captain's absolutely enforcing the eating celery and scurvy grass with the food, though at first the crew did not like it.

All hopes of discovering a continent now vanished, as they had got to the northward of Capt. Carteret's tracks, and they only expected to see islands till their return to the south. Every circumstance considered induced a belief that there is no southern continent between New Zealand and America. It is very certain that this passage did not produce any signs of one.

On the 6th of August, Capt. Furneaux came on board the *Resolution* to dinner, and reported that his people were

much better, that the flux had quite left them, and that the scurvy was at a stand. The scorbutic people had been well supplied with cyder, which in a great measure contributed to this happy change.

On the 18th, they were within a league of Otaheite. On account of the breeze failing they hoisted out the boats to tow the ships. Many inhabitants came on board from different parts, who brought fruits, &c. to exchange; the most of them knew Capt. Cook again, and inquired for Mr. Banks and others, but none of them asked for Tupia. Their situation now became very dangerous from a coral reef. On sending to examine the western point of the reef, in order to get round that way into the bay, they found that there was not sufficient depth of water. Both ships were carried with great impetuosity towards the reef and all the horrors of ship-wreck now stared them in the face. The breakers were not two cables length distant and no bottom to anchor. The *Resolution* came to three fathoms water, and struck at every fall of the sea, but the *Adventure* brought up without striking. The dreadful surf which broke under their stern threatened shipwreck every moment. At length they found ground a little without the bason, and got the ship afloat by cutting away the bower anchor, and the tide ceased to act in the same direction. They towed off the *Resolution*, and all the boats were ordered to assist the *Adventure*, and they happily got once more safe at sea, after narrowly escaping shipwreck. A number of the natives were on board the ships while in this perilous situation, but were totally insensible of any danger, even while the ships were striking. They anchored in Oati-piha Bay, very near the shore, and were visited by a great number of the natives, who brought roots, fruit, &c. Presents were made to their chiefs, of shirts, axes, and other articles, in return for which they promised hogs, fowls, &c. In the afternoon, Captains Cook and Furneaux landed to sound the disposition of the natives, and to view the watering place. The natives

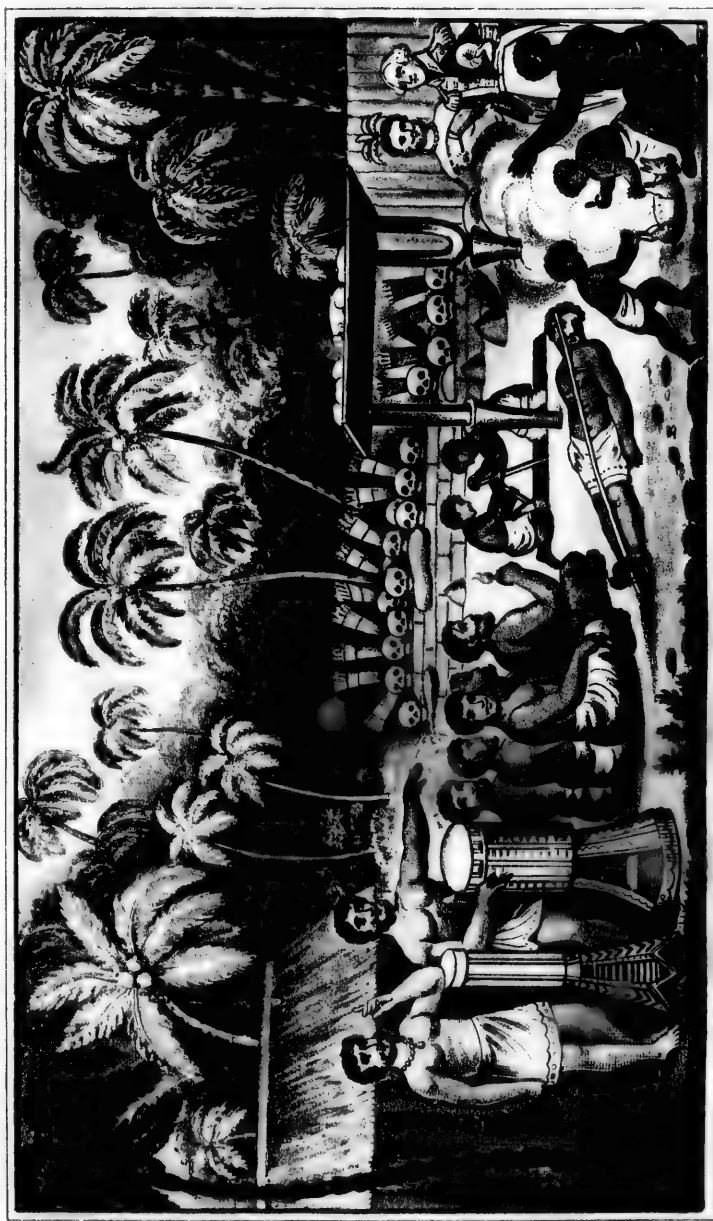
behaved with great civility, and they had a very convenient supply of water.

A man who pretended to be a chief came on board with several of his friends, to whom presents were made, but he was detected in handing several things over the quarter gallery; and as complaints of the same nature were alleged against those on the deck, the captain took the liberty to turn them all out of the ship. The captain was so exasperated at the conduct of the pretended chief, that he fired two muskets over his head, which terrified him so much, that he quitted his canoe, and took to the water. On sending a boat to take up the canoe, the people from the shore pelted the boat with stones. The captain went himself in another boat to protect her, he likewise ordered a cannon loaded with ball to be fired along the coast, which terrified them sufficiently, and he brought away the canoes without any opposition. They soon became friends again, and the canoes were returned. Two or three people began to inquire after Tupia, but they were soon satisfied when they heard the cause of his death. Several people asked for Mr. Banks and other people who were at Otaheite with Capt. Cook before. It appeared that there had been a battle lately fought between the two kingdoms, that Toutaha, the regent of the greater peninsula was slain, and that Otoo reigned in his stead. In this battle Tubourai Tamaide, and several of their old friends fell. A peace was now fully established.

On the 19th, the two commanders made an excursion along the coast, and were entertained by a chief (whom they met) with some excellent fish, &c. to whom in return they made several presents. On the 20th, one of the natives stole a gun from the people on shore. Some of the natives pursued him of their own accord, who knocked him down, and brought back the musket. Probably fear operated more with them in this business than any other motive. On the 21st, a chief paid them a visit and brought a present of fruit,

which proved to be some cocoa-nuts that had been thrown overboard. He did not betray the least emotion when they told them of it, and opened two or three of them himself, as if he knew nothing of the matter; he then pretended to be satisfied that it was really so, and went on shore, from whence he sent some bananoes and plantains. They were informed that Waheatow was come into the neighbourhood, and wished to see Capt. Cook, who accordingly went in company with Capt. Furneaux and some gentlemen: they were likewise attended by some natives. About a mile from the landing place they met the chief, advancing to meet them with a numerous train. When the prince perceived the company, he halted. He knew Capt. Cook very well, as they had seen each other several times in 1769. He went at that time by the name of Terace, and took his father's name after his death. He was sitting on a stool; and as soon as the usual salutation was over, he seated Capt. Cook on the stool with himself; the rest sat on the ground. He inquired after several who had been on the former voyage, and he seemed sorry when told that they must sail on the next day, assuring the captain if he would stay, that he should have hogs in plenty. Capt. Cook made him many presents, and staid with him the whole morning. This party returned on board of ship to dinner, and made this chief another visit in the afternoon, made him more presents, and he gave in return two hogs. At the different trading places some others were got, so that a meal's fresh pork was served for the crews of both ships.

Early in the morning of the 24th, they put the ships to sea, and were accompanied by several canoes, who brought cargoes of fruit for sale; neither did they return till they had disposed of them. The sick people on board the *Adventure* got much relief from these fruits. A lieutenant was left on shore, in order to bring some hogs, which they promised to send by him. He returned on the 25th, and brought eight pigs with him. They arrived at Matavia Bay in the



Engraved by J. E. B. Ward

The Ceremony of a Human Sacrifice in Otaheite.

Published by J. Rogers & Wright, Newington, Bath, 1824

evening of the 25th, and their decks were crowded with natives before they could get to anchor : almost all of them were acquainted with Capt. Cook. Otoo their king, and a great crowd, were got together on the shore. Capt. Cook was going on shore to pay him a visit, but was told that he was gone to Oparee in a fright ; which seemed very extraordinary to the captain, as all others were much pleased to see him. Maritata, a chief, was on board, and advised the captain to defer his visit till next morning. The captain set out on the 26th, for Oparee, after having given directions to fetch tents for the reception of the sick, &c. Capt. Furneaux, Maritata and his wife, and some others, went with the captain. They were conducted to Otoo as soon as they were landed, who sat on the ground under a shady tree, with a great number of people round him. Capt. Cook made him several presents, after the usual compliments had passed, being very well persuaded that it was much to his interest to establish a friendship with this man. His attendants also had presents made to them. They offered cloth in return, which was refused, being told that what was given was merely out of friendship. Otoo inquired for all the gentlemen who had been there before, as well as for Tupia, and promised to send some hogs on board, but was very backward in saying he would come on board himself, being, as he said, much afraid of the great guns. He was certainly a most timid prince, as all his actions demonstrated. He was a personable well made man, six feet high, and about thirty years of age. His father and all his subjects were uncovered before him, that is, their heads and shoulders were made bare.

On the 27th, king Otoo returned the visit, attended by a numerous train ; he sent before him two large fish, a hog, some fruits, and a large quantity of cloth. After much persuasion he came on board himself, accompanied by his sisters, a younger brother, and many attendants : after they had breakfasted, they carried them home. Upon land-

ing, an old lady, the mother of Toutaha, met Capt. Cook, seized him by both hands, and, weeping bitterly, told him that her son and his friend Toutaha were dead. Had not the king taken her from Capt. Cook, he must have joined her lamentations. It was with a good deal of difficulty that the captain prevailed on the king to let him see her again, when he made her some presents. Capt. Furneaux gave the king a male and female goat. A lieutenant was sent to Attahourou on the 28th, to purchase hogs. The king, with his sister and some attendants, paid them another visit soon after sun rise, and brought with them a hog, some fruit, and some more cloth. They likewise went on board the *Adventure*, and made Capt. Furneaux the same presents. Soon after they returned, and brought Capt. Furneaux with them. Capt. Cook made them a good return for the presents they brought, and dressed out the king's sister to the greatest advantage. The king was carried again to Oparee, when his Otaheitan majesty thought proper to depart, and was entertained as he went with bagpipes and the seamen dancing. Some of his people danced also in imitation of the seamen, and performed their parts tolerably well. Toutaha's mother again presented herself to Capt. Cook; but could not look upon him without shedding many tears.

On the 29th, the commanders took a trip to Oparee, early in the morning, attended by some officers and gentlemen, and made the king such presents as he had not before seen. One of them was a broadsword; at the sight of which he was very much intimidated, and desired it might be taken out of his sight. With a vast deal of argument he was prevailed upon to suffer it to be put on his side, where it remained a very short time. They received an invitation to the theatre, where they were entertained with a dramatic piece, consisting of a comedy and dance. The subject they could not find out; though they heard frequent mention of Capt Cook's name during the performance. The performers were one woman, which was no less a personage than the

king's sister, and five men, and their music consisted of only three drums. The whole entertainment was well conducted, and lasted about two hours. When this diversion was over, the king desired them to depart, and loaded them with fruit and fish.

In the evening of the 30th, they were alarmed with the cry of murder from the shore. Capt. Cook suspected it was occasioned by some of his own people, and armed a boat and sent on shore, which soon returned, with a seaman and three marines; others who belonged to the *Adventure* were also taken, and put under close confinement till the morning, when they were severely punished according to their demerits. The people would confess nothing, and it did not appear that any material injury had been done. The alarm however was so great, that the natives fled from their habitations in the night; and the inhabitants of the whole coast were terrified. The king himself fled from his abode; and when Capt. Cook saw him, he complained of the disturbance. Capt. Cook presented the king with three Cape sheep, as it was his last visit: with this present he was well pleased, though they were all wethers; and he presented the captain with three hogs. The king seemed much affected when Capt. Cook told him he should leave the island the next day, and embraced him several times.

On the 1st of September they determined to depart, Pottatoti (the chief of the district of Attahounou,) came with his wife to pay Capt. Cook a visit, and made him a present of two hogs and some fish. As the wind was westerly, they were obliged to dismiss their friends sooner than they wished; but they were well satisfied with the reception they met with. A young man, named Poreo, came on board some hours before they got under sail, and desired to go with them, to which they consented; and at the same time he asked for an axe and a spike nail for his father, who came with him on board, and which were accordingly given him, but as they parted with great indifference, it seemed to indi-

cate that no such consanguinity subsisted. Presently a canoe, conducted by two men, came along side, and demanded Poreo in the name of Otoo. The artifice was now manifest, and they were required first to return the hatchet and spike nail, but as these were ashore, he was carried away, though he wept when he saw the land astern.

On the 2nd, they steered for the Island of Huaheine, and the Resolution anchored in 24 fathoms water on the 3rd. The Adventure got ashore on the north side of the channel, but was got off again without receiving any damage. The natives received them with the utmost cordiality, several of them came on board. Some presents were distributed among them, which were returned by a plentiful supply of hogs, fruit, &c. Here they had a prospect of being plentifully supplied with fresh pork and fowls. Capt. Cook was informed that Oree was still alive, and waited to see him. The commanders, with Mr. Forster, went to the place appointed for the interview, accompanied by one of the natives. The boat was landed before the chief's house, and they were desired to remain in it till the necessary ceremony was gone through. There stood close to the shore five young plantain trees, their emblems of peace: these were, with some ceremony, brought on board separately. The first three were each accompanied by a young pig, whose ears were ornamented with cocoa-nut fibres; the fourth plantain tree was accompanied by a dog. All these had particular names and meanings. The chief had carefully preserved a piece of pewter, with an inscription on it, which Capt. Cook had presented to him in 1769, together with a piece of counterfeit English coin, which, with a few beads, were all in the same bag the captain made for them: these the chief sent on board. This part of the ceremony being over, the gentlemen were desired to decorate three young plantain trees with nails, looking-glasses, beads, medals, &c. With these in their hands they landed, and the plantains were laid one by one before him. They were

told that one was for God, another for the king, and the third for friendship. This being done, the king came to Capt. Cook, fell on his neck, and kissed him. A great effusion of tears fell down the venerable cheeks of this old man. Presents were made to all his attendants and friends. Capt. Cook regarded him as a father, and therefore presented him with the most valuable articles he had. He gave the captain a hog, and a quantity of cloth, with the promise that all his wants should be supplied. Soon after they returned on board, fourteen hogs were sent, with fowls and fruits in abundance. In the morning of the 5th, they were visited by this old man, who brought a hog and some fruit; indeed he sent the captain every day ready dressed fruit and roots in great plenty. This morning the lieutenant went on shore in search of more hogs, and returned in the evening with twenty-eight, and about seventy more were purchased on shore.

On the 6th of September, the trading party went on shore as usual; it only consisted of three people. Capt. Cook went on shore after breakfast, and learnt that one of the natives had been very insolent and troublesome. This man was shewn to the captain, equipped in his war habit, and he had a club in each hand. The captain took those from him, as he perceived him bent on mischief, broke them before his face, and obliged him to retire. The captain being informed that this man was a chief, became a little suspicious of him, and sent for a guard. About this time a gentleman had gone out botanizing alone; two men assaulted him and stripped him of every thing but his trowsers; luckily they did him no harm, though they struck him several times with his own hanger. They made off when they had done this, and another of the natives brought a piece of cloth to cover him. This gentleman presently appeared at the trading place, where a number of the natives were assembled, who all fled on seeing him. Capt. Cook persuaded some of them to return, assuring them that none should suffer who were innocent. When the king

heard this complaint, he and his companions wept bitterly ; and as soon as his grief was assuaged, he made a long harangue to the people, telling them the baseness of such actions, when the captain and his crew had always behaved so well to them. He then took a particular account of the things the gentleman had lost, and promised they should be returned, if it was in his power to find them. After this he desired Capt. Cook to follow him to the boat, but the people being apprehensive for his safety, used every argument to dissuade him from it. It is impossible to describe the grief they expressed in the intreaties they used ; every face was bedewed with tears, and every mouth was filled with the most dissuasive arguments. Oree was deaf to them all, and insisted on going with the captain ; when they both were in the boat, he desired it might be put off. The only person who did not oppose his going, was his sister, and she shewed a magnanimity of spirit equal to her brother. They proceeded in search of the robbers, as far as was convenient by water, and then landed. The chief led the way, travelled several miles, and inquired for the robbers of all he saw. The king wanted to proceed farther, and was with great difficulty dissuaded from it by Capt. Cook. On returning to the boat they were met by the king's sister, who had travelled over land to that place, accompanied by several other persons. They returned to the ship, and the king made a very hearty dinner ; though his sister, according to custom, eat nothing. The captain made them suitable presents for their confidence, and set them ashore amidst the acclamations of multitudes. Peace was now perfectly re-established, provisions poured in from all quarters, the gentleman's hanger and coat were returned, and thus ended these troublesome transactions.

On the 7th, Capt. Cook went to take leave of Oree while the ships were unmooring, and presented him with things both valuable and useful. He left with him a copper-plate with this inscription, "Anchored here, his Britannic Majesty's

ships *Resolution* and *Adventure*, September, 1773." After they had traded for such things as they wanted, they took their leave. On returning to the ships, they were crowded with canoes filled with hogs, fowls, &c. The good old king staid with them till they were near two miles out at sea, and then, taking an affectionate leave, parted. During their stay here, they procured upwards of three hundred hogs, besides fowls and fruit in great abundance.

At this island, Capt. Furneaux engaged a young man named Omai, a native of Ulitea, who had been dispossessed of his property by the people of Bolabola, to accompany him on his voyage. He was brought to England, and his history is connected with the future proceedings of the voyagers. This young man appeared to possess a good understanding, honest principles, and a natural good behaviour.

On the 8th of September, they anchored at Ulitea, and a trade soon commenced with the natives. Next morning they paid a formal visit to Oreo, the chief of this part of the isle, carrying with them the necessary presents. He was seated in his own house, which stood near the water side, where he and his friends received them with great cordiality. He expressed much satisfaction at seeing Capt. Cook again, and desired that they might exchange names, which he accordingly agreed to. This is the strongest mark of friendship they can shew to a stranger. After they had made the chief and his friends the necessary presents, they went on board with a hog, and some fruit, received from him in return.

After breakfast, on the 10th, Capt. Furneaux and Capt. Cook paid the chief a visit; and were entertained by him with such a comedy or dramatic heava, as is generally acted in these isles. The music consisted of three drums; the actors were seven men and one woman, the chief's daughter. The only entertaining part of the drama, was a theft committed by a man and his accomplice, in such a masterly manner, as sufficiently displayed the genius of the people,

in this vice. Capt. Cook says, "I was very attentive to the whole of this part, being in full expectation that it would have ended very differently. For I had before been informed that Teto (that is, the thief) was to be acted, and had understood that the theft was to be punished with death, or a good tiparrahying (or beating,) a punishment, we are told, they inflict on such as are guilty of this crime. Be this as it may, strangers are certainly excluded from the protection of this law; then they rob, with impunity, on every occasion that offers."

On the 16th, Capt. Cook was told that his Otaheitean young man, Poreo, had taken a resolution to leave him, and was actually gone; having met with a young woman, for whom he had contracted a friendship, he went away with her, and they saw him no more.

Having now got on board a large supply of refreshments, the captain determined to put to sea the next morning, and made the same known to the chief, who promised to see him again before he departed. As soon as it was light, Oreo, his son, and some of his friends, came on board. Many canoes also came off with fruit and hogs; the latter they even begged of them to take from them, calling out *Tiyo boa atoi*—I am your friend, take my hog, and give me an axe. But the decks were already so full of them, that they could hardly move; having on board both ships, between three and four hundred. It is not easy to say how many they might have got, could they have found room for all that were offered them.

The chief and his friends did not leave them till they were under sail: and before he went away, pressed them much to know if they would not return, and when? Questions which were daily put by many of these islanders. The Otaheitean youth leaving Capt. Cook proved of no consequence, as many young men of this island voluntarily offered to come away with them: he thought proper to take on board one, who was about seventeen or eighteen years old, named Oedidee,

a native of Bolabola, and a near relation of Opoony, chief of that island.

The island of Otaheite, which in the year 1767 and 1768, as it were, swarmed with hogs and fowls, was now so ill supplied with these animals, that hardly any thing could induce the owners to part with them.

As Capt. Cook had some reason to believe, that amongst the religious customs of these people, human sacrifices were sometimes considered as necessary, he went one day to a Marai in Matavia, in company with Capt. Furneaux; having with them, as they had upon all other occasions, one of their own men who spoke their language tolerably well, and several of the natives, one of whom appeared to be an intelligent, sensible man. In the Marai was a Tupapow, on which lay a dead corpse and some viands. He began with asking questions relating to the several objects before him; if the plantains, &c. were for the Eatua? If they sacrificed to the Eatua, hogs, dogs, fowls, &c. To all of which he answered in the affirmative: but they did not sufficiently understand the language to have a perfect comprehension of his meaning.

He has since learnt from Omai, that they offer human sacrifices to the Supreme Being. According to his account, what men shall be so sacrificed, depends on the caprice of the high priest, who, when they are assembled on any solemn occasion, retires alone into the house of their god, and stays there some time. When he comes out, he informs them that he has seen and conversed with their great god, and that he asked for a human sacrifice, and tells them that he has desired such a person, naming a man present, who most probably the priest has an antipathy against. He is immediately killed, and so falls a victim to the priest's resentment, who, no doubt, if necessary, has address enough to persuade the people that he was a bad man.

After leaving Ulitea on the 17th of September, 1773, they steered to the west, and on the 1st of October, they saw the

island of Middleburgh. As they approached the shore, two canoes came boldly along-side, and some of the natives entered the ship without hesitation. This mark of confidence gave Capt. Cook a good opinion of these islanders, and determined him to visit them if possible. They found good anchorage, and came to in twenty-five fathoms water. They had scarcely got to an anchor, before they were surrounded by a great number of canoes full of people, who began a traffic. Among them was a chief, named Tioony, to whom the captain made a present of a hatchet, spike nail, and several other articles, with which he was highly pleased.

Soon after, a party of them embarked in two boats, in company with Tioony, who conducted them to a little creek formed by the rocks, right abreast of the ships, where landing was extremely easy, and the boats secure against the surf. Here they found an immense crowd of people, who welcomed them on shore with loud acclamations. Not one of them had so much as a stick or any other weapon in his hand; an indubitable sign of their pacific intentions. They thronged so thick round the boats with cloth and matting, to exchange for nails, that it was some time before they could get room to land. Many, who could not get near the boats, threw into them, over the other's heads, whole bales of cloth, and then retired, without either asking or waiting to get any thing in return. The chief conducted them to his house, about three hundred yards from the sea, at the head of a fine lawn, and under the shade of some shaddock trees. The situation was most delightful. In front was the sea, and the ships at anchor; behind, and on each side, were plantations, in which were some of the richest productions of nature. The floor was laid with mats, on which they were placed, and the people seated themselves in a circle round them on the outside. Having the bagpipes with them, Capt. Cook ordered them to be played; and in return, the chief directed three young women to sing a song,

which they did with a very good grace ; and having made each of them a present, this immediately set all the women in the circle a singing. Their songs were musical and harmonious. Bananas and cocoa-nuts were set before them to eat, and a bowl of liquor prepared in their presence, of the juice of Eava, for them to drink. But Capt. Cook was the only one who tasted it ; the manner of brewing it having quenched the thirst of every one else. The bowl was, however, soon emptied of its contents by the natives.

They returned on board to dinner, with the chief in their company. He sat at table, but eat nothing ; which, as they had fresh pork roasted, was a little extraordinary. Near some of the houses, and in the lanes that divided the plantations, were running about some hogs and very large fowls, which were the only domestic animals they saw ; and these they did not seem willing to part with, which determined them to leave this place.

The evening brought every one on board, highly delighted with the country, and the very obliging behaviour of the inhabitants, who seemed to vie with each other in doing what they thought would give pleasure. After making the chief a present, consisting of various articles, and an assortment of garden seeds, Capt. Cook gave him to understand that they were going away, at which he seemed not at all moved.

As soon as the captain was on board, they made sail down to Amsterdam ; opening the west side of the isle, they were met by several canoes, each conducted by three or four men. They came boldly along-side, presented them with some Eava root, and then came on board without farther ceremony, inviting them by all the friendly signs they could make, to go to their island, pointing to the place where they should anchor.

Having secured the ships, Capt. Cook landed, accompanied by Capt. Furneaux, Mr. Forster, and several of the officers ; having along with them a chief, or person of some

note, whose name was Attago, who had attached himself to the captain from the first moment of his coming on board, which was before they anchored.

After walking a little way into the country, they returned to the landing-place, and there found Mr. Wales in a laughable, though distressed situation. The boats which brought them on shore not being able to get near the landing-place, for want of a sufficient depth of water, he pulled off his shoes and stockings to walk through, and as soon as he got on dry land, he put them down betwixt his legs to put on again, but they were instantly snatched away by a person behind him, who immediately mixed with the crowd. It was impossible for him to follow the man bare-footed over the sharp coral rocks which compose the shore, without having his feet cut to pieces. The boat was put back to the ship, his companions had each made his way through the crowd, and he left in this condition alone. The chief soon found out the thief, and recovered his shoes and stockings, and of his own accord conducted them to a plantation hard by, and shewed them a pool of fresh water, though they had not made the least enquiry after any.

Mr. Forster and his party spent the day in the country botanising, and several of the officers were out shooting. All of them were very civilly treated by the natives. A boat from each ship was employed trading on shore, and bringing off their cargoes as soon as they were laden, which was generally in a short time. By this method they got cheaper, and with less trouble, a good quantity of fruit, as well as other refreshments, from people who had no canoes to carry them off to the ships.

Though the natives began to show a propensity to pilfering, the different trading parties were so successful as to procure for both ships a tolerable good supply of refreshments. In consequence of which Capt. Cook, the next morning, gave every one leave to purchase what curiosities they pleased. After this, it was astonishing to see with

what eagerness every one caught at every thing he saw. It even went so far as to become the ridicule of the natives, who offered pieces of sticks and stones to exchange. One waggish boy took a piece of human excrement on the end of a stick, and held it out to every one he met with.

One of the natives having got into the master's cabin, took out some books and other things. He was discovered just as he was getting out into his canoe, and pursued by one of their boats, which obliged him to quit the canoe and take to the water. The people in the boat made several attempts to lay hold of him ; but he, as often, dived under the boat, and at last unshipping the rudder, he got clear off. Some other very daring thefts were committed at the landing-place. One fellow took a seaman's jacket out of the boat, and carried it off, in spite of all the people in her. The rest of the natives, who were very numerous, took very little notice of the whole transaction ; nor were they the least alarmed when the man was fired at.

Attago visited Captain Cook again the next morning, and brought with him a hog, and assisted him in purchasing several more. This day the captain was told by the officers who were on shore, that a far greater man than any they had yet seen was come to pay them a visit. Mr. Pickersgill informed them that he had seen him in the country, and found that he was a man of consequence, by the extraordinary respect paid to him by the people. Some, when they approached him, fell on their faces, and put their heads between their feet ; and no one durst pass him without permission. The captain found him seated near the landing-place, with so much sullen and stupid gravity, that notwithstanding what had been told him, he really took him for an idiot, whom the people, from some superstitious notions, were ready to worship. He saluted and spoke to him ; but he neither answered, nor did he alter a single feature in his countenance. This confirmed him in his opinion, and he was just going to leave him, when one of the natives under-

took to undeceive him ; which he did in such a manner as left no room to doubt that he was the king, or principal man on the island. Accordingly he made him a present, which consisted of a shirt, an axe, a piece of red cloth, a looking-glass, some nails, medals, and beads. He received these things, or rather suffered them to be put upon him, and laid by him, without losing a bit of his gravity, speaking one word, or turning his head either to the right or left ; sitting the whole time like a statue ; in which situation he left him to return on board, and he soon after retired. The captain had not been long on board, before word was brought that a quantity of provisions had come from this chief. A boat was sent to bring it from the shore ; and it consisted of about twenty baskets of roasted bananas, sour bread and yams, and a roasted pig of about twenty pounds weight. The bearers said it was a present from the areeke, that is the king of the island, to the areeke of the ship. After this they could no longer doubt the dignity of this sullen chief, whose name was Kohaghee-too-Fallangou.

The captain again went on shore and made this great man a suitable return, and immediately prepared for quitting the place. At ten o'clock they got under sail. The supplies they got at this isle were about 150 pigs, twice that number of fowls, as many bananas and cocoa-nuts as they could find room for, with a few yams ; and had their stay been longer, they, no doubt, might have got a great deal more.

These islands were first discovered by Capt. Tasman, in 1642-3 ; and, by him, called Amsterdam and Middleburgh. But the former is called by the natives Ton-ga-ta-bu, the latter Ea-oo-wee.

The produce and cultivation of Middleburgh and Amsterdam are the same ; with this difference, that a part only of the former is cultivated. The lanes or roads necessary for travelling, are laid out in so judicious a manner, as to open a free and easy communication from one part of the island

to the other. Here are no towns or villages ; most of the houses are built in the plantations, with no other order than what convenience requires. They have little areas before the most of them, which are generally planted round with trees, or shrubs of ornaments, whose fragrancy perfumes the very air in which they breathe. Their household furniture consists of a few wooden platters, cocoa-nut shells, and some wooden pillows, shaped like four footed stools or forms. Their common clothing, with the addition of a mat, serves for bedding.

They saw no other domestic animals amongst them but hogs and fowls. The former are of the same sort as at the other isles in this sea ; but the latter are far superior, being as large as any we have in Europe, and their flesh equally good, if not better. The land birds are numerous.

The construction and make of their canoes, in point of neatness and workmanship, exceed every thing of the kind seen in this sea. They are built of several pieces sewed together with bandage, in so neat a manner, that on the outside it is difficult to see the joints. All the fastenings are inside, and pass through kants or ridges, which are wrought on the edges and ends of the several boards, which compose the vessel, for that purpose. At each end is a kind of deck, one third part of the whole length, and open in the middle. These single canoes have all out-riggers, and are sometimes navigated with sails, but more generally with paddles. The two vessels which compose the double canoe are each about sixty or seventy feet long, and four or five broad in the middle ; and each end terminates nearly in a point ; so that the body or hull differs a little in construction from the single canoe ; but is put together exactly in the same manner.

All the parts which compose the double canoe, are made as strong and light as the nature of the work will admit, and may be immersed in water to the very platform, without being in danger of filling. Nor is it possible, under any circumstances whatever, for them to sink, so long as they

hold together. Thus they are not only made vessels of burthen, but fit for distant navigation. They are rigged with one mast, and are sailed with a latteen-sail, or triangular one, extended by a long yard, which is a little bent or crooked. The sail is made of mats; the rope they make use of is laid exactly like those of Europe, and some of it is four or five inch. On the platform is built a little shed or hut, which screens the crew from the sun and weather, and serves for other purposes.

Their working tools are made of stone, bones, and shells. They were struck with admiration at the ingenuity and patience of the workman. Their knowledge of the utility of iron was no more than sufficient to teach them to prefer nails to beads, and such trifles: some, but a few, would exchange a pig for a large nail, or a hatchet. Old jackets, shirts, cloth and even rags, were in more esteem than the best edge-tool. The only piece of iron among them was a small broad awl, which had been made of a nail. Both men and women are of a common size with Europeans; their colour is a lightish copper.

They have fine eyes, and, in general, good teeth, even to advanced age. The custom of tattowing or puncturing the skin prevails. The men are tattowed from the middle of the thigh to above the hips. The women have it only on their arms and fingers; and there but very slightly. The dress of both sexes consists of a piece of cloth, or matting, wrapped round the waist, and hanging down below the knees. From the waist, upwards, they are generally naked; and it seemed to be a custom to anoint these parts every morning.

Their ornaments are amulets, necklaces, and bracelets of bones, shells, and beads of mother of pearl and tortoise-shell, which are worn by both sexes. They make various sorts of matting; some of a very fine texture, which is generally used for clothing; and the thick and stronger sort serves to sleep on, and to make sails for their canoes. Among other

useful utensils, they have various sorts of baskets ; some made of the same materials as their mats, and others of the twisted fibres of cocoa-nuts. These are not only durable but beautiful, being generally composed of different colours and studded with beads made of shells or bones.

The women frequently entertained them with songs, in a manner which was agreeable enough. They accompany the music by snapping the fingers, so as to keep time to it. Not only their voices, but their music was very harmonious, and they have a considerable compass in their notes. The common method of saluting one another is by touching or meeting noses, as is done in New Zealand ; and their sign of peace to strangers is the displaying a white flag or flags. From their unsuspicious manner of coming on board, it appears they are seldom disturbed by foreign or domestic troubles. They are, however, not unprovided with very formidable weapons ; such as clubs, and spears made of hard wood, also bows and arrows. They have a singular custom of putting every thing you give them to their heads, by way of thanks. Very often the women would take hold of Captain Cook's hand, kiss it, and lift it to their heads.

It was observed that the greater part of the people, both men and women, had lost one or both of their little fingers. It was neither peculiar to rank, age, nor sex ; nor is it done at any certain age, as they saw those of all ages on whom the amputation had been just made ; and except some young children, they found few who had both hands perfect. As it was more common among the aged than the young, some were of opinion, that it was occasioned by the death of their parents, or some other near relation. They also burn or make incisions in their cheeks, near the cheek bone. They all appeared healthy, strong, and vigorous ; a proof of the goodness of the climate in which they live.

Leaving these islands, the ships made sail to the southward ; it being Captain Cook's intention to proceed directly to Queen Charlotte's Sound in New Zealand, there to take

in wood and water, and then to go on farther discoveries to the south and east. He was desirous of having some intercourse with the natives of this country, about Poverty or Tolaga Bays, where he apprehended they were more civilized than at Queen Charlotte's Sound, in order to give them some hogs, fowls, seeds and roots, which he had provided for the purpose. They arrived on the 21st; and passing Cape Kidnappers, saw some canoes put off from the shore. Upon this they lay to, in order to give them time to come on board. Those in the first canoe, which came along-side, were fishers, and exchanged some fish for pieces of cloth and nails. In the next were two men, who, by their dress and behaviour, seemed to be chiefs. These were easily prevailed on to come on board, when they were presented with nails and other articles. They were so fond of nails, as to seize on all they could find, and with such eagerness, as plainly shewed they were considered the most valuable things. To the principal of these men Captain Cook gave the pigs, fowls, seeds, and roots. At first, he did not think it was meant to give them to him; for he took very little notice of them, till he was satisfied they were for himself; nor was he then in such raptures as when he gave him a spike-nail half the length of his arm. However, at his going away, the captain took notice that he took care to have them all collected together, and kept a watchful eye over them, lest any should be taken away. He made a promise not to kill any; and if he keeps his word, and proper care is taken of them, there were enough to stock the whole island in due time. The seeds were wheat, French and kidney beans, peas, cabbage, turnips, onions, carrots, parsnips, yams, &c. It was evident these people had not forgot the Endeavour being on their coast; for the first words they spoke were, *Mataou no te pow pom*, (we are afraid of the great guns). As they could not be strangers to the affair of Cape Kidnapper, in the former voyage, experience had taught them to have some regard to these instruments of death.

They now stretched to the southward; presently after violent weather came on, and for two days they were beating up against a hard gale. When they arrived just in sight of port, they had the mortification to be driven off from the land by a furious storm.

They continued to combat tempestuous weather till the 30th, when they lost sight of the Adventure. In the afternoon the gale abated. Captain Cook now regretted the loss of her; for had she been with him, he would have given up all thoughts of going to Queen Charlotte's Sound to wood and water, and to have sought for a place to get these articles farther south, as the wind was now favourable for ranging along the coast. As they approached the land, they saw smoke in several places along the shore; a sure sign that the coast was inhabited. They continued to stand to the eastward all night, in hopes of meeting with the Adventure in the morning; but in this they were disappointed, and soon encountered another storm.

After a succession of calms and brisk gales, in tracing the coast, they discovered on the east side of Cape Teerawhitte, a new inlet they had never observed before, into which they entered and cast anchor. Soon after they had anchored, several of the natives came off in their canoes; two from one shore, and one from the other. It required but little address to get three or four of them on board. These people were extravagantly fond of nails, above every other thing. To one man the captain gave two cocks and two hens, which he received with so much indifference, as gave little hopes that he would take proper care of them. They had not been at anchor here above two hours, when the wind veered to the N. E. with which they weighed, and steered for the Sound, where they arrived just at dark, with most of their sails split.

The next morning, the 3d of November, the gale abated, and was succeeded by a few hours calm; after that a breeze sprung up at N. W. with which they weighed and ran up

into Ship Cove, where they did not find the Adventure, as was expected.

Here they saw the youngest of the two sows captain Furneaux had put on shore in Cannibal Cove, when they were last here; it was lame of one of its hind legs, otherwise in good case, and very tame. If they understood these people right, the boar and other sow were also taken away and separated, but not killed. The two goats had been killed. Thus, all their endeavours to stock this country with useful animals were like to be frustrated by the very people they meant to serve. The gardens had fared somewhat better. Every thing in them, except the potatoes, they had left entirely to nature, who had acted her part so well, that most articles were in a flourishing state; a proof that the winter must have been mild. The potatoes had most of them been dug up; some, however, still remained and were growing; and, probably, will never be out of the ground.

Next morning the captain sent over to the cove, where the natives resided, to haul the seine; and took with him a boar and a young sow, two cocks and two hens, they had brought from the isles. These he gave to the natives, being persuaded they would take care of them, by their having kept Captain Furneaux's sow near five months. When they were purchasing fish from these people, they shewed a great inclination to pick pockets, and to take away the fish with one hand, which they had just sold or bartered with the other. This evil one of the chiefs undertook to remove, and with fury in his eyes, made a shew of keeping the people at a proper distance. The captain says, "I applauded his conduct, but kept so good a look out, as to detect him in picking my pocket of an handkerchief, which I suffered him to put in his bosom before I seemed to know any thing of the matter, and then told him what I had lost. He seemed quite innocent and ignorant, till I took it from him; and then he put it off with a laugh, acting his part with so much address, that it was hardly possible for me to be angry with him; so we

remained good friends, and he accompanied me on board to dinner." About that time, they were visited by several strangers, in four or five canoes. These new-comers took up their quarters in a cove near the tents; but very early in the morning moved off with six small water casks, and with them all the people they found here on their arrival. This precipitate retreat of these last, they supposed, was owing to the theft the others had committed. They left behind them some of their dogs, and the boar that had been given them the day before, which the captain now took back again, as he had not another. The casks were the least loss felt by these people leaving them, for while they remained they were generally well supplied with fish at a small expence. In unpacking the bread, 4292 pounds were found totally unfit to eat, and about 3000 more could only be eaten by people in their situation.

Very early in the morning of the 22nd, they were visited by a number of the natives, in four or five canoes, very few of whom they had seen before. They brought with them various articles, which they bartered. At first, the exchanges were much in the sailors favour, till an old man, who was no stranger, came and assisted his countrymen with his advice; which, in a moment, turned the trade about a thousand per cent. against them.

After these people were gone, the captain took three sows and a boar, two cocks and two hens, which he landed in the bottom of the West Bay; carrying them a little way into the woods, where he left them with as much food as would serve them ten or twelve days. This was done with a view of keeping them in the woods, lest they should come down on the shore in search of food, and be discovered by the natives. Having now put the ship in a condition for sea, and to encounter the southern latitudes, the tents were struck, and every thing got on board.

The boatswain with a party of men, being in the woods cutting broom, some of them found a private hut of the natives, in which was deposited most of the treasure they had received from them, as well as some other articles of their own. Complaint was soon made by the natives, that some articles had been carried off, and they particularly charged one man with the theft. The captain having ordered him to be punished before them, they went away seemingly satisfied; although they did not recover any of the things they had lost, nor could by any means find out what had become of them. It was ever a maxim with the captain to punish the least crimes of any of his people committed against these uncivilized nations. Their robbing them with impunity is, by no means, a sufficient reason why the Europeans should treat these uninformed people in the same manner.

Calm light airs from the north, all day, on the 23rd, hindered them from putting to sea, as intended. In the afternoon, some of the officers went on shore, to amuse themselves among the natives, where they saw the head and bowels of a youth, who had lately been killed, lying on the beach; and the heart stuck on a forked stick, which was fixed to the head of one of the largest canoes. One of the gentlemen bought the head, and brought it on board, where a piece of the flesh was broiled and eaten by one of the natives, before all the officers and most of the men. Captain Cook was on shore at this time, but soon after returning on board, was informed of the circumstance, and found the quarter-deck crowded with the natives, and the mangled head, or rather part of it, lying on the taffrail. The skull had been broken on the left side, just above the temples, and the remains of the face had all the appearance of a youth of twenty. The sight of the head, and the relation of the above circumstances, struck him with horror, and filled his mind with indignation against these cannibals. Curiosity, however, got the better of his indignation, especially when he considered that it would avail but little; and being desirous

of becoming an eye-witness of a fact which many doubted, he ordered a piece of the flesh to be broiled and brought to the quarter-deck, where one of these cannibals eat it with surprising avidity. This had such an effect on some of the sailors as to make them sick. This youth was killed in a skirmish between two parties.

That the New Zealanders are cannibals, cannot be doubted. The account given of this in Capt. Cook's former voyage, being partly founded on circumstances, was, as he afterwards understood, discredited by many persons. Few consider what a savage man is in his natural state, and even after he is, in some degree, civilized !

On the 25th, they weighed, with a small breeze. The morning before they sailed, Capt. Cook wrote a memorandum, setting forth the time he arrived, the day he sailed, the rout he intended to take, and such other information as he thought necessary for Capt. Furneaux, in case he should put into the Sound, and buried it in a bottle under the root of a tree in the garden, in such a manner as must have been found by him, or any European who might put into the cove. Every one being unanimously of opinion that the Adventure could neither be stranded on the coast, nor be in any of the harbours, they gave up all thoughts of seeing her any more during the voyage ; as no rendezvous was fixed upon after leaving New Zealand. On quitting the coast, and consequently all hopes of being joined by their consort, not a man was dejected, or thought the dangers they had to go through, in the least increased by being alone.

On the 14th of December, they fell in with several large islands of ice, and, about noon, with a quantity of loose ice, through which they sailed. Gray albatrosses, blue peterels, pintadoes, and fulmers were seen. As they advanced with a fresh gale at west, they found the number of ice islands increase fast, also a considerable quantity of loose ice. They tacked, stretched to the north, and soon got clear of it, but not before they had received several hard knocks

from the larger pieces, which, with all their care, they could not avoid. After clearing one danger, they still had another to encounter; the weather remained foggy, and many large islands lay in their way. One they were very near falling aboard of; and if it had happened, this circumstance would never have been related. These difficulties determined them to keep further to the north.

On the 21st, they very suddenly got amongst a cluster of large ice islands, and a vast quantity of loose pieces; and as the fog was exceedingly thick, it was with the utmost difficulty they wore clear of them. On the 23d, the wind being pretty moderate, and the sea smooth, they brought to at the outer edge of the ice, hoisted out two boats, and sent to take some up. The snow froze to the rigging as it fell, making the ropes like wires, and the sails like boards or plates of metal.

On the 30th of January 1774, very early in the morning, they perceived the clouds, over the horizon to the south, to be of an unusual snow-white brightness, which they knew denoted their approach to field ice. Soon after, they were close to its edge. It extended east and west, far beyond the reach of their sight. In the situation they were in, just the southern half of the horizon was illuminated by the rays of light reflected from the ice, to a considerable height. Ninety-seven ice hills were distinctly seen within the field, besides those on the outside; many of them very large, and looking like a ridge of mountains, rising one above another, till they were lost in the clouds. The outer or northern edge of this immense field was composed of loose or broken ice close packed together; so that it was not possible for any thing to enter it. This was about a mile broad; within which was solid ice in one continued compact body. It was rather low and flat, except the hills, but seemed to increase in height to the south; in which direction it extended beyond their sight.

The captain says, "I will not say it was impossible any where to go farther to the south; but the attempting it

would have been a dangerous and rash enterprise, and what, I believe, no man in my situation would have thought of. I, who had ambition not only to go farther than any one had been before, but as far as it was possible for man to go, was not sorry at meeting with this interruption ; as it, in some measure, relieved us, at least, shortened the dangers and hardships inseparable from the navigation of the southern polar regions. Since, therefore, we could not proceed one inch farther to the south, no other reason need be assigned for my tacking and standing to the north." The captain now came to a resolution to proceed to the north, and to spend the ensuing winter within the tropic, if he met with no employment before he came there ; as he was now well satisfied no continent was to be found in this ocean, but what must lie so far to the south as to be totally inaccessible on account of ice ; and that if one should be found in the southern Atlantic Ocean, it would be necessary to have the whole summer before them to explore it.

They now steered north, inclining to the east, and in the evening they were overtaken by a furious storm, attended with snow and sleet. It came so suddenly upon them, that before they could take in their sails, two of them were blown to pieces, and the others much damaged.

On the 25th, Captain Cook was taken ill of a bilious cholic, which was so violent as to confine him to his bed ; so that the management of the ship was left to Mr. Cooper, the first officer, who conducted her much to his satisfaction. It was several days before the dangerous symptoms of his disorder were removed. When he began to recover, a favourite dog, belonging to Mr. Forster, fell a sacrifice to his tender stomach. They had no other fresh meat whatever on board ; and the captain could eat of this flesh, as well as broth made of it, when he could taste nothing else. Thus he received nourishment and strength from food which would have made most people in Europe sick ; so true it is that necessity is governed by no law.

At eight o'clock in the morning of the 11th of March, land was seen from the mast-head, bearing west, about twelve leagues distant. They now tacked and endeavoured to get into what appeared to be a bay, on the west side of the point; but before this could be accomplished, night came upon them, and they stood on and off, under the land, till next morning. This is called Easter Island, or Davis's Land. Here a canoe, conducted by two men, came off. They brought with them a bunch of plantains, which they sent into the ship by a rope, and then returned ashore. This gave the captain a good opinion of the islanders, and inspired them with hopes of getting some refreshments, of which they were much in want. They continued to range along the coast, till they opened the northern point of the isle. While the ship was plying in, a native came on board. The first thing he did was to measure the length of the ship, by fathoming her from the tafferal to the stem; and as he counted the fathoms, they observed that he called the numbers by the same names they do at Otaheite; nevertheless his language was nearly unintelligible to them. Next morning the captain went ashore, accompanied by some of the gentlemen, to see what the island was likely to afford. They landed at a sandy beach, where some hundreds of the natives were assembled, and who were so impatient to see them, that many of them swam off to meet the boats. Not one of them had so much as a stick or weapon of any sort in his hand. After distributing a few trinkets amongst them, they made signs for something to eat; on which they brought down a few potatoes, plantains, and sugar canes, and exchanged them for nails, looking-glasses, and pieces of cloth. They soon discovered that they were as expert thieves, and as tricking in their exchanges, as any people they had yet met with. It was with some difficulty they could keep their hats on their heads; but hardly possible to keep any thing in their pockets, not even what themselves had sold; for they would watch every opportunity to snatch it from them. so that they sometimes

bought the same thing two or three times over, and after all did not get it.

The captain was obliged to content himself with remaining at the landing-place among the natives, as he was not yet recovered. They had a pretty brisk trade with them for potatoes, which they observed they dug out of an adjoining plantation; but this traffic was soon put a stop to, by the owner (as they supposed) of the plantation coming down, and driving all the people out of it. By this they concluded, that he had been robbed of his property, and that they were not less scrupulous of stealing from one another, than from them, on whom they practised every little fraud they could think on, and generally with success; for they had no sooner detected them in one, than they found out another. A party who had been sent out in the morning to view the country, now returned: they had not proceeded far, before a middle aged man, punctured from head to foot, and his face painted with a sort of white pigment, appeared with a spear in his hand, and walked along-side of them, making signs to his countrymen to keep at a distance, and not to molest them. When he had pretty well effected this, he hoisted a piece of white cloth on his spear, placed himself in front, and led the way, with this ensign of peace.

On the east side, near the sea, they met with three platforms of stone work, or rather the ruins of them. On each of which had stood four large statues, but they were all fallen down from two of them, and also one from the third; all, except one, were broken by the fall, or in some measure defaced. Mr. Wales measured this one, and found it to be fifteen feet in length, and six feet broad over the shoulders. Each statue had on its head a large cylindrical stone of a red colour, wrought perfectly round. The one they measured, which was not the largest, was fifty-two inches high, and sixty-six in diameter. In some the upper corner of the cylinder was taken off in a sort of concave quarter round; but in others the cylinder was entire. Beyond this they came to

the most fertile part of the island, it being interspersed with plantations of potatoes, sugar-canes, and plantain-trees; but they could find no water, except what the natives twice or thrice brought them, which, though brackish and stinking, was rendered acceptable by the extremity of their thirst. They also passed some huts, the owners of which met them with roasted potatoes and sugar-canes; but at the very time some were relieving the thirsty and hungry, there were others who endeavoured to steal from them the very things which had been given them. At last, to prevent worse consequences, they were obliged to fire a load of small shot at one of them who had been so audacious as to snatch the bag which contained every thing they carried with them. The shot hit him on the back, on which he dropped the bag, ran a little way, and then fell; but he afterwards got up and walked, and what became of him they knew not, nor whether he was much wounded. This affair occasioned some delay, and drew the natives together; they presently saw the man who had hitherto led the way, and one or two more, come running towards them; but, instead of stopping when they came up, they continued to run round them, repeating in a kind manner a few words, until they set forwards again. Then their old guide hoisted his flag, leading the way as before, and none ever attempted to steal from them the whole day afterwards.

Towards the eastern end of the island they met with a well of water perfectly fresh; but it was dirty, owing to the filthiness or cleanliness (call it which you will) of the natives, who never go to drink without washing themselves all over as soon as they have done; and if ever so many of them are together, the first leaps right into the middle of the hole, drinks, and washes himself without the least ceremony; after which another takes his place and does the same.

They observed that this side of the island was full of those gigantic statues before mentioned; some placed in groups on platforms of masonry; others single, fixed only in the

earth, and that not deep ; and these latter are, in general, much larger than the others. Having measured one, which had fallen down, they found it very near 27 feet long, and upwards of eight feet over the shoulders ; and yet this appeared considerably short of the size of one they saw standing : its shade, a little past two o'clock, being sufficient to shelter all the party, consisting of near thirty persons, from the rays of the sun. They saw not an animal of any sort, and but few birds, and the captain determined to leave the island the next morning, since nothing could be obtained that could make it worth his while to stay.

The produce of this island is sweet potatoes, yams, tarra or eddy root, plantains, and sugar canes, all pretty good, the potatoes especially, which are the best of the kind they ever tasted. They have a few tame fowls, such as cocks and hens, small, but well tasted. The coast seemed not to abound with fish ; at least they could catch none with hook and line, and it was but very little they saw amongst the natives. The inhabitants did not seem to exceed 700 souls, and above two thirds of those they saw were males. They either have but few women among them, or else many were restrained from making their appearance. In general, the people of this isle are a slender race. They did not see a man that would measure six feet ; so far are they from being giants, as one of the authors of Roggewein's voyage asserts. They are brisk and active, have good features, and not disagreeable countenances, are friendly and hospitable to strangers, but as much addicted to pilfering as any of their neighbours.

The women's clothing is a piece or two of quilted cloth, about six feet by four, or a mat. One piece wrapped round their loins, and another over their shoulders, make a complete dress. But the men, for the most part, are in a manner naked, wearing nothing but a slip of cloth betwixt their legs, each end of which is fastened to a cord or belt they

wear round the waist. The Otaheitean cloth, or indeed any sort, was much valued by them.

On the 16th of March they stood out to sea, and having a steady settled trade-wind, and pleasant weather, the forge was ordered to be set up, to repair and make various necessary articles in the iron way. On the 6th of April they saw an isle, which, as it was a new discovery, they named Hood's Island, after the young gentleman who first saw it; the second was that of St. Pedro; the third La Dominica; and the fourth, St. Christina. They ranged the S. E. coast of La Dominica, without seeing the least signs of anchorage. Some canoes put off from these places and followed them down the coast. At length, having come before the port they were in search of, they cast anchor. This was no sooner done, than about thirty or forty of the natives came off in ten or twelve canoes; but it required some address to get them along-side. At last, a hatchet and some spike-nails, induced the people in one canoe to come under the quarter-gallery; after which all the others put along-side, and having exchanged some bread-fruit, and fish, for some nails, retired on shore.

Very early next morning, the natives visited them again in much greater numbers than before; bringing with them bread-fruit, plantains, and one pig, all of which they exchanged. But in this traffic they would frequently keep their goods and make no return, till at last the captain was obliged to fire a musket ball over one man, who had several times served them in this manner; after which they dealt more fairly, and soon after several of them came on board. As the captain was going in a boat, to look for a more convenient place to moor the ship in, he observed too many of the natives on board, and advised the officers to be on their guard. He had hardly got into the boat before he was told that they had stolen one of the iron stanchions, and were making off with it. He ordered them to fire over the canoe;

but the natives made too much noise for him to be heard ; and the unhappy thief was killed at the third shot.

At this unhappy accident all the natives retired with precipitation. The captain followed them into the bay, and prevailed on the people in one canoe to come along-side the boat, and receive some nails, and other things, which he gave them. One would have thought that the natives, by this time, would have been so sensible of the effect of fire-arms, as not to have provoked them to fire upon them any more ; but the event proved otherwise. For the boat had no sooner left the kedge anchor than two men in the canoe put off from the shore, took hold of the buoy rope, and attempted to drag it ashore, little considering what was fast to it. The captain ordered a musket to be fired at them. The ball fell short, and they took not the least notice of it ; but a second having passed over them, they let go the buoy, and made for the shore. This was the last shot they had occasion to fire at any of them while they lay at this place. It probably had more effect than killing the man, by shewing them that they were not safe at any distance.

On the 10th, early in the morning, some people from more distant parts came in canoes along-side, and sold them some pigs ; so that they now had sufficient to give the crew a fresh meal. After dinner the captain went on shore and collected eighteen pigs. Next morning he went down to the same place where he had been the preceding evening ; but instead of getting pigs, as he expected, found the scene quite changed. The nails, and other things, they were mad after the evening before, they now despised. The reason was, several of the young gentlemen having landed the preceding day, had given away in exchange various articles which the people had not seen before, and which took with them more than nails or more useful iron tools. Trade being thus stopped, the captain prepared to leave this place, and go where their wants might be effectually relieved ; for after having been nineteen weeks at sea, and living all the time

on salt diet; they could not but want some refreshments; yet they had not one sick man on board, owing to the many antiscorbutic articles they had, and to the attention of the surgeon. April the 11th, at three o'clock in the afternoon, they weighed. They had now but little wind, and that very variable, with showers of rain.

The Marquesas, which they had just left, were discovered by Mendana, a Spaniard, and from him obtained the general name they now bear. They are five in number, viz. La Magdalena, St. Pedro, La Dominica, Santa Christina, and Hood's Island, which is the northernmost; La Dominica is the largest. The inhabitants are, without exception, the finest race of people in this sea. For fine shape and regular features they perhaps surpass the other nations. Nevertheless the affinity of their language to that spoken in Otaheite and the Society Isles, shew that they are of the same nation. Oedidee could converse with them tolerably well; and it was easy to see, that their language was nearly the same. The men, for the most part, have nothing to cover their nakedness, except the Marra, as it is called at Otaheite, which is a slip of cloth passed round the waist and betwixt the legs. This simple dress is quite sufficient for the climate, and answers every purpose modesty requires. The dress of the women is a piece of cloth, wrapped round the loins like a petticoat, which reaches down below the middle of the leg, and a loose mantle over their shoulders.

In eating, these people are, by no means, so cleanly as the Otaheiteans. They are likewise dirty in their cookery. The captain says, he saw them make a batter of fruit and roots, diluted with water, in a vessel that was loaded with dirt, and out of which the hogs had been but that moment eating, without giving it the least washing, or even washing their hands, which were equally dirty; and when he expressed dislike, was laughed at.

With a fine easterly wind they steered till the 17th, when land was seen bearing W. half N. which, upon a nearer ap-

proach, they found to be a string of low islots, connected together by a reef of coral rocks. As they steered along the coast, the natives appeared in several places, armed with long spears and clubs. The captain sent two boats ashore, under the command of Lieut. Cooper, with a view of having some intercourse with them. The natives saw them land without the least opposition. Some little time after, however, observing forty or fifty natives, all armed, coming towards the boats, they stood close in shore, in order to be ready to support their people in case of an attack. But nothing of this kind happened; and soon after the boats returned aboard, when Mr. Cooper informed the captain that only a few of the natives met him on the beach, but there were many in the skirts of the woods, with spears in their hands. The presents he made them were received with great coolness, which plainly shewed they were unwelcome visitors. They brought aboard five dogs, which seemed to be in plenty there. They saw no fruit but coconuts, of which they got by exchange two dozen. This island, which is called by the inhabitants Tiookea, was discovered by Commodore Byron. It has something of an oval shade, and is about ten leagues in circuit.

On the 18th, at day break, they bore down to another isle which they had in sight to the westward, which they reached by eight o'clock, and ranged the S. E. side at one mile from shore. They made the high land of Otaheite on the 21st of April, and at eight o'clock the next morning anchored in Matavai Bay. This was no sooner known to the natives, than many of them made them a visit, and expressed not a little joy at seeing them again.

On the 24th, Otoo the king, and several other chiefs, with a train of attendants, paid them a visit, and brought them, as presents, ten or a dozen large hogs, besides fruit. The captain, knowing how much it was his interest to make this man his friend, met him at the tents, and conducted him and his friend on board, where they staid dinner, after which

they were dismissed with suitable presents, and highly pleased with the reception they met with. They found these people building a great number of large canoes, and houses of every kind; people living in spacious habitations, who had not a place to shelter themselves in eight months before; several large hogs about every house; and every other sign of a rising state. Judging from these circumstances that they should not mend themselves by removing to another island, the captain resolved to make some stay.

In the morning of the 26th, the captain went down to Oparree, accompanied by some of the officers and gentlemen, to pay Otoo a visit. As they drew near, they observed a number of large canoes in motion; but were surprised when they arrived, to see upwards of three hundred ranged in order, for some distance along the shore, all completely equipped and manned, besides a vast number of armed men upon the shore. So unexpected an armament collected together in their neighbourhood, in the space of one night, gave rise to various conjectures. The vessels of war consisted of one hundred and sixty large double canoes, very well equipped, manned and armed. The chiefs, and all those on the fighting stages, were dressed in their war habits; that is, in a vast quantity of cloth, turbans, breast-plates, and helmets. The vessels were decorated with flags and streamers, so that the whole made a grand and noble appearance, such as they had never before seen in this sea, and what no one would have expected. Their instruments of war were clubs, spears and stones. Besides the vessels of war, there were one hundred and seventy sail of smaller double canoes, all with a little house upon them, and rigged with a mast and sail, which the war canoes had not. These were designed for transports and victuallers; for in the war canoes was no sort of provisions whatever. In these three hundred and thirty vessels there were no less than seven thousand seven hundred and sixty men. Tupia informed them when they were first here, that the whole

island raised only between six and seven thousand men ; but they now saw two districts only raise that number. They had not been long gone from Oparree, before the whole fleet was in motion to the westward, whence it came. When they got to Matavai, they were told that this fleet was part of the armament intended to go against Eimeo, whose chief had thrown off the yoke of Otaheite, and assumed an independency.

In the morning of the 27th of April, the captain received a present from a chief named Towha, consisting of two large hogs and some fruit, sent by two of his servants, who had orders not to receive any thing in return ; nor would they when offered to them. Soon after, he went down to Oparree in his boat, where having found both this chief and the king, after a short stay, he brought them both on board to dinner, together with Tarevato, the king's younger brother, and Tee, his uncle. As they drew near the ship, Towha, the admiral, who had never seen one before, began to express much surprise. He was conducted all over the ship, every part of which he viewed with great attention. On this occasion Otoo was the principal shew-man ; for, by this time, he was well acquainted with the different parts of the ship. Soon after, the king and his attendants went away also. Captain Cook had been urged to assist them against Tiarabou, but to their solicitations he gave no encouragement.

On the 28th, one of the natives attempted to steal a water-cask from the watering place ; he was caught in the act, sent on board and put in irons, in which situation Otoo and the other chiefs saw him. Having made known his crime to them, Otoo begged he might be set at liberty. This the captain refused, telling him, that since he punished his people when they committed the least offence against the natives, it was but just this man should be punished also. Accordingly, he ordered the man to be carried on shore to the tents ; and having expostulated with Otoo on the conduct of his people in general ; telling him, that neither he,



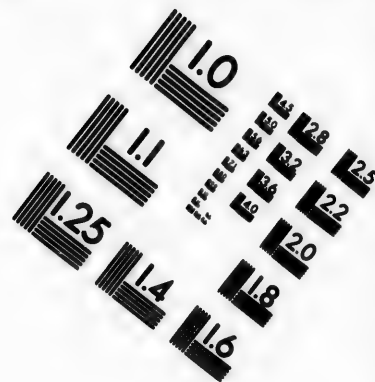
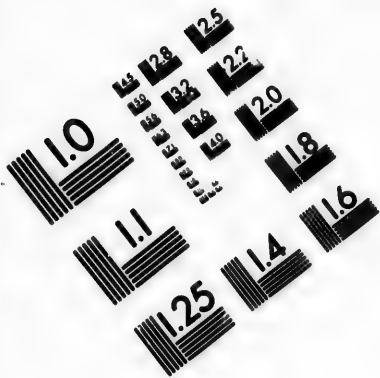
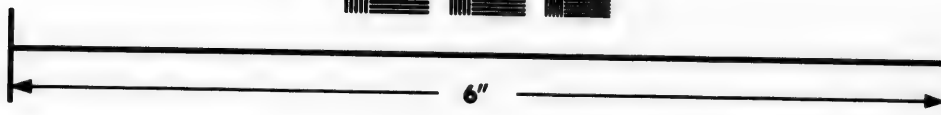
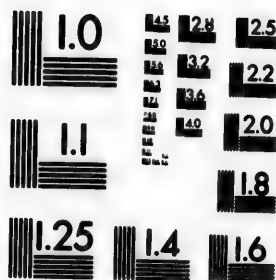


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic
Sciences
Corporation

23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503

nor any of his people, took any thing from them, without first paying for it; he added, that the punishing this offender would be the means of saving the lives of others of his people, by deterring them from committing crimes of this nature. With these and other arguments, which he pretty well understood, he seemed satisfied, and only desired the man might not be *Matterou* (or killed). The captain then ordered the crowd, which was very great, to be kept at a proper distance, and in the presence of them all, ordered the fellow two dozen of lashes with the cat-of-nine-tails, which he bore with great firmness, and was then set at liberty. After this the natives were going away; but *Towha* stepped forth, called them back, and harangued them for near half an hour. His speech consisted of short sentences, which were not well understood; but from what they could gather, he condemned their present conduct, and recommended a different one for the future. The gracefulness of his action, and the attention with which he was heard, bespoke him a great orator. *Otoo* said not one word. As soon as *Towha* had ended his speech, the captain ordered the marines to go through their exercise, and to load and fire in volleys with ball; and as they were very quick in their manœuvres, it is easier to conceive than to describe the amazement the natives were under the whole time. This being over, the chiefs took leave and retired with all their attendants, scarcely more pleased than frightened at what they had seen.

On going ashore in the morning of the 7th, they found *Otoo* at the tents, and took the opportunity to ask his leave to cut down some trees for fuel, which he readily granted. The captain told him he should cut down no trees that bore any fruit. He was pleased with this declaration, and told it aloud several times to the people about them.

The following night all their friendly connections received an interruption, through the negligence of one of the sentinels on shore. He having either slept or quitted his post,

gave one of the natives an opportunity to carry off his musket. The first news the captain heard of it was from Tee, whom Otoo had sent on board for that purpose. They were not well enough acquainted with their language to understand all Tee's story; but they understood enough to know that something had happened which had alarmed the king. In order, therefore, to be fully informed, the captain went ashore with Tee. As soon as they landed, he was informed of the whole by the serjeant who commanded the party. The natives were all alarmed, and most of them fled. Tee and the captain went to look for Otoo; and as they advanced, he endeavoured to allay the fears of the people, but at the same time insisted on the musket being restored. After travelling some distance into the country, Tee stopped all at once, and advised the captain to return, saying, that Otoo was gone to the mountains, and he would proceed and tell him that he (the captain) was still his friend. Tee also promised that he would use his endeavours to recover the musket.

The captain returned to the ship, and soon after he observed six large canoes coming round Point Venus. There being room for suspecting that some person belonging to these Canoes had committed the theft, he came to a resolution to intercept them; and having put off in a boat for that purpose, he gave orders for another to follow. One of the canoes, which was some distance ahead of the rest, came directly for the ship. He went along-side this, and was told that Otoo was then at the tents. Pleased with this news, he contradicted the orders he had given for intercepting the other canoes, thinking they might be coming on board also. But when he landed he was told that Utoo had not been there, nor knew they any thing of him. On looking behind him, he saw all the canoes making off in the greatest haste; even the one he had left along-side the ship had evaded going on board, and was making her escape. Vexed at being thus outwitted, he resolved to pursue them, and as he

passed the ship, gave orders to send another boat for the same purpose. Five out of six they took, and brought along-side; but the first, which acted the finesse so well, got clear off.

In one of the canoes they had taken, was a chief, a friend of Mr. Forster's, who had hitherto called himself an Earee, and would have been much offended if any one had called his title in question; also three women, his wife and daughter, and the mother of the late Toutaha. These, together with the canoes, the captain resolved to detain, and to send the chief to Otoo; thinking he would have weight enough with him to obtain the return of the musket, as his own property was at stake. In the dusk of the evening it was brought to the tents, together with some other things they had lost, which they knew nothing of, by three men who had pursued the thief, and taken them from him. The captain knew not if they took this trouble of their own accord, or by order of Otoo. He rewarded them, and made no farther enquiry about it. When the musket and other things were brought in, every one then present, or who came after, pretended to have some hand in recovering them, and claimed a reward accordingly. But there was no one acted this farce so well as Nuno, a man of some note, and well known to the captain when he was here in 1769. This man came, with all the savage fury imaginable in his countenance, and a large club in his hand, with which he beat about him, in order to shew how he alone had killed the thief; when, at the same time, they all knew that he had not been out of his house the whole time.

Things were now once more restored to their former state; and Otoo promised, on his part, that, the next day, they should be supplied as usual. They then returned with him to his proper residence at Oparree, and there took a view of some of his dockyards (for such they well deserved to be called) and large canoes; some lately built and others building; two of which were the largest they had ever

seen, under that name. They now returned to the ship. Otoo being desirous to see the great guns fire from the ship, the captain ordered twelve to be shotted and fired toward the sea. As he had never seen a cannon fired before, the sight gave him as much pain as pleasure. In the evening they entertained him with fire-works, which gave him great satisfaction. Thus ended all their differences.

As the most essential repairs of the ship were nearly finished, it was resolved to leave Otaheite in a few days; the captain accordingly ordered every thing to be got off from the shore, that the natives might see they were about to depart.

On the 12th, old Oberea, the woman who, when the Dolphin was here in 1767, was thought to be queen of the island, and whom they had not seen since 1769, paid them a visit, and brought a present of hogs and fruit. Soon after came Otoo with a great retinue, and a large quantity of provisions. The captain was pretty liberal in his returns, thinking it might be the last time he should see these good people, who had so liberally relieved their wants; and, in the evening, entertained them with fire-works.

On the 14th, they saw a number of war canoes coming round the point of Oparree. Being desirous of having a nearer view of them, accompanied by many officers and gentlemen, they hastened down to Oparree, which they reached before all the canoes were landed, and had an opportunity of seeing in what manner they approached the shore. When they got before the place where they intended to land, they formed themselves into divisions, and then each division, one after the other, paddled in for the shore with all their might, in the most exact and regular manner. All their motions were observed with such quickness as clearly shewed them to be expert in their business. Otoo, who was present, caused some of their troops to go through their exercise on shore. Two parties first began with clubs; but this was over almost as soon as begun, so that they

had no time to make observations. They then went to single combat, and exhibited the various methods of fighting with great alertness ; parrying off the blows and pushes, which each combatant aimed at the other, with great dexterity. Their arms were clubs and spears ; the latter they also use as darts. In fighting with the club, all blows intended to be given the legs, were evaded by leaping over it ; and those intended for the head, by couching a little, and leaping on one side ; thus the blow would fall to the ground.

Their treatment at this isle was such as had induced one of the gunner's mates to form a plan to remain at it ; but he was discovered before he could effect his purpose. He was an Irishman by birth, and had sailed in the Dutch service. The captain picked him up at Batavia, on his return from his former voyage, and he had been with him ever since. He never learnt that he had either friends or connections, to confine him to any particular part of the world. All nations were alike to him. Where then could such a man be more happy than at one of these isles ; where, in one of the finest climates in the world, he could enjoy not only the necessaries, but the luxuries of life, in ease and plenty.

The two goats which Captain Furneaux gave to Otoo when they were last here, seemed to promise fair for answering the end for which they were put on shore. The ewe soon after had two female kids, which were now so far grown as to be nearly ready to propagate ; and the old ewe was again with kid. The people seemed to be very fond of them, and they to like their situation as well ; for they were in excellent condition. From this circumstance it may be hoped that, in a few years, they will have some to spare to their neighbours ; and by that means, they may in time spread over all the isles of this ocean. The sheep which they left, died soon after, excepting one, which they understood was yet alive. They have also furnished them with a stock of cats ; no less than twenty having been given away at this isle.

In the afternoon, on the 15th of May, they anchored in O'Wharre Harbour, in the island of Huaheine, when Oree, the chief, brought a hog and other articles to the captain, who in return invited him and his friends to dinner. In the evening of the 17th, some of the gentlemen went to a dramatic entertainment given by Oree. The piece represented a girl as running away with them from Otaheite, which was in some degree true; as a young woman had taken a passage with them down to Ulietea, and happened now to be present at the representation of her own adventures; which had such an effect upon her, that it was with great difficulty the gentlemen could prevail upon her to see the play out, or to refrain from shedding tears while it was acting.

Some of the petty officers, who had leave to go into the country for their amusement, took two of the natives with them to be their guides, and to carry their bags, containing nails, hatchets, &c. the current cash they traded with here, which the fellows made off with in the following artful manner. The gentlemen had with them two muskets for shooting birds. After a shower of rain, their guides pointed out some for them to shoot. One of the muskets having missed fire several times, and the other having gone off, the instant the fellows saw themselves secure from both, they ran away, leaving the gentlemen gazing after them with so much surprise, that no one had presence of mind to pursue them.

Early in the morning of the 23d, they unmoored and put to sea. Oree, the chief, was the last man who went out of the ship. At parting, the captain told him they should see each other no more; at which he wept, and said, "Let your sons come, we will treat them well." As soon as they were clear of the harbour, they made sail, and stood over for the south end of Ulietea, where they dropt anchor the next day.

On the 25th, a party went ashore to pay the chief a visit, and make the customary present. At their first entering his house, they were met by four or five old women, weeping

and lamenting, as it were, most bitterly, and at the same time cutting their heads with instruments made of sharks teeth, till the blood ran plentifully down their faces and on their shoulders. What was still worse, they were obliged to submit to the embraces of these old hags, and by that means were all besmeared with blood. This ceremony being over, they went out, washed themselves, and immediately after appeared as cheerful as any of the company. The captain made his presents, and after some little stay, returned on board.

On the 27th, they were entertained with a play, called *Mididij Harramy*, which signifies the Child is coming.—It concluded with the representation of a woman in labour, acted by a set of great brawny fellows, one of whom at last brought forth a strapping boy, about six feet high, who ran about the stage, dragging after him a large wisp of straw, which hung by a string from his middle. They had an opportunity of seeing this acted another time, when it was observed, that the moment they had got hold of the fellow who represented the child, they flattened or pressed his nose. From this they judged, that they do so by their children when born, which may be the reason why all in general have flat noses. This part of the play, from its newness, and the ludicrous manner in which it was performed, gave them, the first time they saw it, some entertainment, and caused a loud laugh, which might be the reason why they acted it afterwards. But this, like all their other pieces, could entertain them no more than once.

On the 30th, one of the chiefs made the captain a present of two pigs; he invited the donor to dinner, and ordered one of the pigs to be killed and dressed, which was done as follows: they strangled the hog, which was done by three men; the hog being placed on his back, two of them laid a pretty strong stick across his throat, and pressed with all their weight on each end; the third man held his hind legs, kept him on his back, and plugged up his fundament with grass,

to prevent any air from passing or repassing that way. In this manner they held him for about ten minutes before he was quite dead. The hog weighed about fifty pounds. It was baked in their usual manner. It eat well, and had an excellent flavour.

The captain having fixed on the 4th of June, his majesty's birth day, for sailing, Oreo, the chief, and his whole family, came on board, to take their last farewell, accompanied by Oo-oo-rou, the Earee de hi, and Boha, the Earee of Otaha, and several more of their friends. None came empty; but Oo-oo-rou brought a pretty large present, this being his first and only visit. The captain distributed amongst them almost every thing he had left. The very hospitable manner in which he had ever been received by these people, had endeared them to him, and given them a just title to every thing in his power to grant. Oreo pressed him to return; when the captain declined making any promises on that head, he asked the name of his Morai (burying-place). As strange a question as this was, he hesitated not a moment to tell him Stepney; the parish in which he lived when in London. He was requested to repeat it several times over till they could pronounce it right; then, Stepney Morai no Tooté was echoed through a hundred mouths at once. What greater proof could they have of these people esteeming them as friends than their wishing to remember them even beyond the grave? They had been repeatedly told that they should see them no more; they then wanted to know where they were to mingle with their parent dust. As they could not promise, or even suppose, that more English ships would be sent to those isles, their faithful companion, Oedidee, chose to remain in his native country. But he left the ship with a regret fully demonstrative of the esteem he had for them. Just as Oedidee was going out of the ship, he asked the captain to Tatou some Parou for him, in order to shew the commanders of other ships, which might stop here. He complied with his request, gave him a certificate of the time

he had been with them, and recommended him to the notice of those who might touch at the island after them. Nature is exceedingly kind to these islands ; and the natives, copying her bounty, are equally liberal ; contributing plentifully and cheerfully to the wants of navigators. On leaving the harbour, they fired a salute in honour of the day. Nothing particular happened for more than a week.

On the 16th, just after sun-rise, land was seen from the top-mast head. They immediately steered for it, and found it to be an island, composed of five or six woody islots, connected together by sand-banks and breakers, inclosing a lake, into which they could see no entrance. The captain looked upon this as a new discovery, and named it Palmerston island, in honour of Lord Palmerston, one of the Lords of the Admiralty. On the 20th, they saw land ; and as they drew nearer, found it to be an island of considerable extent. Perceiving some people on the shore, and landing seeming to be easy, they hoisted out two boats, with which they put off the land, accompanied by some of the officers and gentlemen. Friendly signs were made to the natives, which were answered by menaces. All endeavours to bring them to a parley, were to no purpose ; for they advanced with the ferocity of wild boars, and threw their darts. Two or three muskets, discharged in the air, did not hinder one of them advancing still farther, and throwing another dart, which passed close over the captain's shoulder. His temerity would have cost him his life, had not the captain's musket missed fire. The conduct and aspect of these islanders, occasioned the captain to name it Savages Island. They seemed to be stout well made men, were naked, except round the waists, and some of them had their faces, breasts and thighs, painted black.

On the 26th of June, they arrived off the coast of Rotterdam. Before they had well got to an anchor, the natives came off from all parts in canoes, bringing with them yams and shaddocks, which they exchanged for small nails and

old rags. Early in the morning, the captain went ashore, with Mr. Gilbert, to look for fresh water, and was received with great courtesy by the natives. After they had distributed some presents amongst them, he asked for water, and was conducted to a brackish pond of it, about three-fourths of a mile from the landing-place, which he supposed to be the same that Tasman watered at. In the mean time, the people left in the boat had laden her with fruit and roots, which the natives had brought down, and exchanged for nails and beads. In the afternoon, the surgeon was robbed of his gun, by a fellow who ran off with it, and would have stripped him, as he imagined, had he not presented a tooth-pick case, which the natives probably thought was a little gun. As soon as the captain heard of this, he went to the place where the robbery was committed, but took no steps to recover it; in this he acknowledged he was wrong, as it encouraged farther aggressions.

Early in the morning of the 28th, Lieutenant Clerke, with the master and fourteen or fifteen men, went on shore in the launch for water. She was no sooner landed than the natives gathered about her, behaving in so rude a manner, that the officers were in some doubt if they should land the casks; however, they ventured, and, with difficulty, got them filled, and into the boat again. While thus employed, Mr. Clerke's gun was snatched from him, and carried off; as were also some of the cooper's tools, and other articles. All this was done, as it were, by stealth, for they laid hold of nothing by main force. The captain landed just as the launch was ready to put off, and the natives, who were pretty numerous on the beach, as soon as they saw him, fled; so that he suspected something had happened. However, he prevailed on many of them to stay. Being informed of all the preceding circumstances, he quickly came to a resolution to oblige them to make restitution; and for this purpose, ordered all the marines to be armed, and sent on shore. He then sent all the boats off but one, with which he staid,

having a good many of the natives about him, who behaved with their usual courtesy ; but he made them so sensible of his intention, that long before the marines came, Mr. Clerke's musket was brought ; but they used many excuses to divert him from insisting on the surgeon's. At length Mr. Edgumbe arriving, with the marines, this alarmed them so much, that some fled. Only one person was wounded, before the other musket was brought, and laid down at his feet. He then ordered some canoes he had seized to be restored, to shew them on what account they were detained.

On returning to go on board, he found many people collected together, from whom he understood that the man he had fired at was dead. This story the captain treated as improbable, and addressed a man, who seemed of some consequence, for the restitution of the cooper's adze they had lost in the morning. He immediately sent away two men, as he thought, for it ; but he soon found they had greatly mistaken each other ; for instead of the adze, they brought the wounded man, stretched out on a board, and laid him down by him, to all appearance dead. He was much moved at the sight ; but soon discovered that he was only wounded in the hand and thigh. He, therefore, sent for the surgeon to dress his wounds, which were not dangerous. In the mean time, he addressed several people for the adze ; particularly an elderly woman, who had always a great deal to say to him from his first landing ; but on this occasion she gave her tongue full scope. The captain understood but little of her eloquence ; but when she found he was determined, she and three or four more women went away ; and soon after the adze was brought, but he saw her no more.

After leaving Rotterdam, or Anamocka, on the 30th, they saw the summit of Amattafoa, but not clear enough to determine, with certainty, whether there was a volcano or not ; but every thing they could see concurred to make them believe there was. As the captain intended to get to the south, in order to explore the land that might lie there, they conti-

nued to ply between the isle of Lepers and Aurora; and on the 19th of July, the last-mentioned isle bore south, distant twenty miles. At day-break, on the 21st, they found themselves before the channel that divides Whitsuntide Island from the South Land, which is above two leagues over. Having sent two armed boats, to sound and look for anchorage, they soon followed.

Next morning, many of the natives came round them, some in canoes, and others swimming. The captain soon prevailed on one to come on board; which he no sooner did, than he was followed by more than he desired; so that not only the deck, but the rigging, was presently filled with them. He took four of them into the cabin, and gave them various articles, which they shewed to those in the canoes, and seemed much pleased with their reception. While he was thus making friends with those in the cabin, an accident happened that threw all into confusion, but in the end proved advantageous. A fellow in a canoe having been refused admittance into one of the boats that lay along-side, bent his bow to shoot a poisoned arrow at the boat-keeper. Some of his countrymen prevented his doing it that instant, and gave time to acquaint the captain with it. The fellow, however, seemed resolved, and directed his bow again to the boat-keeper; but, on the captain calling to him, pointed it at him. Having a musket in his hand loaded with small shot, he gave him the contents. This staggered him for a moment, but did not prevent him from holding his bow still in the attitude of shooting. Another discharge of the same nature made him drop it. At this time, some began to shoot arrows on the other side. A musket discharged in the air had no effect; but a four pound shot fired over their heads, sent them off in the utmost confusion.

Being unwilling to lose the benefit of the moon-light nights, which now happened, they weighed on the 23rd, and proceeded out of the harbour. When the natives saw them under sail, they came off in their canoes, making ex-

changes with more confidence than before, and giving extraordinary proofs of their honesty. As the ship, at first, had fresh way through the water, several of them dropped astern after they had received goods, and before they had time to deliver theirs in return. Instead of taking advantage of this, they used their utmost efforts to get up with them, and to deliver what they had already been paid for. Pieces of cloth and marble paper were in most esteem with them; but edge-tools, nails, and beads, they seemed to disregard. Had they made a longer stay, they might soon have been upon good terms with this ape-like nation. For, in general, they were the most ugly, ill-proportioned people they ever saw, and in every respect different from any they had met with in this sea. They are a dark-coloured and diminutive race, with long heads, flat faces, and monkey countenances. Their hair, mostly black or brown, is short and curly; but quite as soft and woolly as that of a negro. Their beards are very strong, crisp, and bushy, and generally black and short. But what most adds to their deformity, is a belt or cord which they wear round the waist, and tie so tight over the belly, that the shape of their bodies is not unlike that of an overgrown pismire. The men go quite naked, except a piece of cloth or leaf used as a wrapper.

They saw but few women, and they were not less ugly than the men; their heads, faces, and shoulders are painted red. They wear a kind of petticoat; and some of them had something over their shoulders like a bag, in which they carry their children. None of them came off to the ship, and they generally kept at a distance when the ship's people were on shore. Their ornaments were ear-rings made of tortoise shell, and bracelets. They had in their noses a piece of white stone, about an inch and an half long, formed like a bow. As signs of friendship they present a green branch, and sprinkle water with the hand over the head.

Their weapons are clubs, spears, and bows and arrows. The two former are made of hard or iron-wood. Their bows are about four feet long, made of a stick split down the middle, and are not circular, but bent more at one end than the other. The arrows, which are a sort of reeds, are sometimes armed with a long sharp point, made of hard wood, and sometimes with a very hard point made of bone; and these points are all covered with a substance which they took for poison. Indeed, the people themselves confirmed their suspicions, by making signs to them not to touch the point, and giving them to understand, that if they were pricked by them they would die.

The people of Mallicollo seemed to be a different nation from any they had yet met with, and speak a different language. The harbour, which is situated on the N. E. side of Mallicollo, the captain named Port Sandwich; and is so sheltered, that no winds can disturb a ship at anchor there. Another great advantage is, that the vessel can be brought so near the shore as to cover the people who may be at work upon it.

Soon after they got to sea, they stood over for Ambrym. On the 24th, they reached an island near Apee, about four leagues in circuit; it is remarkable by having three high peaked hills upon it, by which it has obtained that name. They now steered to the east; and having weathered Three-hills, stood for a group of small isles off the S. E. point of Apee. These were called Shepherd's Isles, in honour of Dr. Shepherd, plumian professor of astronomy at Cambridge.

It should have been remarked, that the night before they came out of Port Sandwich, two reddish fish, about the size of large bream, and not unlike them, were caught with hook and line. On these fish most of the officers and petty-officers dined the next day. The night following, every one who had eaten of them was seized with violent pains in the head and bones, attended with a scorching heat all over the skin, and numbness in the joints. There remained no doubt

that this was occasioned by the fish being of a poisonous nature, and having communicated its bad effects to all who partook of them; even to the hogs and dogs. One of the former died about sixteen hours after; it was not long before one of the latter shared the same fate; and it was a week or ten days before all the gentlemen recovered. These must have been the same sort of fish mentioned by Quiros, under the name of pargos, which poisoned the crews of his ships, so that it was some time before they recovered; and they would doubtless have been in the same situation, had more of them been eaten.

Continuing their course to the south, they drew near the southern lands, which they found to consist of one large island, whose southern and western extremities extended beyond their sight, and three or four smaller ones, lying off its north side. The two northernmost are much the largest, have a good height, and lie in the direction of E. by S. and W. by N. from each other, distant two leagues. They named the one Montagu, and the other Hinchinbrook, and the large island Sandwich, in honour of the Earl of Sandwich.

As they passed Hinchinbrook Isle, several people came to the sea-side, and by signs seemed to invite them ashore. Some were also seen on Sandwich island, which exhibited a most delightful prospect, being spotted with woods and lawns, agreeably diversified over the whole surface.

On the 3rd of August, they found themselves abreast a lofty promontory; and early next morning, the captain went, with two boats, to examine the coast, to look for a proper landing-place, wood and water. At this time the natives began to assemble on the shore, and by signs invited them to land. The captain went first to a small beach, where he found no good landing. Some of the natives who were there, offered to haul the boats over the breakers to the sandy beach, which was thought a friendly offer, but they had reason afterwards to alter their opinion. They put in to the

shore in two or three places, but not liking the situation, did not land. By this time the natives conceived what they wanted, as they directed the boat round a rocky point, where on a fine sandy beach, the captain stepped out of the boat without wetting a foot, in the face of a vast multitude, with only a green branch in his hand. They received him with great courtesy and politeness; and would retire back from the boat on his making the least motion with his hand. A man whom he took to be a chief, seeing this, made them form a semicircle round the boat's bow, and beat such as attempted to break through this order. This man he loaded with presents, giving likewise to others, and asked by signs for fresh water, in hopes of seeing where they got it. The chief immediately sent a man for some, who ran to a house, and presently returned with a little in a bamboo; so that he gained but little information by this. He next asked, by the same means, for something to eat; and they as readily brought him 2 yam and some cocoa-nuts. In short, he was charmed with their behaviour; and the only thing that could give the least suspicion was, that most of them were armed with clubs, spears, darts, bows and arrows. For this reason the captain kept his eye continually upon the chief, and watched his looks as well as his actions. He made many signs to haul the boat upon the shore, and at last slipped into the crowd, where he observed him speak to several people, and then return, repeating signs to haul the boat up, and hesitating a good deal before he would receive some spike nails that were then offered him. This made the captain suspect something was intended, and immediately he stepped into the boat, telling them by signs that he should soon return. But they were not for parting so soon, and now attempted by force, what they could not obtain by gentler means.

As they were putting off the boat, they laid hold of the gang-board, and unhooked it off the boat's stern. But as they did not take it away, it was thought that this had been

done by accident, and he ordered the boat in again, to take it up. Then the natives hooked it over the boat's stem, and attempted to haul her ashore; others at the same time snatched the oars out of the people's hands. On pointing a musket at them, they, in some measure desisted, but returned in an instant, seemingly determined to effect their purpose. At the head of this party was their chief. Signs and threats having no effect, their own safety became the only consideration; the captain was unwilling to fire on the multitude, and resolved to make the chief alone fall a victim to his own treachery; but his musket at this critical moment missed fire. Whatever idea they might have formed of their arms, the natives must now have looked upon them as childish weapons, and began to let them see how much better theirs were, by throwing stones and darts, and by shooting arrows. This made it absolutely necessary to give orders to fire. The first discharge threw them into confusion; but a second was hardly sufficient to drive them off the beach. Four lay, to all appearance, dead on the shore; but two of them afterwards crawled into the bushes. Happy it was for these people, that not half the muskets would go off, otherwise many more must have fallen. One sailor was wounded in the cheek with a dart, the point of which was as thick as a little finger, and yet it entered above two inches; which shews that it must have come with great force. An arrow struck Mr. Gilbert's naked breast, from some distance, for it hardly penetrated the skin. These arrows were pointed with hard wood.

As soon as they got on board, the captain ordered the anchor to be weighed. While this was doing, several people appeared on the low rocky point, displaying two oars they had lost in the scuffle. This was supposed a sign of submission, and of their wanting to give them the oars. He, nevertheless, fired a four pound shot at them, to let them see the effect of their great guns. The ball fell short, but frightened them so much, that none were seen afterwards; and they

left the oars standing against the bushes. These islanders seemed to be a different race from those of Mallicollo, and spoke a different language. They are of the middle size, have a good shape, and tolerable features. Their colour is very dark, and they paint their faces, some with black and others with red pigment. They saw a few women, who were very ordinary; they wore a kind of petticoat made of palm leaves, or some plant like it. But the men, like those of Mallicollo, were in a manner naked; having only the belt about the waist, and the piece of cloth, or leaf, used as a wrapper.

In the night of the 5th of August, they saw a volcano, which they observed to throw up vast quantities of fire and smoke, with a rumbling noise heard at a great distance. They now made sail for the island whence it appeared, and presently after discovered a small inlet, which had the appearance of a good harbour. The wind left them as soon as they were within the entrance, and obliged them to drop an anchor in four fathoms water. After this, the boats were sent to sound. Many of the natives now got together in parties, on several parts of the shore, all armed. Some swam off to them; others came in canoes. At first they were shy and kept at the distance of a stone's throw; they grew insensibly bolder, and at last, came under their stern, and made some exchanges. The people in one of the first canoes, after coming as near as they durst, threw towards them some cocoa-nuts. The captain went into a boat and picked them up, giving them in return some cloth and other articles. This induced others to come under the stern, and along-side, where their behaviour was insolent and daring. They wanted to carry off every thing within their reach; and got hold of the fly of the ensign, and would have torn it from the staff. A few muskets fired in the air had no effect; but a four-pounder frightened them so much, that they quitted their canoes that instant, and took to the water. But as soon as they found themselves unhurt, they got again into their

canoes, gave some halloos, flourished their weapons, and returned to the buoys. This put them to the expence of a few musquetoon balls, which had the desired effect, without killing any of them.

Towards the evening, the captain landed at the head of the harbour, with a strong party of men, without any opposition being made by a great number of the natives, who were assembled in two parties, the one on the right, the other on the left, all armed. After distributing to the old people (for they could distinguish no chief,) and some others, presents of cloth, medals, &c. he ordered two casks to be filled with water out of a pond, about twenty paces behind the landing-place, giving the natives to understand that this was one of the articles they wanted. Besides water, they got from them a few cocoa-nuts, which seemed to be in plenty on the trees; but they could not be prevailed upon to part with any of their weapons. While they were bringing the ship near the shore, to wood and water, they observed the natives assembling from all parts, and forming themselves into two parties, as they did the preceding evening, one on each side the landing-place, to the amount of some thousands, armed as before. A canoe, now and then, came off, bringing a few cocoa-nuts or plantains. The captain made an old man, who seemed well disposed, understand, by signs, that they were to lay aside their weapons, and throwing those that were in the canoe overboard, made him a present of a large piece of cloth. There was no doubt that he understood him, and made this request known to his countrymen; for as soon as he landed, they observed him go first to the one party, and then to the other; nor was he ever after seen with any thing like a weapon in his hand. After this, three fellows came in a canoe under the stern, one of them brandishing a club, with which he struck the ship's side, and committed other acts of defiance, but at last offered to exchange it for a string of beads, and some other trifles. These were sent down to him by a line; but the moment

they were in his possession, he and his companions paddled off in all haste, without giving the club in return. This was what the captain expected, and, indeed, what he was not sorry for, as he wanted an opportunity to shew the multitude on shore the effect of their fire-arms, without materially hurting any of them. Having a fowling-piece loaded with small shot, he gave the fellow the contents ; and when they were above musket shot off, he ordered some of the musketoons to be fired, which alarmed them much. This transaction however had little or no impression on the people there ; on the contrary, they began to halloo, and to make sport of it.

After mooring the ship, and placing the artillery in such a manner as to command the whole harbour, he embarked with the marines, and a party of seamen, in three boats, and rowed in for the shore. It hath been already mentioned, that the two divisions of the natives were drawn up on each side of the landing-place. They had left a space between them of about thirty yards, in which were laid, to the most advantage, a few small bunches of plantains, a yam, and two or three roots. The old man before mentioned, and two more, invited them, by signs, to land ; but the former trap was still in their memory, which they were so near being caught in at the last island ; and this looked something like it. In short, every thing conspired to make them believe that they meant to attack them as soon as they should be on shore. To prevent this, the captain ordered a musket to be fired over the party on the right, which was by far the strongest body ; but the alarm it gave them was momentary. In an instant they recovered themselves, and began to display their weapons. One fellow shewed his posteriors in a manner which plainly conveyed his meaning. The ship now fired a few great guns, which presently dispersed them ; when the party landed, and marked out the limits, on the right and left, by a line. The natives came gradually to them, seemingly in a friendly manner, some even without their weapons, but by far the

greatest part brought them; and when they made signs to lay them down, they gave the English to understand that they must lay down theirs first. Thus all parties stood armed. Many seemed afraid to touch what belonged to the visitors, and they seemed to have no notion of exchanging one thing for another. The captain took the old man (whose name was found to be Paowang) to the woods, and made him understand, he wanted to cut down some trees to take on board the ship. Paowang very readily gave his consent to cut wood; nor was there any one who made the least objection. Having landed again, they loaded the launch with water, and after making three hauls with the seine, caught upwards of three hundred pounds of mullet and other fish. It was some time before any of the natives appeared, and not above twenty or thirty at last, amongst whom was their trusty friend Paowang, who made them a present of a small pig, which was the only one they got at this isle.

During the night, the volcano, which was about four miles to the west, vomited up vast quantities of fire and smoke, as it had also done the night before; and the flames were seen above the hill which lay between. At every eruption, it made a long rumbling noise, like that of thunder, or the blowing up of large mines. A heavy shower of rain, which fell at this time, seemed to increase it; and the wind blowing from the same quarter, the air was loaded with its ashes. It was a kind of fine sand, or stone, ground or burnt to powder, and was exceedingly troublesome to the eyes.

Early in the morning of the 7th, the natives began again to assemble near the watering-place, armed as usual, but not in such numbers as at first. On landing, they found many of the islanders much inclined to be friends, especially the old people; on the other hand, most of the younger were daring and insolent, and obliged them to keep to their arms. The captain staid till he saw no disturbance was likely to happen, and then returned to the ship, leaving the party

under the command of Lieutenants Clerke and Edgecombe. On the 9th, Mr. Forster learnt from the people the proper name of the island, which they call Tanna. They gave them to understand, in a manner which they thought admitted of no doubt, that they eat human flesh, and that circumcision was practised among them. They began the subject of eating human flesh of their own accord, by asking if the English did. One of the men employed in taking in ballast, scalded his fingers in removing a stone out of some water: this circumstance produced the discovery of several hot springs at the foot of the cliff, and rather below high water mark. During the nights of the 10th and 11th, the volcano was exceedingly troublesome, and made a terrible noise, throwing up prodigious columns of fire and smoke at each explosion, which happened every three or four minutes, and at one time great stones were seen high in the air. Mr. Forster and his party went up the hill on the west side of the harbour, where he found three places whence smoke of a sulphureous smell issued through cracks or fissures in the earth. The ground about these was exceedingly hot, and parched or burnt, and they seemed to keep pace with the volcano; for at every explosion of the latter, the quantity of smoke or steam in these was greatly increased, and forced out so as to rise in small columns, which they saw from the ship. In the afternoon, Mr. Forster having begun his botanical researches on the other side of the harbour, fell in with Paowang's house, where he saw most of the articles the captain had given him, hanging on the adjoining trees and bushes, as if they were not worthy of being under his roof.

In the morning of the 14th, a party of them set out for the country, to try if they could not get a nearer and better view of the volcano. The place affected by the heat was not above eight or ten yards square; and near it were some fig trees, which spread their branches over a part of it, and seemed to like their situation. It was thought that this extraordinary heat was caused by the steam of boiling water,

strongly impregnated with sulphur. They proceeded up the hill through a country so covered with trees, shrubs, and plants, that the bread-fruit and cocoa-nut trees, which seem to have been planted here by nature, were in a manner choaked up. Here and there they met with a house, some few people, and plantations. These latter they found in different states ; some of long standing, others lately cleared, and some only clearing. Happening to turn out of the common path, they came into a plantation where they found a man at work, who, either out of good nature, or to get them the sooner out of his territories, undertook to be their guide. They followed him accordingly ; but had not gone far before they came to the junction of two roads, in one of which stood another man with a sling and a stone, which he thought proper to lay down when a musket was pointed at him. The attitude in which they found him, the ferocity of his looks, and his behaviour after, convinced them that he meant to defend the path he stood in. He, in some measure, gained his point ; for the guide took the other road, and they followed, but not without suspecting he was leading them out of the common way. The other man went with them likewise, counting them several times over, and hallooing, as they judged, for assistance ; for they were presently joined by two or three more, among whom was a young woman with a club in her hand. By these people they were conducted to the brow of a hill, and shewn a road leading down to the harbour, which they wanted them to take. Not choosing to comply, they returned to that they had left, which they pursued alone, their guide refusing to go with them. After ascending another ridge, as thickly covered with wood as those they had come over, they saw yet other hills between them and the volcano, which seemed as far off as at their first setting out. This discouraged them from proceeding farther, especially as they could get no one to be their guide. They therefore came to a resolution to return ; and had but just put this in execution, when they met

between twenty and thirty people, whom the fellow before mentioned had collected together, with a design, no doubt, to oppose their advancing into the country.

In the evening, Capt. Cook took a walk with some of the gentlemen, into the country, on the other side of the harbour, where they had very different treatment from what they had met with in the morning. The people they now visited, among whom was their friend, Paowang, being better acquainted with them, shewed a readiness to oblige them in every thing in their power. They came to a village; it consisted of about twenty houses, the most of which need no other description than comparing them to the roof of a thatched house, in England, taken off the walls and placed on the ground.—Some were open at both ends; others partly closed with reeds; and all were covered with palm thatch. A few of them were thirty or forty feet long, and fourteen or sixteen broad.

On the 15th, having finished wooding and watering, a few hands only were on shore making brooms, the rest being employed on board, setting up the rigging, and putting the ship in a condition for sea. Mr. Forster, in his botanical excursions, shot a pigeon, in the claw of which was a wild nutmeg. He took some pains to find the tree, but his endeavours were without success.

On the 17th, the captain went on shore, to pay a visit to an old chief, who was said to be king of the island. Paowang took little or no notice of him; the captain made him a present, after which he immediately went away, as if he had got all he came for. His name was Geogy, and they gave him the title of Areeke. He was very old, but had a merry, open countenance. He wore round his waist, a broad red and white chequered belt; but this was hardly a mark of distinction.

Next day, the captain went again ashore, and found in the crowd old Geogy and a son of his, who soon made him understand that they wanted to dine with him; and accordingly

he brought them, and two more, on board. When he got them on board, he went with them all over the ship, which they viewed with uncommon surprise and attention. They happened to have for their entertainment, a kind of a pie or pudding made of plantains, and some sort of greens which they had got from one of the natives. On this, and on yams, they made a hearty dinner. In the afternoon, having made each of them a present of a hatchet, a spike nail, and some medals, they were conducted on shore.

On the 10th, the captain finding a good number of the natives collected about the landing-place as usual, he distributed among them all the articles he had with him, and then went on board for more. In less than an hour he returned, just as the people were getting some large logs into the boat. At the same time four or five of the natives stepped forward to see what they were about, and as they did not allow them to come within certain limits, unless to pass along the beach, the sentry ordered them back, which they readily complied with. At this time, Captain Cook having his eyes fixed on them, he observed the sentry present his piece, and was just going to reprove him for it, but he was astonished beyond measure when the sentry fired, for he saw not the least cause.

At this outrage most of the people fled. As they ran off, he observed one man to fall, and he was immediately lifted up by two others, who took him into the water, washed his wound, and then led him off. Presently after, some came and described to the captain the nature of his wound, and he sent for the surgeon. As soon as he arrived, the captain went with him to the man, whom they found expiring. The ball had struck his left hand arm, which was much shattered, and then entered his body by the short ribs, one of which was broken. The rascal who fired, pretended that a man had laid an arrow across his bow, and was going to shoot at him; but this was no more than they had always done, and with no other view than to shew they were armed

also, at least there was reason to think so, as they never went farther. This affair threw the natives into the utmost consternation ; and the few that were prevailed on to stay, ran to the plantations and brought cocoa-nuts and other fruits, which they laid down at their feet. So soon were these daring people humbled ! When the captain went on board to dinner, they all retired, and only a few appeared in the afternoon, among whom was Paowang. He promised to bring fruit the next morning, but their early departure put it out of his power.

On the 20th of August, they put to sea. These people had not the least knowledge of iron, and cloth could be of no use to people who go naked. In this island hogs did not seem to be scarce ; but they saw not many fowls. These are the only domestic animals they have. Land birds are not more numerous than at Otaheite, and the other islands ; but they met with some small birds with a very beautiful plumage, which they had never seen before. There is as great a variety of trees and plants here, as at any island they touched at, where their botanists had time to examine. The captain never saw any sort of fishing tackle amongst them, nor, any one out fishing, except on the shoals, or along the shores of the harbour, where they would watch to strike with a dart such fish as came within their reach ; and in this way they were expert. They seemed much to admire the European manner of catching fish with the seine. These people are of the middle size, rather slender than otherwise ; the most of them have good features and agreeable countenances. They never would put a hand to any work they were carrying on, which the people in the other islands used to delight in. They make the females do the most laborious work, as if they were pack horses. A woman has been seen in this island, carrying a large bundle on her back, or a child on her back and a bundle under her arm, and a fellow strutting before her with nothing but a club or spear, or some such thing. Both sexes are of a very dark colour,

but not black; nor have they the least characteristic of the negro about them. They use pigments of black, red, and brown, which they lay on, with a liberal hand, not only on the face, but on the neck, shoulders, and breast. The men wear nothing but a belt, and a wrapping leaf. The women have a kind of petticoat made of the filaments of the plantain tree, flags, or some such thing, which reaches below the knee. Both sexes wear ornaments, such as bracelets, ear-rings, necklaces, and amulets.

With darts they kill both birds and fish, and are excellent marksmen. They always throw with all their might, let the distance be what it will. Mr. Wales, speaking of their dexterity, says, "I must confess, I have been often led to think, the feats which Homer represents his heroes as performing with their spears, a little too much of the marvellous to be admitted into an heroic poem; I mean when confined within the straight stays of Aristotle: even so great an advocate for him as Mr. Pope, acknowledges them to be surprising: but, since I have seen what these people can do with their wooden spears, and they badly pointed, and not of a very hard nature, I have not the least exception to any one passage in that great poet on this account. But, if I see fewer exceptions, I can find infinitely more beauties in him; as he has, I think, scarce an action, circumstance, or description of any kind whatever, relating to a spear, which I have not seen and recognized among these people; as the whirling motion, and whistling noise, as they fly; their quivering motion, as they stick in the ground, when they fall; their meditating their aim, when they are going to throw; and their shaking them in their hand as they go along."

As soon as the boats were hoisted in, they made sail, and stretched to the eastward. Nothing material occurred till September 4th, when looking S. E. the coast seemed to terminate in a high promontory, which the captain named Cape Colnet, after one of his midshipmen, who first discovered this land. Some gaps or openings were seen on the

5th, to lie all along the coast. After running two leagues down the outside of the reef (for such it proved) they came to an opening that had the appearance of a good channel. They wanted to get on shore, to observe the eclipse of the sun, which was to happen. With this view they hoisted out two armed boats, and sent them to sound the channel; ten or twelve large sailing canoes being then near them. They had observed them coming off from the shore all the morning, from different parts. The boats having made a signal for a channel, they stood in. They had hardly got to an anchor, before they were surrounded by a great number of the natives, in sixteen or eighteen canoes, the most of whom were without any sort of weapons. At first they were shy of coming near the ship; but in a short time they prevailed on the people in one boat to get close enough to receive some presents. These they lowered down to them by a rope, to which, in return, they tied two fish that stunk intolerably. These mutual exchanges bringing on a kind of confidence, two ventured on board the ship; and presently after, she was filled with them, and they had the company of several at dinner in the cabin. Like all the nations they had lately seen, the men were almost naked. They were curious in examining every part of the ship, which they viewed with uncommon attention. They had not the least knowledge of goats, hogs, dogs, or cats, and had not even a name for one of them. They seemed fond of large spike nails and pieces of red cloth, or indeed any other colour; but red was their favourite.

After dinner, the captain went on shore with two armed boats, having with them one of the natives who had attached himself to him. They landed on a sandy beach before a vast number of people, who had got together with no other intent than to see them, for many of them had not a stick in their hands; consequently they were received with great courtesy, and with the surprize natural for people to express, at seeing men and things so new to them. The captain

made presents to all those his new friend pointed out, who were either old men, or such as seemed to be of some note; but he took not the least notice of a few women who stood behind the crowd, keeping back the captain's hand when he was going to give them some beads and medals. Here they found a chief whose name was Teabooma; and they had not been on shore above ten minutes, before he called for silence. Being instantly obeyed by every individual present, he made a short speech; and soon after another chief having called for silence, made a speech also. It was pleasing to see with what attention they were heard. Their speeches were composed of short sentences; to each of which two or three old men answered, by nodding their heads, and giving a kind of grunt, significant of approbation. It was impossible for them to know the purport of these speeches; but they had reason to think they were favourable to them, on whose account they doubtless were made. The natives conducted them, upon enquiring for water, about two miles round the coast, to a little straggling village, near some mangroves; there they landed and were shewn fresh water. The ground near this village was finely cultivated, being laid out in plantations of sugar-canes, plantains, yams, and other roots. They heard the crowing of cocks, but saw none. As they proceeded up the creek, Mr. Forster having shot a duck flying over their heads, which was the first use these people saw made of fire-arms, the native, whom Capt. Cook distinguished by the name of his friend, begged to have it; and when he landed, told his countrymen in what manner it was killed. The day being far spent, they took leave of the people, and got on board a little after sun-set.

Next morning they were visited by some hundreds of the natives; so that before ten o'clock, their decks, and all other parts of the ship, were quite full. The captain's friend, who was of the number, brought him a few roots, but all the others came empty in respect to eatables. Some few had with them their arms, such as clubs and

darts, which they exchanged for nails, pieces of cloth, &c. Next day Mr. Wales, accompanied by Lieut. Clark, went to make preparations for observing the eclipse of the sun, which was to happen in the afternoon.

In the afternoon of the 8th, the captain received a message, acquainting him that Teabooma the chief was come, with a present consisting of a few yams and sugar-canes. In return, he sent him, among other articles, a dog and a bitch, both young, but nearly full grown. Next morning early, Lieut. Pickersgill and Mr. Gilbert were sent with the launch and cutter to explore the coast to the west. The two Mr. Forsters and the captain were confined on board, though much better, a good sweat having had a happy effect. In the afternoon, a man was seen along-side the ship, said to be as white as an European. From the account obtained of this circumstance, his whiteness did not proceed from hereditary descent, but from chance or some disease.

In the evening of the 11th, the boats returned; when the captain was informed, the cutter was nigh being lost by suddenly filling with water, which obliged them to throw several things overboard, before they could free her and stop the leak she had sprung. From a fishing canoe, which they met coming in from the reefs, they got as much fish as they could eat; and they were received by Teabi, the chief of the isle of Balabea, with great courtesy. In order not to be too much crowded, they drew a line on the ground, and gave the natives to understand they were not to come within it. This restriction they observed; and one of them soon afterwards turned it to his own advantage; for happening to have a few cocoa nuts, which one of the sailors wanted to buy, he walked off, and was followed by the man who wanted them: on seeing this he sat down on the sand, made a circle round him, as he had seen them do, and signified that the other was not to come within it, which was accordingly observed.

In the afternoon of the 12th, the captain went on shore, and on a large tree, which stood close to the shore, near the watering place, had an inscription cut, setting forth the ship's name, date, &c. as a testimony of their having been the first discoverers of this country. This being done, they took leave of the natives, and returned on board; when he ordered all the boats to be hoisted in, in order to be ready to put to sea in the morning.

The people of this island are strong, robust, active, and well made; they are also courteous and friendly, and not in the least addicted to pilfering, which is more than can be said of any other nation in this sea. They are nearly of the same colour as the natives of Tanna, but have better features, more agreeable countenances, and are a much stouter race; a few being seen who measured six feet four inches. Their hair and beards are in general black. The former is very much frizzled; so that, at first sight, it appears like that of a negro. Swelled and ulcerated legs and feet are common among the men, as also a swelling in the scrotum. It is not known whether this is occasioned by disease, or by the mode of applying the wrapper, which they use as at Tanna and Mallicollo. This is their only covering, and is made generally of the bark of a tree, but sometimes of leaves. The small pieces of cloth, paper, &c. which they got, were generally applied to this use. Some had a kind of concave, cylindrical, stiff black cap, which appeared to be a great ornament among them, and were only worn by men of note, or warriors. Their houses, or at least most of them, are circular; something like a bee-hive, and full as close and warm. The entrance is by a small door, or long square hole, just big enough to admit a man bent double. In most of them they found two fire places, and commonly a fire burning, and as there was no vent for the smoke but the door, the whole house was both smoky and hot, insomuch that those who had not been used to such an atmosphere, could scarcely endure it a moment. They have no great

variety of household utensils, earthen jars being the only article worth notice. Each family has, at least, one of them, in which they bake their roots, and perhaps their fish. They subsist chiefly on roots and fish, and the bark of a tree, which also grows in the West Indies. This they roast, and are almost continually chewing. Water is their only liquor; at least, they never saw any other made use of. It seems to be a country unable to support many inhabitants. Nature has been less bountiful to this than to any other tropical island known in this sea, the greatest part of its surface consisting of barren rocky mountains; nevertheless here are several plants common to the eastern and northern islands, and even a species of the passion flower, which was never known to grow wild any where but in America. The botanists did not complain for want of employment at this place; every day bringing to light something new in botany, or some other branch of natural history.

All their endeavours to get the name of the whole island, proved ineffectual. Probably it is too large for them to know it by one name. Whenever they made enquiry, they gave them the name of some district or place, hence Capt. Cook imagines that the country is divided into several districts, each governed by a chief; but they knew nothing of the extent of his power. Balade was the name of the district they were at, and Teabooma the chief. Tea seems to be a title prefixed to the names of all, or most of their chiefs, or great men. The captain was by one of their great men called Tea Cook. Their fishing implements are turtle nets, made of the filaments of the plantain tree twisted; and small hand nets, with very minute meshes, made of fine twine and fish-gigs. Every thing being in readiness to put to sea, at sun-rise, on the 13th of September, they weighed and stood out for sea.

Nothing remarkable occurred till the 28th in the evening when two low islets were seen bearing W. by S. and as they were connected by breakers, which seemed to join those on

their starboard, it became necessary to haul off, in order to get clear of them. Soon after more breakers appeared, extending from the low isles to a great distance. They spent the night in making short boards, under the terrible apprehension, every moment, of falling on some of the dangers which surrounded them. Day-light shewed that their fears were not ill founded, and that they had been in the most imminent danger, having had breakers continually under their lee, and at a very little distance from them. They owed their safety to the interposition of Providence, a good look out, and the brisk manner in which the ship was managed, and they grew tired of a coast which they could no longer explore, but at the risk of losing the ship, and ruining the whole of the voyage.

The ship was at this time conducted by an officer placed at the mast-head; soon after, with great difficulty, they arrived within a mile of land, and were obliged to anchor in thirty-nine fathoms water; they then hoisted out a boat, in which the captain went ashore, accompanied by the botanists. Here they found several tall trees, which had been observed before at a considerable distance; they appeared to be a kind of spruce pine, very proper for spars, of which they were in want; after making this discovery, they hastened on board, in order to give more time after dinner, when they landed again in two boats, to cut down such trees as were wanting. This little isle, upon which they landed, was a mere sand band, not exceeding three-fourths of a mile in circuit, and on it, besides these pines, grew the etos tree of Otaheite, and a variety of trees, shrubs and plants. These gave sufficient employment to the botanists, all the time they staid upon it, and occasioned the captain's calling it Botany Isle. Several fire places, branches and leaves very little decayed, shewed that people had lately been on the isle. The hull of a canoe lay wrecked in the sand. Having got ten or twelve small spars to make studding-sail booms, boats, masts, &c. and night approaching, they returned on board.

The purpose for which they anchored under this isle being answered, it was necessary to consider what was next to be done. They had, from the top-mast head, taken a view of the sea around, and observed the whole, to the west, to be strewn with small islots, sand banks, and breakers, to the utmost extent of their horizon. This induced the captain to try to get without the shoals.

Next morning, at day break, the 30th of September, they got under sail, and met with no occurrences worthy of remark for several days. In the evening of the 8th of October, Mr. Cooper having struck a porpoise with a harpoon, it was necessary to bring to, and have two boats out, before they could kill it, and get it on board. It was six feet long; a female, of that kind which naturalists call dolphins of the ancients, which differs from the other kind of porpoise in the head and jaw, having them long and pointed. This had eighty-eight teeth in each jaw. The haslet and lean flesh, were to them a feast. It was eaten roasted, broiled, and fried, first soaking it in warm water. Indeed, little preparation was wanting to make any thing fresh palatable to people who had been living so long on salt meat.

On the 10th, at day-break, they discovered land, bearing S. W. which, on a nearer approach, they found to be an island of good height, and five leagues in circuit. It was named Norfolk Isle, in honour of the noble family of Howard. After dinner, a party embarked in two boats, and landed on the isle without difficulty, behind some large rocks which lined part of the coast. They found it uninhabited, and were undoubtedly the first that ever set foot on it. They observed several trees and plants common at New Zealand; and, in particular, the flax plant, which is rather more luxuriant here than in any part of that country; but the chief produce is a species of spruce pine, which grows in abundance, and to a large size, being as thick, breast high, as two men could fathom, and exceedingly straight and tall. It resembles the Quebec pine. For about two hundred

yards from the shore, the ground is covered so thick with shrubs and plants, as hardly to be penetrated farther inland. The woods were perfectly clear and free from underwood, and the soil seemed rich and deep. They found the same kind of pigeons, parrots, and parroquets, as in New Zealand, rails, and some small birds. The sea fowl breed undisturbed on the shores, and in the cliffs of the rocks. On the isle is fresh water; and cabbage-palm, wood-sorrel, sow-thistle, and samphire abounding in some places on the shore, they brought on board as much of each sort as the time they had to gather them would admit.

After leaving Norfolk Isle, they steered for New Zealand, intending to touch at Queen Charlotte's Sound, to refresh the crew, and put the ship in a condition to encounter the southern latitudes. On the 17th, at day-break, they saw Mount Egmont, which was covered with everlasting snow. On the 18th, they anchored before Ship Cove; and, in the afternoon, the captain went into the cove, with the seine, to try to catch some fish. The first thing he did after landing, was to look for the bottle he had left when last here, in which was the memorandum. It was taken away, but by whom it did not appear. Two hauls with the seine producing only four small fish, they in some measure made up for this deficiency, by shooting several birds. Being little wind next morning, they weighed and warped the ship into the cove, and there moored. Here the forge was erected, and the ship and rigging repaired. The captain gave orders that vegetables should be boiled every morning with oat-meal and portable broth for breakfast, and with peas and broth every day for dinner for the whole crew, over and above their usual allowance of salt meat. In the afternoon, as Mr. Wales was setting up his observatory, he discovered that several trees, which were standing when they last sailed from that place, had been cut down with saws and axes. It was therefore now no longer to be doubted, that the Adventure had been in this cove after they left it.

Nothing remarkable happened till the 24th, when, in the morning, two canoes were seen coming down the sound; but as soon as they perceived the ship they retired. After breakfast they went in a boat to look for them; and as they proceeded along the shore, they shot several birds. The report of the muskets gave notice of their approach; and the natives discovered themselves in Shag Cove, by hallooing to them. The moment they landed the natives knew them; and the rest hurried out of the woods, and embraced them over and over again, leaping and skipping about like mad-men; but it was observed that they would not suffer some women, whom they saw at a distance, to come near them. After they had made them presents of hatchets, knives, and what else they had with them, they gave in return a large quantity of fish, which they had just caught. Next morning early, the inhabitants paid them a visit on board, and brought with them a quantity of fine fish, which they exchanged for Otaheitean cloth. On the 28th, a party went a shooting to West Bay, and came to the place where they left the hogs and fowls; but saw no vestiges of them, nor of any body having been there since. In the evening, they got on board with about a dozen and a half of wild fowls, shags, and sea-pies. The sportsmen who had been out in the woods near the ship, were more successful among the small birds.

On the 6th of November, their old friends having taken up their abode near them, one named Pedro, (a man of some note) made the captain a present of a staff of honour, such as the chiefs generally carry. In return, he dressed him in a suit of old clothes, of which he was not a little proud. Having got this person and another into a communicative mood, he began to enquire of them if the Adventure had been there during his absence; and they gave them to understand, in a manner which admitted of no doubt, that, soon after they were gone, she arrived; that she staid between ten and twenty days, and had been gone ten months. The 8th, they put two pigs, a boar, and a sow, on shore, in the cove next

without Canibal Cove ; so that it is hardly possible all the methods the captain has taken to stock this country with these animals should fail. On the 9th, the natives having brought a very seasonable supply of fish, the captain bestowed on Pedro a present of an empty oil-jar, which made him as happy as a prince. In the afternoon, a party went on shore into one of the coves, where were two families of the natives variously employed ; some sleeping, some making mats, some roasting fish and fire-roots, and one girl was heating of stones. As soon as the stones were hot, she took them out of the fire, and gave them to an old woman, who was sitting in a hut. She placed them in a heap, laid over them a handful of green celery, and over that a coarse mat, and then squatted herself down, on her heels, on the top of all ; thus making a kind of Dutch warming-pan, on which she sat as close as a hare on her seat. The captain supposes it was to cure some disorder she might have on her, which the steam arising from the green celery might be a specific for.

On the 10th of November, they took their farewell of New Zealand, and steered for Cape Campbell. The captain's intention now was to cross this vast ocean, so as to pass over those parts which were left unexplored the preceding summer. On Saturday, the 17th of December, they made the land, about six leagues distant. On this discovery, they wore and brought to, with the ship's head to the south ; and having sounded, found seventy-five fathoms water, the bottom stone and shells. The land now before them could be no other than the west coast of Terra del Fuego, and near the west entrance of the straits of Magellan. This was the first run they had made directly across this ocean, in a high southern latitude. The captain says he never made a passage, any where, of such length, where so few interesting circumstances occurred ; for, the variation of the compass excepted, he met with nothing else worth notice. Here they took their leave of the South Pacific Ocean.

On the 18th of December, as they continued to range the coast, about two leagues distance, they passed a projecting point, which was called Cape Gloucester. It shews a round surface of considerable height, and has much the appearance of being an island, distant seventeen leagues from the isle of Landfall. On the 20th, at noon, they observed York Minster, then distant five leagues. At ten o'clock a breeze springing up at E. by S. they took this opportunity to stand in for the land, to recruit their stock of wood and water, and take a view of the country. Here was found plenty of wood and water, and they set about doing what was necessary to the ship, the outside of which was become very foul. The captain was now told of a melancholy accident which had befallen one of the marines. He had not been seen since eleven or twelve o'clock the preceding night. It was supposed that he had fallen overboard, out of the head, where he had been last seen, and was drowned.

On the 23rd, Mr. Pickersgill was sent in the cutter to explore the east side of the sound, with an intent to survey the island under which they were at anchor, and which the captain called Shag Island. About seven in the evening he returned, and reported, that the land opposite to their station was an island which he had been round; that between it and the east head lay a cove, in which were many geese. This information induced them to make up two shooting parties next day; Mr. Pickersgill and his associates going in the cutter, and the captain and the botanists in the pinnace. Mr. Pickersgill went in one direction, and the captain in another, and they had sport enough among the geese, whence this was called Goose Island. There being a high surf, they found great difficulty in landing, and very bad climbing over the rocks when they were landed; so that hundreds of the geese escaped, some into the sea, and others up into the land. They, however, by one means or other, got sixty-two, with which they returned on board all heartily tired; but the acquisition they had made over-

balanced every other consideration, and they sat down with a good appetite to supper, on part of what the preceding day had produced. Mr. Pickersgill and his associates had got on board some time before with fourteen geese, so that they were able to distribute to the whole crew, which was the more acceptable on account of the approaching festival; for had not Providence thus singularly provided for them, their Christmas cheer must have been salt beef and pork.

The next morning, the 25th, some of the natives paid them a visit. They are a little, ugly, half starved, beardless race; not a tall person appeared amongst them. They were almost naked; their only clothing was a seal skin. The women cover their nakedness with the flap of a seal skin, but in other respects are clothed like the men. Two young children were seen at the breast entirely naked; thus they are inured from their infancy to cold and hardships. They had with them bows and arrows; and darts, or rather harpoons, made of bone, and fitted to a staff. They, and every thing they had, smelt most intolerably of train oil. The women and children remained in their canoes. These were made of bark; and in each was a fire, over which the poor creatures huddled themselves. They likewise carry in their canoes large seal hides to shelter them when at sea, and to serve as coverings to their huts on shore; and occasionally to be used as sails. The natives all retired before dinner; indeed no one invited them to stay. Their dirty persons, and the stench they carried about them, were enough to spoil the appetite of any European, and that would have been a real disappointment, as the ship's company had not experienced such fare for some time. Roast and boiled geese and goose-pye, was a treat little known to them, and they had yet some Madeira wine left, which was the only article of provision that was mended by keeping; so that their friends in England did not, perhaps, celebrate Christmas more cheerfully than they did. This was named Christmas Sound. Next day the natives made

another visit ; and it being distressing to see them stand trembling and naked on the deck, the captain humanely gave them some baize and old canvass to cover themselves. The refreshments to be got here are precarious, as they are chiefly wild fowl, and may probably never be found in such plenty as to supply the crew of a ship. They consist of geese, ducks, sea-pies, shags, and that kind of gull called Port Egmont hen. Here is a kind of duck, called by the sailors, race horses, on account of the great swiftness with which they run on the water ; for they cannot fly, the wings being too short to support the body in the air. The geese too are much smaller than the English tame geese, but eat as well. They have short black bills and yellow feet. The gander is all white; the female is spotted black and white, or grey, with a large, white spot on each wing. The captain says, of all the nations he had seen, these people seem to be the most wretched. They are doomed to live in one of the most inhospitable climates in the world, without having sagacity enough to provide themselves with such conveniences as may render life, in some measure, more comfortable. Barren as this country is, it abounds with a variety of unknown plants, and gave sufficient employment to Mr. Forster and his party.

On the 28th, they weighed and stood out to sea, resuming their course to the east ; and the next day they passed Cape Horn, and entered the Southern Atlantic Ocean. From Cape Horn, they stood over for Success Bay, assisted by the currents, which set to the north. Before this, they had hoisted their colours, and fired two guns ; and soon after, they saw a smoke rise out of the woods, above the south point of the bay, which was supposed to be made by the natives. As soon as they got off the bay, Lieut. Pickersgill went to see if any traces remained of the Adventure ; but he saw not the least signs of any ship having been there lately. The captain had inscribed his ship's name on a card, which he nailed to a tree, at the place where the

Endeavour watered. In the morning, at three o'clock, they bore up for the east end of Staten Land, where they arrived next day in the afternoon. After dinner they hoisted out three boats, and landed with a large party of men; some to kill seals; others to catch or kill birds, fish, or what came in in their way. To find the former, it mattered not where they landed, for the whole shore was covered with them; and by the noise they made, one would have thought the island was stocked with cows and calves. On landing, they found they were a different animal from seals, but in shape and motion exactly resembling them. The sailors called them lions, on account of the great resemblance the male had to that beast. Here were also the same kind of seals which they found in New Zealand, generally known by the name of sea-bears; at least they gave them that name. They were in general so tame, or rather stupid, as to suffer them to come near enough to knock them down with sticks; but the large ones were shot; not thinking it safe to approach them. They also found on the island, penguins, shags, geese and ducks, some birds of prey, and a few small birds. In the evening they returned on board with plenty of spoil.

Next day, being January 1st, 1775, finding that nothing was wanting but a good harbour to make this a tolerable place for ships to refresh at, which chance or design might bring hither, Mr. Gilbert went over to Staten Land in the cutter, to look for a good harbour. The captain also sent two other boats, which returned laden with sea-lions, sea-bears, &c. The old lions and bears were killed chiefly for the sake of their blubber, or fat, to make oil of; for except their haslets, which were tolerable, the flesh was too rank to be eaten with any degree of relish. But the young cubs were very palatable; and even the flesh of some of the old lionesses was not much amiss. About ten o'clock, Mr. Gilbert returned from Staten Land, where he found a good port, situated three leagues to the westward of Cape St. John. It is almost two miles in length; in some places near

a mile broad. On the island were sea-lions and seals, and such a quantity of gulls, as to darken the air when disturbed, and almost to suffocate the people with their dung. This they seemed to void in a way of defence, and it stunk worse than assafœtida. The day on which this port was discovered, occasioned the captain's calling it New-year's Harbour.

The sea-lions found here were not of that kind described, under the same name, by Lord Anson; but these would more properly deserve that appellation, the long hair, with which the back of the head, the neck, and shoulders, are covered, giving them greatly the air and appearance of a lion. The female is not half so big as the male, and is covered with short hair, of an ash or light dun colour. They live, as it were, in herds, on the rocks and near the sea-shore. The sea-bears are not so large, by far, as the lions, but rather larger than a common seal. They have not that long hair which distinguishes the lion. Theirs is all of an equal length, and finer than that of the lion, something like an otter's, and the general colour is iron grey. This is the kind which the French call sea-wolves, and the English seals; they are, however, different from the seals in Europe and North America. The lions may, without any great impropriety, be called overgrown seals; for they are all of the same species. It was not at all dangerous to go among them; for they either fled or lay still. The only danger was in going between them and the sea; for if they took fright at any thing, they would come down in such numbers, that if you could not get out of their way, you would be run over. The oceanic birds are gulls, tern, Port Egmont hens, and a large brown bird, of the size of an albatross, which Pernety calls *quebrant hahuessas*. The sailors called them Mother Carey's geese, and found them pretty good eating. The land birds were eagles, or hawks, bald-headed vultures, or what the sailors called turkey-buzzards, thrushes, and a few other small birds. It is amazing to see how the different

animals, which inhabit this place are mutually reconciled. They seem to have entered into a league, not to disturb each other's tranquillity. The sea-lions occupy most of the coast ; the sea-bears take up their abode in the isle ; the shags have post in the highest cliffs ; the penguins fix their quarters where there is the most easy communication with the sea ; and the other birds choose more retired places. Capt. Cook says, he has seen these animals mix together, like domestic cattle and poultry in a farm-yard, without one attempting to molest the other. Having left the land in the evening of the 3d, they saw it again next morning, bearing west.

On the 14th, at 9 o'clock in the morning, they descried an island of ice, as they then thought ; but at noon were doubtful whether it was ice or land ; it turned out to be the latter, and was, in a manner, wholly covered with snow. On the 16th, they began to explore the northern coast, and the next morning they made sail for the land. As soon as they drew near the shore, having hoisted out a boat, the captain embarked in it, accompanied by Mr. Forster and his party, with a view of reconnoitering before they ventured in with the ship, which they afterwards declined, as the inner parts of the country were savage and horrible. The wild rocks raised their lofty summits, till they were lost in the clouds, and the valleys lay covered with everlasting snow. Not a tree was to be seen, or a shrub even big enough to make a tooth-pick. They found here nearly the same animals as in New-year's Harbour. Since their arrival on this coast, the captain ordered, in addition to the common allowance, wheat to be boiled every morning for breakfast ; but any kind of fresh meat was preferred by most on board to salt ; the captain said he was heartily tired of salt meat of every kind ; and though the flesh of the penguins could scarcely vie with bullock's liver, its being fresh was sufficient to make it go down. They called the bay they were in Possession Bay. As soon as the boat was hoisted in, they made sail along the coast to the east, for

the space of eleven or twelve leagues, to a projecting point, which obtained the name of Cape Saunders. Beyond this cape is a pretty large bay, which was named Cumberland Bay. On the 20th, they fell in with an island, which they named the Isle of Georgia, in honour of his majesty. It extends thirty-one leagues in length; and its breadth is about ten leagues. It seems to abound with bays and harbours, the N. E. coast especially; but the vast quantity of ice on the coast renders them inaccessible the greatest part of the year.

From the 20th to the 27th, they had a continuation of foggy weather. Growing tired of high southern latitudes, where nothing was to be found but ice and thick fogs, they stood to the east, and soon fell in with a vast number of large ice-islands, and a sea strewn with loose ice. For this reason they tacked and stood to the west, with the wind at north. The ice-islands, which at this time surrounded them, were nearly all of equal height, and shewed a flat even surface. On the 1st of February, they got sight of a new coast. It proved a high promontory, which was named Cape Montagu, but prudence would not permit them to venture near the shore, where there was no anchorage, and where every port was blocked or filled up with ice; and the whole country, from the summits of the mountains down to the very brink of the cliffs which terminate the coast, covered, many fathoms thick, with everlasting snow. It was now necessary to take a view of the land to the north, before they proceeded any farther to the east. On the 3d, they saw two isles. The day on which they were discovered was the cause of their being called Candlemas Isles. They were of no great extent, but of considerable height, and were covered with snow. On the 4th, they resumed their course to the east. About noon they met with several ice-islands, and some loose ice, the weather continuing hazy, with snow and rain. The risk run in exploring a coast, in these unknown and icy seas, is so very great, that no man, the captain says, will

ever venture farther than he has done; and therefore the lands which may lie to the south will never be explored. Thick fogs, snow storms, intense cold, and every thing that can render navigation dangerous, must be encountered; and these dangers are greatly heightened by the inexpressibly horrid aspect of the country; a country doomed by nature never once to feel the warmth of the sun's rays, but to lie buried in everlasting snow and ice. The ports which may be on this coast, are, in a manner, wholly filled up with frozen snow of vast thickness; but if any should be so far open as to invite a ship into it, she would run the risk of being fixed there for ever, or of coming out in an ice island.

After such an explanation as this, the reader will not expect to find them much farther to the south. It was, however, not for want of inclination, but for other reasons. It would have been rashness to have risked all that had been done during the voyage, in discovering a coast, which, when discovered, would have answered no end whatever, or been of the least use, either to navigation or geography; or indeed to any other science; and, besides all this, they were not now in a condition to undertake great things; nor indeed was there time, had they been ever so well provided. These reasons induced the captain to alter his course to the east, with a very strong gale at north, attended with an exceedingly heavy fall of snow. The quantity which lodged in their sails was so great, that they were frequently obliged to throw the ship up in the wind to shake it out of them, otherwise neither they nor the ship could have supported the weight.

On the 10th, the weather became fair, but piercing cold, so that the water on deck was frozen, and at noon the mercury in the thermometer was no higher than thirty-four and a half. On the 22nd of February, as they were within two degrees of longitude from their route to the south, when they left the Cape of Good Hope, it was to no purpose to proceed any farther to the east under this parallel, knowing

that no land could be there. They had now made the circuit of the Southern Ocean in a high latitude, and traversed it in such a manner as to leave not the least room for the possibility of there being a continent, unless near the pole, out of the reach of navigation. By twice visiting the tropical sea, they had not only settled the situation of some old discoveries, but made there many new ones, and left very little more to be done in that part. Thus the intention of the voyage has, in every respect, been fully answered; the southern hemisphere sufficiently explored, and a final end put to the searching after a southern continent.

Their sails and rigging were so much worn, that something was giving way every hour; and they had nothing left either to repair or replace them. Their provisions were in a state of decay, and yielded little nourishment, and they had been a long time without refreshments. The sailors indeed were yet healthy, and would have cheerfully gone wherever they were led; but they dreaded the scurvy laying hold of them, at a time when they had nothing left to remove it. It would however have been cruel to have continued the fatigues and hardships they were continually exposed to, longer than it was absolutely necessary. Their behaviour, throughout the whole voyage, merited every indulgence which it was possible to give them. Animated by the conduct of the officers, they shewed themselves capable of surmounting every difficulty and danger which came in their way, and never once looked either upon one or the other, as being at all heightened, by their separation from their consort, the Adventure.

On the 8th of March, the mercury in the thermometer rose to sixty-one, and they found it necessary to put on lighter clothes. On the 12th, they put a boat into the water, and shot some albatrosses and petrels, which, at this time, were highly acceptable. Every one was now become impatient to get into port; this induced the captain to yield to the general wish, and to steer for the Cape of Good Hope. The

captain now demanded of the officers and petty officers, the log-books and journals they had kept; which were delivered accordingly, and sealed up for the inspection of the admiralty. He also enjoined them, and the crew, not to divulge where they had been, till they had their lordships' permission so to do.

In the evening of the 17th, they saw land about six leagues distant. Next day, having little or no wind, they hoisted out a boat, and sent on board a ship, which was about two leagues from them, but they were too impatient after news to regard the distance. Soon after three sail more appeared in sight to windward, one of which shewed English colours. The boat returning, reported that they had visited a Dutch East Indiaman, whose captain very obligingly offered them sugar, arrack, and whatever he had to spare. They were told by some English seamen on board this ship, that the *Adventure* had arrived at the Cape of Good Hope twelve months ago, and that the crew of one of her boats had been murdered and eaten by the natives of New Zealand.

On the 19th, the *True Briton*, Capt. Broadley, from China, bore down to them. As this ship did not intend to touch at the Cape, the captain put a letter on board for the secretary of the Admiralty. The melancholy account they had heard of the *Adventure* was now confirmed. From this ship they procured a parcel of old news-papers, which were new to them, and gave them some amusement; but these were the least favours they received from Capt. Broadley. With a generosity peculiar to the commanders of the India Company's ships, he sent them fresh provisions, tea, and other articles, which were very acceptable and deserve this public acknowledgment. In the afternoon they parted company. The *True Briton* stood out to sea, and they in for the land. The next morning, being with them Wednesday the 22nd, but with the people here Tuesday the 21st, they anchored in Table Bay, where they found several Dutch ships; some French; and the *Ceres*, Capt. Newte,

an English East India Company's ship, from China, bound directly to England, by whom they sent a copy of the preceding part of this journal, some charts, and other drawings, to the Admiralty. Before they had well got to an anchor, the captain dispatched an officer to acquaint the governor with their arrival, and to request the necessary stores and refreshments ; which were readily granted.

The captain now learned that the *Adventure* had called here, on her return ; and he found a letter from Capt. Furneaux, acquainting him with the loss of his boat, and of ten of his best men, in Queen Charlotte's Sound. He afterwards, on his arrival in England, put into Capt. Cook's hand a complete narrative of his proceedings, from the time of their second and final separation ; which is here detailed, to complete the history of this voyage.

In October, 1778, they were blown off the coast of New Zealand ; when they parted company with the *Resolution*, and never saw her afterwards. They combated violent storms till the 6th of November ; when, being to the north of Cape Palliser, they bore away for some bay to complete their water and wood, being in great want of both ; having been at the allowance of one quart of water for some days past ; and even that pittance could not be come at above six or seven days longer. They anchored at Tolaga Bay. Wood and water were easily to be had. The natives here are the same as those at Charlotte Sound, but more numerous. In one of their canoes they observed the head of a woman lying in state, adorned with feathers and other ornaments. It had the appearance of being alive ; but, on examination, they found it dry, being preserved with every feature perfect, and kept as the relic of some deceased relation. Having got about ten tuns of water and some wood, they sailed for Charlotte Sound on the 12th ; but violent weather prevented them from reaching it till the 30th. They saw nothing of the *Resolution*, and began to doubt her safety ; but on going on shore, they discerned the place where she

had erected her tents; and, on an old stump of a tree in the garden, observed these words cut out, "Look underneath." There they dug, and soon found a bottle, corked and waxed down, with a letter in it from Capt. Cook, signifying their arrival on the 3rd instant, and departure on the 24th, and that they intended spending a few days in the entrance of the Straights, to look for them. They immediately set about the necessary repairs of the ship, which employed them till the 16th of December.

Next day, they sent the large cutter, with Mr. Rowe, a midshipman, and the boat's crew, to gather wild greens for the ship's company; with orders to return that evening, as they intended to sail the next morning. But, on the boat's not returning the same evening, nor the next morning, the second lieutenant, Mr. Burney, in the launch, manned with the boat's crew and ten marines, went in search of her. Mr. Burney returned about eleven o'clock the same night, and informed them of a horrible scene indeed, which cannot be better described than in his own words.

"On the 18th, we left the ship; and having a light breeze in our favour, we soon got round Long Island. I examined every cove, on the larboard-hand, as we went along, looking well all around with a telescope. At half past one, we stopped at a beach on the left hand side going up East Bay, to boil some victuals. Whilst we were cooking, I saw an Indian on the opposite shore, running swiftly along a beach to the head of the bay. Our meat being drest, we got into the boat and put off; and, in a short time, arrived at the head of this reach, where we saw an Indian settlement.

"As we drew near, some of the Indians came down to the rocks, and waved for us to be gone; but seeing we disregarded them, they altered their notes. Here we found six large canoes hauled up on the beach, most of them double ones, and a great many people. Leaving the boat's crew to guard the boat, I stepped ashore with the marines (the cor-

poral and five men) and searched many of their houses, but found nothing to give me any suspicion. Coming down to the beach, one of the Indians had brought a bundle of he-patoos (long spears), but seeing I looked very earnestly at him, he put them on the ground, and walked about with seeming unconcern. Some of the people appearing to be frightened, I gave a looking-glass to one, and a large nail to another. From this place the bay ran, as nearly as I could guess, a good mile. I looked all around with the glass, but saw no boat, canoe, or any sign of inhabitant. I therefore contented myself with firing some guns, which I had done in every cove as I went along.

"I now kept close to the east shore, and came to another settlement, where the Indians invited us ashore. I enquired of them about the boat, but they pretended ignorance. They appeared very friendly here, and sold us some fish. Within an hour after we left this place, on a small beach adjoining Grass Cove, we saw a very large double canoe just hauled up, with two men and a dog. The men on seeing us left their canoe, and ran up into the woods. This gave me reason to suspect I should here get tidings of the cutter. We went ashore, searched the canoe, and found one of the rullock-ports of the cutter, and some shoes, one of which was known to belong to Mr. Woodhouse, one of our midshipmen. One of the people, at the same time, brought me a piece of meat, which he took to be some of the salt meat belonging to the cutter's crew. On examining this and smelling it, I found it to be fresh. Mr. Fannin (the master) who was with me, supposed it was dog's flesh, and I was of the same opinion; for I still doubted their being cannibals. But we were soon convinced by the most horrid and undeniable proof.

"A great many baskets (about twenty) lying on the beach, tied up, we cut them open. Some were full of roasted flesh, and some of fern-root, which serves them for bread. On farther search, we found more shoes, and a hand, which we

immediately knew to have belonged to Thomas Hill, one of our forecastle-men, it being marked T. H. with an Otaheitean tattow instrument. I went with some of the people a little way into the woods, but saw nothing else. Coming down again, there was a round spot covered with fresh earth, about four feet in diameter, where something had been buried. Having no spade, we began to dig with a cutlass; and in the mean time I launched the canoe, with intent to destroy her; but seeing a great smoke ascending over the nearest hill, I got all the people into the boat, and made what haste I could to be with them before sun-set.

“On opening the next bay, which was Grass Cove, we saw four canoes, and a great many people on the beach, who, on our approach, retreated to a small hill, about a ship's length from the water side, where they stood talking to us. A large fire was on the top of the high land, beyond the woods, whence, all the way down the hill, the place was thronged like a fair. The savages on the hill still kept hallooing, and making signs for us to land; however, as soon as we got close in, we all fired. The first volley did not seem to affect them much; but on the second they began to scramble away, as fast as they could, some of them howling. We continued firing as long as we could see the glimpse of any of them through the bushes. Among the Indians were two very stout men, who never offered to move till they found themselves forsaken by their companions; and then marched away with great composure and deliberation, their pride not suffering them to run. One of them, however, got a fall, and either lay there, or crawled away on all fours. The other got clear, without any apparent hurt. I then landed with the marines, and Mr. Fannin staid to guard the boat.

“On the beach were two bundles of oelery, which had been gathered for loading the cutter. A broken oar was stuck upright in the ground, to which the natives had tied their canoes; a proof that the attack had been made here

I then searched all along at the back of the beach, to see if the cutter was there. We found no boat, but instead of her, we saw such a shocking scene of carnage and barbarity, as never can be mentioned or thought of but with horror ; for the heads, hearts, and lungs of several of our people, were seen lying on the beach, and, at a little distance, the dogs gnawing their entrails.

“ Whilst we remained almost stupified on the spot, Mr. Fannin called to us that he heard the savages gathering together in the woods ; on which I returned to the boat, and hauling along-side the canoes, we demolished three of them. Whilst this was transacting, the fire on the top of the hill disappeared, and we could hear the Indians in the wood at high words ; I suppose quarrelling whether they should attack us, and try to save their canoes. It now grew dark, I, therefore, just stepped out, and looked once more behind the beach, to see if the cutter had been hauled up in the bushes, but seeing nothing of her, returned and put off. Our whole force would have been barely sufficient to have gone up the hill ; and to have ventured with half (for half must have been left to guard the boat) would have been fool-hardiness. As we opened the upper part of the sound, we saw a very large fire about three or four miles higher up, which formed a complete oval, reaching from the top of the hill down almost to the water side, the middle space being inclosed all round by the fire, like a hedge. I consulted with Mr. Fannin, and we were both of opinion that we could expect to reap no other advantage than the poor satisfaction of killing some more of the savages. Coming between two round islands, situated to the southward of East Bay, we imagined we heard somebody calling ; we lay on our oars and listened, but heard no more of it ; we hallooed several times, but to little purpose ; the poor souls were far enough out of hearing : and, indeed, I think it some comfort to reflect, that, in all probability, every man of them must have been killed on the spot.”

Thus far Mr. Burney's report; and, to complete the account of this tragical transaction, it may not be unnecessary to mention that the people in the cutter were Mr. Rowe; Mr. Woodhouse; Francis Murphy, quarter-master; William Facey, Thomas Hill, Michael Bell, and Edward Jones, fore-castle-men; John Cavanaugh and Thomas Milton, belonging to the after-guard; and James Savilly, the captain's man; being ten in all. Most of these were their very best seamen, the stoutest and most healthy men in the ship. Mr. Burney's party brought on board two hands; one belonged to Mr. Rowe, known by a hurt he had received on it; the other to Thomas Hill, as before mentioned; and the head of the captain's servant. These, with more of the remains, were tied in a hammock, and thrown overboard, with ballast and shot sufficient to sink it. In all probability this unhappy business originated in some quarrel, which was decided on the spot; or incautiousness might tempt the natives to seize the opportunity of satisfying their inhuman appetites. They were detained in the Sound, by contrary winds, four days after this melancholy affair happened, during which time they saw none of the inhabitants. On the 23rd, they weighed and made sail out of the Sound, and stood to the eastward, but were baffled for two or three days, with light winds, before they could clear the coast. January the 10th, 1774, they arrived abreast of Cape Horn. They were very little more than a month from Cape Palliser, in New Zealand, to Cape Horn, which is 121 deg. of longitude. On opening some casks of peas and flour that had been stowed on the coals, they found them very much damaged, and not eatable, so thought it most prudent to make for the Cape of Good Hope. On the 17th of February, they made the land off the Cape of Good Hope, and on the 19th, anchored in Table Bay, where they found Commodore Sir Edward Hughes, with his majesty's ships Salisbury and Seahorse. On the 16th of April, Capt. Furneaux sailed for England, and on the 14th of July anchored at Spithead.

We now return to Capt. Cook. The day after his arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, he waited on the governor, Baron Plettenberg, and other principal officers, who received and treated him with the greatest politeness. They had only three men on board, whom it was thought necessary to send on shore for the recovery of their health; and for these the captain procured quarters, at the rate of thirty stivers, or half a crown per day, for which they were provided with victuals, drink, and lodging. On examining the rudder, it was found necessary to unhang it, and take it on shore to repair. They were also delayed for want of caulkers. At length they obtained two workmen from one of the Dutch ships; and the Dutton English East Indiaman coming in from Bengal, Capt. Rice obliged Capt. Cook with two more, so that by the 26th of April this work was finished; and having got on board all necessary stores, and a fresh supply of provisions and water, they took leave of the governor and other principal officers, and the next morning repaired on board.

As soon as they were under sail, they saluted the garrison with thirteen guns; which compliment was immediately returned with the same number. A Spanish frigate and a Danish Indiaman both saluted them as they passed, and Capt. Cook returned each salute with an equal number of guns. At day break in the morning of the 15th of May, they saw the island of St. Helena, at the distance of fourteen leagues; and at midnight anchored in the road before the town. Governor Skettowe, and the principal gentlemen of the island, received and treated the captain, during his stay, with the greatest politeness, by shewing him every kind of civility in their power. During their stay here, they finished some necessary repairs of the ship, which they had not time to do at the Cape. They also filled all their empty water casks; and the crew were served with fresh beef, purchased at five pence per pound. Their beef is exceedingly good, and is the only refreshment they had worth mentioning.

On the 21st of May, the captain took leave of the governor and repaired on board. Upon leaving the shore, he was saluted with thirteen guns, which he returned. In the morning of the 28th, they made the island of Ascension; and the same evening anchored in Cross Bay. They remained here till the evening of the 31st, and notwithstanding they had several parties out every night, they got but twenty-four turtles, it being rather too late in the season; however, as they weighed between four and five hundred pounds each, they were pretty well off. The island of Ascension is about ten miles in length, in the direction of N. W. and S. E. and about five or six in breadth. It shews a surface composed of barren hills and valleys, on the most of which not a shrub or plant is to be seen for several miles, but stones and ashes in plenty, an indubitable sign that the isle, at some remote time, has been destroyed by a volcano, which has thrown up vast heaps of stones, and even hills. A high mountain at the S. E. end of the isle, seems to be left in its original state, and to have escaped the general destruction. Its soil is a kind of white marl, which yet retains its vegetative qualities, and produces a kind of purslain, spurge, and one or two grasses. On these the goats subsist, and it is at this part of the isle only, where they are to be found.

While they lay in the road, a sloop belonging to Bermuda, had sailed but a few days before with one hundred and five turtle on board, which was as many as he could take in; but having turned several more on the different sandy beaches, they had ripped open their bellies, taken out the eggs, and left the carcasses to putrefy; an act as inhuman as injurious to those who came after them. Turtle, it is said, are to be found at this island from January to June. The method of catching them is to have people on the several sandy bays, to watch their coming on shore to lay their eggs, which is always in the night, and then to turn them on their backs till there be an opportunity to take them off

the next day. Nothing is more certain, than that all the turtle which are found about this island, come here for the sole purpose of laying their eggs; for they met with none but females; and of all those which they caught, not one had any food worth mentioning in its stomach; a sure sign that they must have been a long time without any; and may be the reason why the flesh of them is not so good as those caught on the coast of New South Wales, where they feed.

On the 31st of May, they left Ascension, and steered to the northward. They had a great desire to visit the island of St. Matthew, to settle its situation; but as they found the wind would not let them fetch it, they steered for the island of Fernando de Noronha, on the coast of Brasil, in order to determine its longitude. On the 9th of June, at noon, they made that place, distance six or seven leagues. It appeared in detached and peaked hills, the largest of which looked like a church tower or steeple. When they arrived in the road, a gun being fired from one of the forts, the Portuguese colours were displayed, and the example was followed by all the other forts. Having speedily ascertained the longitude, they bore away without landing.

By the 18th, they made no doubt that they had now got the N. E. trade-wind, as it was attended with fair weather, except now and then some light showers of rain; and as they advanced to the north the wind increased, and blew a fresh top-gallant gale. On the 21st, the captain ordered the still to be fitted to the largest copper, which held about sixty-four gallons. The fire was lighted at four o'clock in the morning, and at six the still began to run. It was continued till six in the evening; in which time they obtained thirty-two gallons of fresh water, at the expence of one bushel and a half of coals, which was about three-fourths of a bushel more than was necessary to have boiled the ship's company's victuals only; but the expence of fuel was no object with them. Upon the whole, this is an useful invention; but the captain says, he would advise no man to trust wholly

to it. For although you may, provided you have plenty of fuel and good coppers, obtain as much water as will support life, you cannot, with all your efforts, obtain sufficient to support health, in hot climates especially, where it is the most wanting.

Nothing worth mentioning happened till the 13th of July, when they made the island of Fayal, one of the Azores, and soon after that of Pico. At day break the next morning, they bore away for the Bay of Fayal, or De Horta, where at eight o'clock they anchored. The sole design in stopping here, was to give Mr. Wales an opportunity to find the rate of the watch, the better to enable them to fix, with some degree of certainty, the longitude of these islands. The moment they anchored, the captain sent an officer to wait on the English consul, and to notify his arrival, requesting permission for Mr. Wales to make observations on shore. Mr. Dent, who acted as consul, not only procured this permission of the governor, but accommodated Mr. Wales with a convenient place in his garden to set up his instruments; and, indeed, entertained all the gentlemen on board in the most liberal and hospitable manner. During their stay, the ship's company was served with fresh beef; and they took on board about fifteen tuns of water, which they brought off in the country boats, at the rate of about three shillings per tun.

The principal produce of Fayal is wheat and Indian corn, with which they supply Pico and some other isles. The chief town is called Villa de Horta. It is situated in the bottom of the bay, close to the edge of the sea, and is defended by two castles, one at each end of the town, and a wall of stone-work, extending along the sea-shore from the one to the other. There is not a glass window in the place, except what are in the churches, and in a country house which lately belonged to the English consul; all the others being latticed, which, to an Englishman, makes them look like prisons. This little city, like all others belonging

to the Portuguese, is crowded with religious buildings. Fayal, although the most noted for wines, does not raise sufficient for its own consumption. This article is raised on Pico, where there is no road for shipping; but being brought to De Horta, and from thence shipped abroad, chiefly to America, it has acquired the name of Fayal wine.

Having left the bay in the morning of the 19th, they steered for the island of Tercera, in order to ascertain its length; but the weather coming on very thick and hazy, and night approaching, they gave up the design, and proceeded with all expedition for England. On the 29th of July, they made the land near Plymouth. The next morning, they anchored at Spithead; and the same day, Capt. Cook landed at Portsmouth, and set out for London, in company with Messrs. Wales, Forsters, and Hodges.

Having been absent from England three years and eighteen days, in which time, and under all changes of climate, he lost but four men, and only one of them by sickness, it may not be amiss, to enumerate the several causes, to which, under the care of Providence, the captain says, he conceives this uncommon good state of health, experienced by his people, was owing. They were furnished with a quantity of malt, of which was made sweet-wort. To such of the men as shewed the least symptoms of the scurvy, this was given, from one to two or three pints a day, each man; or in such proportion as the surgeon found necessary. This is, without doubt, one of the best antiscorbutic sea medicines yet discovered, if used in time. Sour kront, of which they had a large quantity, is a wholesome vegetable food, highly antiscorbutic, and it spoils not by keeping. A pound of this was served to each man, when at sea, twice a week, or oftener, as was thought necessary. Portable broth was another great article, of which they had a small supply. An ounce of this to each man, or such other proportion as circumstances pointed out, was boiled in their peas, three days a week; and when they were in places where vegetables were to be

got, it was boiled with them, and wheat or oatmeal, every morning for breakfast ; and also with peas and vegetables for dinner. Rob of lemon and orange, also, the surgeon made use of in many cases with great success. But the introduction of the most salutary articles, either as provisions or medicines, will generally prove unsuccessful, unless supported by certain regulations. On this principle, many years experience, together with some hints the captain had from other intelligent officers, enabled him to lay a plan whereby all were to be governed. The crew were at three watches, except upon some extraordinary occasions. By this means they were not so much exposed to the weather, as if they had been at watch and watch ; and had generally dry clothes to shift themselves when they happened to get wet. Proper methods were used to keep their persons, hammocks, bedding, and clothes constantly clean and dry. Equal care was taken to keep the ship clean and dry, betwixt decks. Once or twice a week she was aired with fires ; and when this could not be done, she was smoked with gunpowder, mixed with vinegar or water. They had also, frequently, a fire made in an iron pot, at the bottom of the well, which was of great use in purifying the air in the lower parts of the ship. To this, and to cleanliness, as well in the ship as amongst the people, too great attention cannot be paid ; the least neglect occasions a putrid and disagreeable smell below, which nothing but fires will remove.

Captain Cook concludes his account of this his second voyage round the world as follows : " It doth not become me to say how far the principal objects of our voyage have been obtained. Had we found out a continent there, we might have been better enabled to gratify curiosity ; but we hope our not having found it, after all our persevering researches, will leave less room for future speculation about unknown worlds remaining to be explored. Whatever may be the public judgment about other matters, it is with real satisfaction, and without claiming any merit but that of attention

to my duty, that I can conclude this account with an observation, which facts enable me to make, that our having discovered the possibility of preserving health among a numerous ship's company, for such a length of time, in such varieties of climate, and amidst such continued hardships and fatigues, will make this voyage remarkable in the opinion of every benevolent person, when the disputes about a southern continent shall have ceased to occupy the attention, and to divide the judgment of philosophers."

We shall only add, that during this voyage, Capt. Cook resolved the great problem of a southern continent, having traversed that hemisphere in such a manner, as not to leave a possibility of its existence, within the reach of navigation. In his progress, however, he discovered New Caledonia, the largest island in the Southern Pacific, except New Zealand; the island of Georgia, and an unknown coast, which he named Sandwich Land, the Thule of the southern hemisphere; and having twice visited the tropical seas, he settled the situations of the old, and made several new discoveries.

THE
THIRD & LAST VOYAGE
OF
CAPT. JAMES COOK
ROUND THE WORLD.

TO shew the importance of the voyages of discovery of Capt. Cook, and to furnish some idea of the magnitude of the undertaking, it may be proper to take a cursory view of that untrodden ground, which former enterprising discoverers visited, and whereon the principal scenes of their operations were exhibited. A brief recapitulation of their expeditions, will evince how much the intrepid naval officers of our own country have extended our acquaintance with the contents of the globe, opened new channels to an increase of knowledge, and afforded fresh materials, equally interesting, as they are uncommon, for the study of human nature in various situations.

Columbus and Magellan, two illustrious foreigners, rendered their names immortal at an early period. The former, by a perseverance, of which there was no precedent, providentially surmounted every obstacle that opposed his progress, and astonished Europe with the production of a new earth, since called America; while much about the same time, the latter, inspired by a like spirit of enterprise, and animated by a magnanimity that despised danger, opened

a passage to a new sea, to which he gave the name of Pacific.

In the year 1520, on the 6th of November, Magellan entered the straits, that have ever since been called by his name, and on the 27th of the same month, beheld the wished-for object of his pursuit, the Great Southern Ocean. For one hundred and thirteen days, he continued steering to the north-west, and having in that time crossed the line, he fell in with those islands, to which he gave the name of Ladrões; and proceeding from hence in search of the Moluccas, he found in his way many little islands, where he was hospitably received, and where a friendly correspondence was established. These islands were situated between the Ladrões, and what are now known by the name of the Philippines, in one of which, called Nathan, Magellan, with sixty men, encountering a whole army, was first wounded with a poisoned arrow, and then pierced with a bearded lance. His little squadron, now reduced to two ships, and not more than eighty men, departed hastily; but one only, the Victory, returned by the Cape of Good Hope, and was the first ship that ever went round the world. Other adventurers were not now wanting to follow the steps of this intrepid navigator.

In 1567, Alvarez de Mendamo, another Spaniard, was sent from Lima, on purpose for discovery. He sailed eight hundred leagues westward from the coast of Peru, and fell in with certain islands in the latitude of 11 deg. S. and Capt. Cook inclines to the opinion, that they are the cluster which comprises what has since been called New Britain, &c. Mendamo was also said to have discovered, in 1575, the island of St. Christoval, and not far from hence, the Archipelago, called the Islands of Solomon, of which great and small he counted thirty-three.

In 1577, Sir Francis Drake, who was the first Englishman that passed the straights of Magellan, discovered the island of California, which he named New Albion.

He also discovered other small islands in his route to the 43rd deg. of N. lat. but as his sole view was to return with his booty, he paid no regard to objects of less concern. He arrived in England, by the Cape of Good Hope, in the year 1580. To him succeeded Sir Thomas Cavendish, who likewise passed the straits of Magellan in 1580, and returned nearly by the same route pointed out by his predecessor, touching at the Ladrões, and making some stay at the Philippine Isles, of which, on his return, he gave an entertaining description.

In 1595, the Spaniards, intent more on discovery than plunder, fitted out four ships, and gave the command to Alvaro Mendana de Neyra; whose discoveries were the Marquesas, Solitary Island, and Santa Cruz: but most of those who embarked on this expedition either died miserably, or were shipwrecked. One of the fleet was afterwards found with all her sails set, and the people rotten.

In 1598, Oliver Van Noort passed the straits. He made no discoveries: but in this year the Sebaldine Islands were discovered by Sebald de Wert, the same known now by the name of Falkland's Isles.

In 1605, Pedro Fernando de Quiros conceived the design of discovering a southern continent. He is supposed, by Mr. Dalrymple and others, to have been the first into whose mind the existence of such a continent had ever entered. On the 31st of December, he sailed from Calloa with two ships and a tender. Luis Paz de Torres was entrusted with the command, and Quiros, from zeal for the success of the undertaking, was contented to act in the inferior station of pilot. Quiros, soon after his return, presented a memorial to Philip II. of Spain, in which he enumerates twenty-three islands that he had discovered, among which was the island of the Virgin Mary, and adjoining it three parts of the country called Australia del Espiritu Santo, in which land were found the bay of St. Philip and St. Jago.

In 1614, George Spitzbergen with a strong squadron of Dutch ships passed the straits of Magellan; and in 1615, Schouten and Le Maire, in the *Unity* of 360 tons, and the *Hoorn* of 110, sailed from the Texel, on the 14th of June, professedly for the discovery of a new passage to the South Sea. The *Hoorn* was burnt, in careening, at King's Island, on the coast of Brazil, and the other left singly to pursue her voyage. In lat. 54 deg. 56 min. they came in sight of an opening, to which, (having happily passed it) they gave the name of Strait le Maire. Having soon after this weathered the southernmost point of the American continent, they called that promontory Cape Horn, or more properly Hoorn, after the town in Holland where the project was first secretly concerted; and two islands which they had passed, they named Bernevelt. They also discovered several others, and coasted the north side of New Britain.

In 1642, Abel Tasman sailed from Batavia, in the *Heemskirk*, accompanied by the *Zee Haan* pink, with a design of discovering the Southern Continent. The first land he made was the eastern point of New Holland, since known by the name of Van Diemen's land. Proceeding in a high latitude to the eastward, he fell in with the westernmost coast of New Zealand, where most of the crew were murdered by the savages of a bay, which he called Murderer's Bay, called by our late navigators Queen Charlotte's Sound. In his passage he fell in with the isles of Pylstaert, Amsterdam, Middleburg, and Rotterdam. Then directing his course to the N. W. he discovered eighteen or twenty small islands, in lat. 17 deg. 19 min. S. long. 201 deg. 35 min. to which he gave the name of Prince William's Islands, and Heemskirk's Banks. From thence Tasman pursued his course to New Guinea, without discovering the supposed continent; and returned to Batavia on the 15th of June, 1643.

In 1681, Dampier passed the Magellanic Straits, and in 1699, he made a second voyage on discovery, which was chiefly confined to New Holland, New Guinea, New Britain,

and the islands adjacent. In 1708, he performed a third voyage, but without making any new discoveries. He was accompanied in this voyage by Mr. Funnell, to whom the circumnavigation of the globe is ascribed.

In 1721, the Dutch East-India Company, at the instance of Capt. Roggwein, fitted out a respectable fleet, for the discovery of that continent, which lay hitherto unknown, though believed universally to exist. Three stout ships were appointed, and were well provided for this service; the *Eagle* of 36 guns and 111 men, on board of which embarked Roggwein as commodore, having under him Capt. Coster; the *Tienhoven* of 28 guns, and 100 men, of which Capt. Bowman was commander; and the *African Galley*, commanded by Capt. Rosenthall. From these experienced navigators every thing was hoped. They found the straits of Magellan impracticable, and entered the Southern Ocean, after having endured a variety of difficulties and hardships, by the strait *Le Maire*. Roggwein pursued nearly the same track as Schouten had pointed out, till, veering more to the north, he fell in with the islands at which Commodore Byron first landed. Pursuing their course to the westward, they discovered a cluster of islands, undoubtedly the same now called the *Friendly Isles*, to which they gave the name of the *Labyrinth*, because it was with difficulty they could clear them. They continued their course towards New Britain, and New Guinea; and thence by the way of the *Moluccas* to the *East Indies*.

In 1738, *Lazier Bouvet* was sent by the French East-India Company, upon discovery in the Southern Atlantic Ocean. He sailed from Port l'Orient on the 19th of July, on board the *Eagle*, accompanied by the *Mary*, and on the 1st of January following, it was thought he had discovered land in lat. 54 deg. S. long. 11 min. E. This having been diligently sought for by Capt. Cook, without effect, there is good reason to doubt if any such exists; or, if it does, it is too remote from any known tract to be of use to trade or

navigation. In 1742, Commodore Anson traversed the Great Pacific Ocean, but he made no discoveries.

The spirit of discovery recovered new strength, under the cherishing influence and munificent encouragement of King George III. who having put a period to the destructive operations of war, turned his attention to enterprises more adapted to the season of returning peace. His majesty formed the grand design of exploring the Southern Hemisphere; and in the prosecution of an object so well adapted to the views of a great commercial people, one voyage followed another in close succession.

In 1764, Captain, afterwards Admiral Byron, having under his command the *Dolphin* and *Tamar*, passed through the straits of Magellan, into the Pacific Ocean; where he discovered several islands, and returned to England in May, 1766. In the month of August following, the *Dolphin* was again sent out under the command of Capt. Wallis, with the *Swallow* sloop, commanded by Capt. Carteret. They proceeded together till they came to the west end of the straits of Magellan, and in sight of the Great South Sea, where they were separated. Capt. Wallis directed his course more westerly than any navigator had done before in so high a latitude; discovered not less than fourteen new islands; and returned to England with the *Dolphin*, in May, 1768. His companion Capt. Carteret kept a different rout, made other discoveries, among which was the strait between New Britain and New Ireland. He returned with the *Swallow* to England, after having encountered innumerable difficulties, in March, 1769. In the same year and month, Commodore Bougainville, having circumnavigated the globe, arrived in France.

In 1769, the Spaniards sent out a ship to trace the discoveries of the English and French commanders, which arrived at Otaheite in 1771. This ship touched at Easter Island, but whether she returned to New or Old Spain remains undecided. In the same year, 1769, the French also fitted

out another ship from the Mauritius, under the command of Capt. Kergulen, who, having discovered a few barren islands, contented himself with leaving some memorials that were found by Capt Cook. To this distinguished navigator was reserved the honour of being the first, who from a series of the most satisfactory observations, beginning at the west entrance of the strait of Magellan, and carried on with unwearied perseverance round Terra del Fuego, through the strait of Le Maire, has constructed a chart of the southern extremity of America, from which it will appear what advantages will now be enjoyed by those who shall hereafter sail round Cape Horn.

Capt. Cook sailed from Plymouth, in August, 1768, and returned home by the Cape of Good Hope, in July 1771. This experienced circumnavigator performed his second voyage in the Resolution and Adventure, which sailed from England in July, 1772, and returned on the 30th of the same month, in 1775. The general object of this and the preceding voyage round the world, was to search for unknown tracts of land, that might exist within the bosom of the immense expanse of ocean that occupies the southern hemisphere; and, particularly to determine to a certainty, the existence or non-existence of a southern continent; and these voyages have facilitated the access of ships into the Pacific Ocean, and also greatly enlarged the knowledge of its contents. These Navigators, besides perfecting many of the discoveries of their predecessors, have added to them a long catalogue of their own. The several lands, of which any account had been given by the Spaniards or Dutch, have been carefully looked for, and most of them found, visited, and accurately surveyed. The boasted Terra Australia del Espiritu Santo of Quiros, as being a part of a southern continent, could not withstand Capt. Cook's examination, who sailed round it, and assigned to it its true position and moderate bounds, in the Archipelago of the New Hebrides. Bougainville did no more than discover, that the land here

was not connected ; but Capt. Cook found it to be composed of islands, and explored the whole group. Byron, Wallace, and Carteret, had each of them contributed towards increasing a knowledge of the amazing profusion of islands that exist in the Pacific Ocean, within the limits of the southern tropic : but how far that ocean reached to the west, what lands bounded it on that side, and the connection of those lands with the discoveries of former navigators, remained absolutely unknown, till Capt. Cook decided the question, and brought home such ample accounts of them and their inhabitants, as have left little more to be done in that part of the globe. It was a favourite conjectural opinion among geographers, that New Zealand was a part of a southern continent ; but Capt. Cook's voyage in the *Endeavour* has proved it to be a mere supposition ; for he spent near six months upon its coasts, circumnavigated it completely, and ascertained its extent, and divisions into two islands. Whether New Holland did or did not join to New Guinea was another question, which Capt. Cook decided, by sailing between them through *Endeavour Strait*. He, therefore, in this part of his voyage, has established a fact of essential service to navigation, by opening, if not a new, at least an unfrequented and forgotten communication between the Southern Pacific and Indian oceans. To Capt. Carteret belongs a new discovery, in the strictest sense of the word. *St. George's Channel*, through which his ship found a way, between New Britain and New Ireland, is a much better and shorter passage, whether eastward or westward, than round all the islands and lands to the northward. Thus far, therefore, the late voyages of British navigators, to disclose new tracts, and to reform old defects in geography, appear to have been prosecuted with a satisfactory degree of success.

But something was still wanting to complete the great plan of discovery. The utmost accessible extremities of the southern hemisphere had been repeatedly visited and surveyed : yet great variety of opinion prevailed concerning

the navigable boundaries of our own hemisphere; particularly, as to its existence, or at least as to the practicability of a northern passage between the Atlantic and Pacific oceans, either by sailing eastward round Asia, or westward round north America; by which passage, could it be found, voyages to the East Indies in general would be much shortened, and consequently become more profitable, than by making the tedious circuit of the Cape of Good Hope. This favourite object of the English, as early as the fifteenth century, appeared so certain to the Cabots, that the younger Sebastian made the original attempt to discover a N.W. passage in 1497, which ended in the discovery of Newfoundland and the Labradore coast. He returned by the way of Newfoundland, bringing home two Esquimaux. In 1576, Sir Martin Forbisher undertook a second expedition, and found a strait on the southernmost point of Greenland, but after repeated trials, he relinquished his hope of seeing the object he held in contemplation, and had been pursuing. Sir Humphry Gilbert was mortified with the same disappointment. He coasted along the American continent from the 60th degree of northern latitude, till he fell in with the Gulph of St. Lawrence; took possession, in his sovereign's name, of that land, since called by the French, Canada; and was the first who projected and promoted the establishment of the fishery in Newfoundland. Capt. John Davis made three trials for a passage N. W. each of which proved unfortunate and unsuccessful. In his progress he passed the strait that still bears his name, and advanced as high as the latitude of 66 deg. Mr. Henry Hudson in the year 1610, projected a new course towards the N.W. which brought him to the mouth of the bay that now bears his name. But the adventure ended by the mutiny of his crew, in the tragical death of the captain, and seven of his sick followers. The year following Sir Henry Button undertook the task, but with no better success than his predecessor. He was followed by James Hall and William Baffin.

Hall in this fruitless expedition fell by the hands of a savage; and Baffin, who renewed the pursuit in 1615, examined a sea that communicates with Davis's strait, which he found to be no other than a great bay, and called it after his own name: an inlet to the north, in lat. 78 deg. he called Smith's Sound. In 1631, Luke Fox made a voyage in search of the same supposed passage, but to as little purpose as the rest. He was followed by Capt. James, who, after the most elaborate search, changed his opinion, and declared that no such passage existed. Thus our countrymen and the Dutch have been equally unsuccessful in various attempts to find this passage in an eastern direction. Wood's failure in 1676 seems to have closed the list of unfortunate northern expeditions in that century; and the discovery, if not absolutely despaired of, by having been missed so often, ceased, for near another century, to be sought after: but Mr. Dobbs once more recalled the attention of this country to the probability of a N.W. passage through Hudson's Bay; in consequence of which Capt. Middleton was sent out by the British government in 1741, and Captains Smith and Moore, by a private society, in 1746, each encouraged by an act of parliament passed in the preceding year, that annexed a reward of twenty thousand pounds to the discovery of a passage: however, they all returned from Hudson's Bay with reports of their proceedings, that left the attainment of the great object in view, at as great a distance as ever.

But it was not yet certain, that such a passage might not be found on the western side of America; and researches of this kind were no longer left to the solicitation, or to the subscriptions of private adventurers; they engaged royal attention, and were warmly promoted by the minister at the head of the naval department: and hence it was, that while Capt. Cook was prosecuting his voyage towards the south pole, in 1778, Lord Mulgrave sailed with two ships, to determine how far navigation was practicable towards the north pole. And

that nothing might be left unattempted, though much had been already done, Capt. Cook, whose professional knowledge could only be equalled by the persevering diligence with which he had employed it in the course of his former researches, was called upon once more to resume, or rather to complete his survey of the globe. This brave and experienced commander might have spent the remainder of his days in the command to which he had been appointed in Greenwich Hospital; but he cheerfully relinquished this honourable station, and, in 1776, undertook for the service of his country another voyage, which, in one respect, was less fortunate than any former expedition, being performed at the expence of the precious and most valuable life of its conductor. Former circumnavigators had returned to Europe by the Cape of Good Hope; the arduous task was now assigned to Capt. Cook of attempting it by reaching the high northern latitudes between Asia and America. He was ordered to proceed to Otaheite or the Society Islands, and then having crossed the equator into the northern tropic, to hold such a course as might most probably give success to the attempt of finding out a northern passage: but that the reader may be enabled to judge with precision of the great out-lines of the present important voyage; of the various objects it had in view, and how far they have been carried into execution, it may be proper to insert a copy of the instructions to Capt. Cook, from the commissioners for executing the office of Lord High Admiral of Great Britain, Ireland, &c. and which in substance were as follow.

“Whereas the Earl of Sandwich has signified to us his majesty's pleasure, that an attempt should be made to find out a northern passage by sea, from the Pacific to the Atlantic Ocean; and whereas we have, in pursuance thereof, caused his majesty's sloops *Resolution* and *Discovery* to be fitted, in all respects, proper to proceed upon a voyage, for the purpose above mentioned, and from the experience we have had of your abilities and good conduct in your late

voyages, have thought fit to intrust you with the conduct of the present intended voyage, and with that view appointed you to command the first mentioned sloop, and directed Capt. Clerke who commands the other, to follow your orders for his further proceedings; you are hereby required and directed to proceed with the said two sloops directly for the Cape of Good Hope, unless you shall judge it necessary to stop at Madeira, the Cape de Verd, or Canary islands, to take in wine for the use of their companies; in which case you are at liberty so to do, taking care to remain there no longer than may be necessary for that purpose; and on your arrival at the Cape of Good Hope, you are to refresh the sloops companies with as much provision and water as can be conveniently stowed.

“ If possible, you are to leave the Cape of Good Hope by the end of October, or beginning of November next, and proceed to the southward in search of some islands said to have been lately seen by the French, in the latitude 48 deg. south, and under, or near the meridian of Mauritius. In case you find those islands, you are to examine them thoroughly for a good harbour; and upon discovering one, make the necessary observations to facilitate the finding it again; as a good port, in that situation, may hereafter prove very useful, although it should afford nothing more than shelter, wood and water. You are not, however, to spend too much time in looking out for those islands, or in the examination of them, if found, but to proceed to Otaheite, or the Society Isles (touching at New Zealand in your way thither, if you should judge it necessary and convenient) and taking care to arrive there time enough to admit of your giving the sloops companies the refreshment they may stand in need of, before you prosecute the farther object of these instructions. Upon your arrival at Otaheite, or the Society Isles, you are to land Omai at such of them as he may choose, and to leave him there.

" You are to distribute among the chiefs of those islands such part of the presents with which you have been supplied, as you shall judge proper, reserving the remainder to distribute among the natives of the countries you may discover in the northern hemisphere : and having refreshed the people belonging to the sloops under your command, and taken on board such wood and water as they may respectively stand in need of, you are to leave those islands in the beginning of February, or sooner if you shall judge it necessary, and then to proceed in as direct a course as you can to the coast of New Albion, endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of 45 deg. N. and taking care in your way thither, not to lose any time in search of new lands, or to stop at any you may fall in with, unless you find it necessary to recruit your wood and water.

" You are also in your way thither, strictly enjoined not to touch upon any part of the Spanish dominions on the western continent of America, unless driven thither by some unavoidable accident ; in which case you are to stay no longer there than shall be absolutely necessary, and to be very careful not to give umbrage or offence to any of the inhabitants or subjects of his catholic majesty. And if, in your further progress to the northward, as hereafter directed, you find any subjects of any European prince or state upon any part of the coast you may think proper to visit, you are not to disturb them, or give them any just cause of offence, but on the contrary, to treat them with civility and friendship.

" Upon your arrival on the coast of New Albion, you are to put into the first convenient port to recruit your wood and water, and procure refreshments, and then to proceed northward along the coast, as far as the latitude of 65 deg. or farther, if you are not obstructed by lands or ice ; taking care not to lose any time in exploring rivers or inlets, or upon any other account, until you get in the before-mentioned latitude of 65 deg. where we could wish you to arrive

in the month of June next. When you get that length, you are very carefully to search for, and explore, such rivers, or inlets, as may appear of considerable extent, and pointing towards Hudson's, or Baffin's Bays, and if, from your own observations, or from information from the natives (who, there is reason to believe are the same race of people, and speak the same language, of which you are furnished with a vocabulary, as the Esquimaux) there shall appear to be a certainty, or even a probability of a water passage into the afore-mentioned bays, or either of them, you are, in such case, to use your utmost endeavours to pass through with one or both of the sloops, unless you shall be of opinion that the passage may be effected with more certainty, or with greater probability by smaller vessels; in which case you are to set up the frames of one or both the small vessels with which you are provided, and, when they are put together, and are properly fitted, stored, and victualled, you are to dispatch one or both of them, under the care of proper officers, with a sufficient number of petty-officers, men, and boats, in order to attempt the said passage; with such instructions for rejoining you, if they should fail, or for their farther proceedings, if they should succeed in the attempt, as you shall judge most proper. But, nevertheless, if you shall find it more eligible to pursue any other measures than those above pointed out, in order to make a discovery of the before-mentioned passage (if any such there be) you are at liberty; and we leave it to your discretion, to pursue such measures accordingly.

“ But, should you be satisfied that there is no passage through the bays, sufficient for the purposes of navigation, you are, at the proper season of the year, to repair to the port of St. Peter and St. Paul in Kamtschatka, or wherever else you shall judge more proper, in order to refresh your people and pass the winter; and in the spring of the ensuing year, 1778, to proceed from thence to the northward, as far as in your prudence, you may think proper, in further search

of a north-east, or north-west passage, from the Pacific Ocean, into the Atlantic, or north sea : and if, from your own observation, or any information you may receive, there shall appear to be a probability of such a passage, you are to proceed as above directed ; and having discovered such a passage, or failed in the attempt, make the best of your way back to England, by such route as you may think best for the improvement of geography and navigation ; repairing to Spithead with both sloops, where they are to remain till further orders.

“ And at whatever places you may touch in the course of your voyage, where accurate observations of the nature hereafter mentioned have not been made, you are, as far as your time will allow, very carefully to observe the situation of such places, both in latitude and longitude ; the variation of the needle ; bearings of head-lands ; height, direction, and course of the tides and currents ; depths and soundings of the sea ; shoals, rocks, &c. and also to survey, make charts, and take views of such bays, harbours, and different parts of the coast, and to make such notations thereon, as may be useful either to navigation or commerce. You are also carefully to observe the nature of the soil and the produce thereof ; the animals and fowls that inhabit or frequent it ; the fishes that are found in the rivers or upon the coasts, and in what plenty ; and in case there are any peculiar to such places, to describe them minutely, and to make as accurate drawings of them as you can : and, if you find any metals, minerals, or valuable stones, or any extraneous fossils, you are to bring home specimens of each ; as also of the seeds of such trees, shrubs, plants, fruits and grains, peculiar to those places, as you may be able to collect, and to transmit them to our secretary, that proper experiments and examination may be made of them. You are likewise to examine the genius, temper, disposition, and number of the natives and inhabitants, where you find any ; and to endeavour, by all proper means, to cultivate a friendship

with them, making them presents of such trinkets as you may have on board, and they may like best ; inviting them to traffic, and shewing them every kind of civility and regard ; but taking care, nevertheless, not to suffer yourself to be surprised by them, but to be always on your guard against any accidents.

“ You are also, with the consent of the natives, to take possession, in the name of the king of Great Britain, of convenient situations in such countries as you may discover, that have not already been discovered or visited by any other European power ; and to distribute among the inhabitants such things as will remain as traces and testimonies of your having been there ; but if you find the countries so discovered are uninhabited, you are to take possession of them for his majesty, by setting up proper marks and inscriptions, as first discoverers and possessors.

“ But forasmuch as, in undertakings of this nature, several emergencies may arise not to be foreseen, and therefore not particularly to be provided for by instructions before-hand ; you are , in such cases, to proceed as you shall judge most advantageous to the service on which you are employed : and you are, by all opportunities, to send to our secretary, for our information, accounts of your proceedings, and copies of the surveys and drawings you shall have made ; and upon your arrival in England, you are immediately to repair to this office, in order to lay before us a full account of your proceedings in the whole course of your voyage ; taking care before you leave the sloop, to demand from the officers and petty officers, the log-books and journals they may have kept, and to seal them up for our inspection ; and enjoining them and the whole crew, not to divulge where they have been, until they have permission so to do : and you are to direct Capt. Clerke to do the same, with respect to the officers, petty officers, and crew of the Discovery.

“ Should any accident happen to the Resolution, in the

course of the voyage, so as to disable her from proceeding any farther, you are, in such case, to remove yourself and her crew into the *Discovery*, and to prosecute your voyage in her; her commander being hereby strictly required to receive you on board, and to obey your orders, the same, in every respect, as when you were actually on board the *Resolution*: and, in case of your inability, by sickness or otherwise, to carry these instructions into execution, you are to be careful to leave them with the next officer in command, who is hereby required to execute them in the best manner he can.

“ The above instructions were given July the 6th, 1770, under the hands of the Earl of Sandwich, Lord C. Spencer, Sir H. Palliser; and, by command of their Lordships, signed Philip Stephens, secretary of the Admiralty.”

In order to carry this noble and extensive plan into execution, on February the 14th, 1776, the *Resolution* and *Discovery*, having been completely equipped in the dock at Deptford, were put into commission. Capt. Cook hoisted his pendant on board the former sloop; and the command of the *Discovery*, of three hundred tons burthen, which had been purchased into the service, was given to Capt. Clerke, who had been Capt. Cook's second lieutenant on board the *Resolution*, in his second voyage round the world. Both ships were well fitted out, and supplied abundantly with every article necessary for a long voyage; and on the 9th of June, while they lay in Long-reach, they had the satisfaction of a visit from the Earl of Sandwich, Sir Hugh Palliser, and others of the board of admiralty, to examine whether every thing had been completed pursuant to their orders, and to the convenience of those who were to embark. They honoured Capt. Cook with their company to dinner on that day; and were saluted on their coming on board, and on their going on shore, with seventeen guns and three cheers. To convey some permanent benefit to the inhabitants of Otaheite, and of the other islands which they might happen to

visit, his majesty ordered a supply of some useful animals, with hay and corn for their support. They were also furnished with a sufficient quantity of valuable European garden seeds, which might add fresh supplies of food to the vegetable productions of the newly discovered islands. They had also an extensive assortment of iron tools and trinkets, to facilitate a friendly commerce and intercourse with the inhabitants of such new countries as might be discovered. A variety of other articles, which might be conducive to health, comfort or convenience, were also added. Those at the head of the naval department were equally solicitous to render the voyage of public utility: to this end, a variety of astronomical and nautical instruments were, by the board of longitude, intrusted to Capt. Cook and Mr. King, his second lieutenant; they having engaged to supply the place of a professed observator. The board, likewise, put into their possession the time-keeper which Capt. Cook carried out in his last voyage and had performed so well. It was made by Mr. Kendal, and was a copy of Mr. Harrison's. Another time-piece, and the same assortment of astronomical and other instruments, were put on board the *Discovery*, for the use of Mr. William Bailey, who was engaged as an observator on board that sloop. Though several young men, among the sea-officers, were capable of being employed in constructing charts, drawing plans, and taking views of the coast, and head-lands, nevertheless, Mr. Webster was engaged to embark with Capt. Cook, for the purpose of supplying the defects of written accounts; by taking accurate and masterly drawings of the most memorable scenes and transactions. Mr. Anderson, likewise, surgeon to Capt. Cook, added to his professional abilities a great proficiency in natural history. He had already visited the South Sea Islands in the same ship, and enabled the captain to enrich his relation of his voyage with useful and valuable remarks. The vocabularies of the Friendly and Sandwich islands, and of the natives of Nootka, had been

furnished to the commander, by this his most useful associate : and a fourth, in which the language of the Esquimaux was compared with that of the American's on the opposite side of the continent, had been prepared by the captain himself. The confessed abilities, and great assiduity of Mr. Anderson, in observing every thing that related either to natural history, or to manners and language, and the desire that Capt. Cook, on all occasions, shewed to have the assistance of that gentleman, stamped a great value on his collections.

The Resolution had the same appointment of officers and men which she had in her former voyage ; and the establishment of the Discovery varied from that of the Adventure, in the single instance of her having no marine officer on board. This arrangement was finally completed at Plymouth, and on the 9th of July they received the party of marines allotted for the voyage. Omai, a native of the Society Isles, who had been brought to England by Capt. Furneaux on the preceding voyage, and who had been introduced into the higher ranks of society in London by the Earl of Sandwich, who was at that time first lord of the admiralty, and at whose house he resided, left his friends in London with a mixture of regret and satisfaction. When he reflected on the kindnesses he had received, he could not refrain from tears : but the pleasing idea of revisiting his original connections, soon made his eyes sparkle with joy.

As the original voyage, from which our historical account is abstracted, is written in the words of Capt. Cook, till his lamented death, and afterwards in those of Capt. King, who published the whole, we have, for many strong reasons, preferred giving the narrative in the same person, with occasional remarks ; and we trust our readers will see the propriety and advantage of our determination in this respect. Contrary winds, and other circumstances of little consequence, prevented the ships from clearing the channel till the 14th of July, 1776. On board both vessels were one hundred and ninety-two persons, officers included. Nothing

material happened till the 1st of August when we arrived off Teneriffe, one of the Canaries, where several of the gentlemen landed. It is said, that none of the aboriginal inhabitants remain here as a distinct people; but that the produce of their intermarriages with the Spaniards may still be traced in a strong and muscular race, dispersed over the islands.

On the 4th, we weighed anchor and proceeded on our voyage. At nine o'clock in the evening of the 10th, we saw the island of Bonavista, bearing south, distant little more than a league; though, at this time, we thought ourselves much farther off; but this proved a mistake. For, after hauling to the eastward till twelve o'clock, to clear the sunken rocks that lie about a league from the south-east point of the island, we found ourselves, at that time, close upon them, and did but just weather the breakers. Our situation, for a few moments, was very alarming. I did not choose to sound, as that might have heightened the danger, instead of lessening it. We had, for some days preceding the 6th of October, seen albatrosses, pintadoes, and other peterels; and now we saw three penguins, which occasioned us to sound; but we found no ground with a line of 150 fathoms

On the 8th, in the evening, one of those birds, which sailors call noddies, settled on our rigging, and was caught. It was something larger than an English blackbird, and nearly as black, except the upper part of the head, which was white, looking as if it were powdered; the whitest feathers growing out from the base of the upper bill, from which they gradually assumed a darker colour, to about the middle of the upper part of the neck, where the white shade was lost in the black, without being divided by any line. It was web-footed, had black legs, and a long black bill. It is said, these birds never fly far from land. We knew of none nearer the station we were in, than Gough's or Richmond's Island, from which our distance could not be less than 100

leagues. But it must be observed, that the Atlantic Ocean, to the southward of this latitude, has been but little frequented; so that there may be more islands there than we are acquainted with.

On the 18th of October, we arrived at the Cape of Good Hope, and found in the bay two French East India ships; the one outward and the other homeward bound. And two or three days before our arrival, another homeward bound ship, of the same nation, had parted from her cable, and been driven on shore at the head of the bay, where she was lost. The crew were saved: but the greatest part of the cargo shared the same fate with the ship, or was plundered and stolen by the inhabitants. This is the account the French officers gave me; and the Dutch themselves could not deny the facts; but, by way of excusing themselves from being guilty of a crime disgraceful to every civilized state, they endeavoured to lay the whole blame on the French captain, for not applying in time for a guard. As soon as we had saluted, I went on shore, accompanied by some of my officers, and waited on the governor, the lieutenant governor, the fiscal, and the commander of the troops. These gentlemen received me with the greatest civility; and the governor, in particular, promised me every assistance that the place afforded. At the same time, I obtained his leave to set up our observatory; to pitch tents for the sailmakers and coopers; and to bring the cattle on shore, to graze near our encampment. Before I returned on board, I ordered soft bread, fresh meat, and greens, to be provided, every day, for the ship's company.

Nothing remarkable happened till the evening of the 31st, when it began to blow excessively hard at south-east, and continued for three days; during which time there was no communication between the ship and the shore. The *Resolution* was the only ship in the bay that rode out the gale without dragging her anchors. We felt its effects as sensibly on shore. The tents and observatory were torn to

pieces ; and the astronomical quadrant narrowly escaped irreparable damage. On the 3d of November the storm ceased.

The Discovery having been detained some days at Plymouth, after the Resolution, did not arrive here till the 10th. Capt Clerke informed me that he had sailed from Plymouth on the 1st of August, and should have been with us a week sooner if the late gale of wind had not blown him off the coast. Upon the whole he was seven days longer in his passage from England than we had been. He had the misfortune to lose one of his marines, by falling overboard ; but there had been no other mortality among his people, and they now arrived well and healthy.

While the ships were getting ready, some of our officers made an excursion into the neighbouring country. Mr. Anderson, my surgeon, who was one of the party, gave me the following relation of their proceedings :

“ On the 16th, in the forenoon, I set out in a waggon, with five more, to take a view of some part of the country. We crossed the large plain that lies to the eastward of the town, which is entirely of white sand, like that commonly found on beaches, and produces only heath, and other small plants of various sorts. At five in the afternoon we passed a large farm house, with some corn fields, and pretty considerable vineyards, situated beyond the plain, at the foot of some low hills, where the soil becomes worth cultivating. Between six and seven we arrived at Stellenbosh, the colony next to the Cape for its importance. The village does not consist of more than thirty houses, and stands at the foot of the range of lofty mountains, above twenty miles to the eastward of Cape Town. The houses are neat ; and, with the advantage of a rivulet which runs near, and the shelter of some large oaks, forms a rural prospect in this desert country. There are some vineyards and orchards, which, from their thriving appearance, indicate an excellent soil ; though, perhaps, they owe much to climate, as the air has an un-

common serenity. I employed the next day in searching for plants and insects, but had little success. Few plants are in flower here at this season, and insects are scarce. I examined the soil in several places, and found it to consist of yellowish clay, mixed with a good deal of sand. We left Stellenbosh next morning, and arrived at the house we had passed on Saturday; the owner, Mr. Cloeder, had sent us an invitation to visit him. This gentleman entertained us with great hospitality. He received us with music, and a band also played while we were at dinner; which, considering the situation, might be reckoned elegant. He shewed us his wine cellars, orchards, and vineyards; all which inspired me with a wish to know how these industrious people could create such plenty, where, I believe, no other European nation would have attempted to settle. In the afternoon we crossed the country, and passed a few plantations, one of which seemed very considerable, and was laid out in a taste somewhat different from any other we saw. In the evening we arrived at a farm house, which is the first in the cultivated tract called the Pearl. We had, at the same time, a view of Drakenstein, the third colony, which lies at the foot of the lofty hills already mentioned, and contains several farms or plantations, not very extensive.

“ In the afternoon of the 19th, we went to see a stone of a remarkable size, called by the inhabitants the Tower of Babylon, or the Pearl Diamond. It stands upon the top of some low hills; and though the road to it is neither very steep nor rugged, we were above an hour and a half in walking to it. It is of an oblong shape, rounded on the top, and lies nearly south and north. The east and west sides are steep, and almost perpendicular. The south end is also steep, and its greatest height is there; whence it declines gently to the north part, by which we ascended to its top, and had an extensive view of the country. Its circumference, I think, must be at least half a mile; as it took us above half an hour to walk round it, including every allow-

ance for the bad road, and stopping a little. At its highest part, which is the south end, it seems equal to the dome of St. Paul's church. In descending, we found at its foot, a very rich black mould; and on the sides of the hills, some trees of a considerable size, natives of the place, which are a species of olea. In the morning of the 20th, we set out from the Pearl; and going a different road from that by which we came, passed through a country wholly uncultivated, till we got to the Tyger Hills, when some tolerable corn fields appeared. At noon, we stopped in a hollow for refreshment; but in walking about here, were plagued with a vast number of musquitoes or sand flies, which were the first I saw in this country."

Here I added to my original stock of live animals, by purchasing two young bulls, two heifers, two young stone horses, two mares, two rams, several ewes and goats, and some rabbits and poultry. All of them were intended for New Zealand, Otaheite, and the neighbouring islands, or any other place in the course of our voyage, where there might be a prospect that leaving any of them would be useful to posterity. Having given Capt. Clerke a copy of my instructions, and an order directing him how to proceed in case of separation, in the morning of the 30th, we repaired on board. At five in the afternoon we weighed, and stood out of the bay. We steered a south-east course, with a very strong gale from the westward, followed by a mountainous sea, which made the ship roll and tumble exceedingly, and gave us a great deal of trouble to preserve the cattle we had on board. Notwithstanding all our care, several goats, especially the males, died; and some sheep. This misfortune was, in a 'great measure, owing to the cold, which we now began most sensibly to feel.

Nothing very interesting happened from the 5th of December, till the 26th of January, when they arrived at Van Diemen's Land, where, as soon as they had anchored in Adventure Bay, Captain Cook says, I ordered the boats

to be hoisted out. In one of them I went myself to look for the most commodious place for furnishing ourselves with the necessary supplies ; and Capt. Clerke went in his boat upon the same service. Next morning early, I sent Lieutenant King to the east side of the bay, with two parties, one to cut wood and the other grass, under the protection of the marines. For although none of the natives had appeared, there could be no doubt that some were in our neighbourhood : I also sent the launch for water ; and afterwards, visited all the parties myself. In the evening, we drew the seine at the head of the bay, and, at one haul, caught a great quantity of fish. Most of them were of that sort known to seamen by the name of elephant fish. In the afternoon, next day, we were agreeably surprised, at the place we were cutting wood, with a visit from some of the natives ; eight men and a boy. They approached us from the woods, without betraying any marks of fear, for none of them had any weapons except one, who held in his hand a stick about two feet long, and pointed at one end. They were of common stature, but rather slender. Their skin was black, and also their hair, which was as woolly as that of any native of Guinea ; but they were not distinguished by remarkably thick lips, nor flat noses. On the contrary, their features were far from being disagreeable. Most of them had their hair and beards smeared with a red ointment ; and some had their faces also painted with the same composition. They received every present we made to them without the least appearance of satisfaction. When some bread was given, as soon as they understood that it was to be eaten, they either returned it or threw it away, without even tasting it. They also refused some elephant fish, both raw and dressed, which we offered to them. But upon giving them some birds, they did not return these, and easily made us comprehend that they were fond of such food. I had brought two pigs ashore, with a view to leave them in the woods. The instant these came within their reach, they

seized them as a dog would have done, by the ears, and were for carrying them off immediately, with no other intention, as we could perceive, but to kill them.

Being desirous of knowing the use of the stick which one of our visitors carried in his hand, I made signs to them to shew me ; and so far succeeded, that one of them set up a piece of wood as a mark, and threw at it, at the distance of about twenty yards. But we had little reason to commend his dexterity ; for, after repeated trials, he was still very wide from the object. Omai, to shew them how much superior our weapons were to theirs, then fired his musket at it ; which alarmed them so much, that notwithstanding all we could do or say, they ran instantly into the woods.

Thus ended our first interview with the natives. Immediately after their final retreat, I ordered the two pigs, being a boar and a sow, to be carried about a mile within the woods, at the head of the bay. I saw them left there, by the side of a fresh-water brook. A young bull and a cow, and some sheep and goats, were also, at first, intended to have been left by me, as an additional present to Van Diemen's Land. But I soon laid aside all thoughts of this, from a persuasion that the natives, incapable of entering into my views of improving their country, would destroy them.

The morning of the 29th we had a dead calm, which continued all day, and effectually prevented our sailing. I therefore sent a party over to the east point of the bay to cut grass, and another to cut wood. I accompanied the latter. We had observed several of the natives, this morning, sauntering along the shore, which assured us, that though their consternation had made them leave us so abruptly the day before, they were convinced that we intended them no mischief, and were desirous of renewing the intercourse. It was natural that I should wish to be present on the occasion. We had not been long landed, before about twenty of them, men and boys, joined us, without expressing the

least sign of fear and distrust. There was one of this company conspicuously deformed ; and who was not more distinguishable by the hump on his back, than by the drollery of his gestures, and the seeming humour of his speeches, which he was very fond of exhibiting, as we supposed, for our entertainment. His language appeared to me, to be different from that spoken by the inhabitants of the more northern parts of this country, whom I met with in my first voyage ; which is not extraordinary, since those we now saw, and those we then visited, differ in many other respects.

Some of our present group wore, loose, round their necks, three or four folds of small cord, made of the fur of some animal ; and others of them had a narrow slip of the kangoroo skin tied round their ankles. I gave to each of them a string of beads and a medal, which I thought they received with some satisfaction. They seemed to set no value on iron, or on iron tools. They were even ignorant of the use of fish-hooks, if we might judge from their manner of looking at some of ours, which we shewed to them, though it is certain they derive no inconsiderable part of their subsistence from the sea. We saw, however, no vessel in which they could go on the water. Their habitations were little sheds or hovels built of sticks, and covered with bark. After staying about an hour with the wooding party and the natives, I went over to the grass-cutters. Having seen the boats loaded, I returned on board to dinner ; where, some time after, Lieutenant King arrived. From him I learnt, that I had but just left the shore, when several women and children made their appearance. These females wore a kangoroo skin tied over the shoulders, and round the waist. But its only use seemed to be, to support their children when carried on their backs ; for in all other respects, they were as naked as the men, and as black, and their bodies tatooed in the same manner. But in this they differed from the men, that though their hair was of the

same colour, some of them had their heads completely shorn ; in others this operation had been performed only on one side, while the rest of them had all the upper part of the head shorn close, leaving a circle of hair all round, somewhat like the tonsure of the Romish ecclesiastics. Many of the children had fine features, and were thought pretty ; but of the persons of the women, especially those advanced in years, a less favourable report was made.

Mr. Anderson, with his usual diligence, spent the few days we remained in Adventure Bay, in examining the country. His account of its natural productions, with which he favoured me, will more than compensate for my silence about them ; and some of his remarks on the inhabitants, will supply what I may have omitted or represented imperfectly. The only animal of the quadruped kind we got, was a sort of opossum, about twice the size of a large rat. It is of a dusky colour above, tinged with a brown or rusty cast, and whitish below. About a third of the tail towards its tip, is white, and bare underneath, by which it probably hangs on the branches of trees, as it climbs these, and lives on berries. The kangaroo, another animal found farther northward in New Holland, without doubt also inhabits here, as the natives we met with had some pieces of their skins ; and we several times saw an animal, though indistinctly, run from the thickets when we walked in the woods, which, from the size, could be no other.

There are several sorts of birds, but all so scarce and shy, that they are evidently harassed by the natives, who, perhaps, draw much of their subsistence from them. In the woods, the principal sorts are large brown hawks or eagles ; crows, nearly the same as ours in England ; yellowish parrots ; and large pigeons. There are also three or four small birds, one of which is of the thrush kind. On the shore were several common and sea gulls ; a few black oyster-catchers, or sea-pies, and a pretty plover of a stone colour, with a black hood. About the lake, behind the

beach, a few wild ducks were seen ; and some shags used to perch upon the high leafless trees, near the shore. The sea affords a much greater plenty, and at least as great a variety, as the land. Of these the elephant fish, or pejegallo, are the most numerous ; and though inferior to many other fish, were very palatable food. Next in number, and superior in goodness to the elephant fish, was a sort none of us recollected to have seen before. It partakes of the nature both of a round and of a flat fish, having the eyes placed very near each other ; the fore part of the body very much flattened or depressed, and the rest rounded. It is of a brownish sandy colour, with rusty spots on the upper part, and below. From the quantity of slime it was always covered with, it seems to live after the manner of flat fish at the bottom. Upon the rocks are plenty of muscles, and some other small shell-fish. There are also great numbers of sea-stars ; some small limpets ; and large quantities of sponge ; one sort of which, that is thrown on shore by the sea, but not very common, has a most delicate texture. Insects, though not numerous, are here in considerable variety. Among them are grasshoppers, butterflies, and several sorts of small moths, finely variegated. There are two sorts of dragon-flies, gad-flies, camel-flies, several sorts of spiders, and some scorpions ; but the last are rather rare. The most troublesome, though not very numerous tribe of insects, are the mosquitoes ; and a large black ant, the pain of whose bite is almost intolerable, during the short time it lasts.

The inhabitants whom we met with here, had little of that fierce and wild appearance common to people in their situation ; but, on the contrary, seemed mild and cheerful, without reserve or jealousy of strangers. With respect to their personal activity or genius, they do not seem to possess the first in any remarkable degree ; and as for the last, they have, to appearance, less than even the half-animated inhabitants of Terra del Fuego, who have not

invention sufficient to make clothing for defending themselves from the rigour of their climate, though furnished with the materials. Their colour is a dull black, and not quite so deep as that of the African negroes. Their hair, however, is perfectly woolly, and it is clotted or divided into small parcels, like that of the Hottentots, with the use of some sort of grease, mixed with a red paint or oebre, which they smear in great abundance over their heads. Their noses, though not flat, are broad and full, their eyes are of a middling size, with the white less clear than in us; and though not remarkably quick or piercing, such as give a frank cheerful cast to the whole countenance. Their mouths are rather wide; but this appearance seems heightened by wearing their beards long, and clotted with paint, in the same manner as the hair on their heads.

At eight o'clock in the morning of the 30th of January, a light breeze springing up at west, we weighed anchor, and put to sea from Adventure Bay. We pursued our course to the eastward, without meeting with any thing worthy of note, till the night between the 6th and 7th of February, when a marine belonging to the *Discovery* fell overboard and was never seen afterwards. On the 16th of February, at four in the afternoon, we discovered the land of New Zealand; and soon after came to an anchor in Queen Charlotte Sound. Here several canoes, filled with natives, came along-side of the ships; but very few of them would venture on board; which appeared the more extraordinary, as I was well known by them all. There was one man in particular among them whom I had treated with remarkable kindness, during the whole of my stay when I was last here. Yet now, neither professions of friendship, nor presents, could prevail upon him to come into the ship. This shyness was to be accounted for only on this supposition, that they were apprehensive we had revisited their country in order to revenge the death of Capt. Furneaux's people.

On the 18th, we set up two tents, one from each ship, on

the same spot where we had pitched them formerly. The observatories were at the same time erected ; and Messrs. King and Bayley began their operations immediately. During the course of this day a great number of families came from different parts of the coast, and took up their residence close to us ; so that there was not a spot in the cove where a hut could be put up, that was not occupied by them, except the place where we had fixed our little encampment. It is curious to observe with what facility they build their little huts. I have seen above twenty of them erected on a spot of ground, that, not an hour before, was covered with shrubs and plants. They generally bring some part of the materials with them, the rest they find upon the premises. I was present when a number of people landed, and built one of these villages.

Besides the natives who took up their abode close to us, we were occasionally visited by others of them, whose residence was not far off ; and by some who lived more remote. Their articles of commerce were, curiosities, fish, and women. The two first always came to a good market ; which the latter did not. The seamen had taken a kind of dislike to these people ; and were either unwilling, or afraid, to associate with them ; which produced this good effect, that I knew no instance of a man's quitting his station to go to their habitations. Amongst our occasional visitors, was a chief named Kahoora, who, as I was informed, headed the party that cut off Capt. Furneaux's people, and himself killed Mr. Rowe, the officer who commanded. To judge of the character of Kahoora, by what I had heard from many of his countrymen, he seemed to be more feared than beloved among them. Not satisfied with telling me that he was a very bad man, some of them even importuned me to kill him ; and, I believe, they were not a little surprised that I did not listen to them ; for according to their ideas of equity, this ought to have been done. If I had followed the advice of all our pretended friends, I might have extirpated the

whole race ; for the people of each hamlet or village, by turns, applied to me to destroy the other.

On the 16th, at day break, I set out with a party of men, in five boats, to collect food for our cattle. Capt. Clerke, and several of the officers, Omai, and two of the natives, accompanied me. We proceeded about three leagues up the sound, and then landed on the east side, at a place where I had formerly been. Here we cut as much grass as loaded the two launches. As we returned down the sound, we visited Grass Cove, the memorable scene of the massacre of Capt. Furneaux's people. Whilst we were at this place, our curiosity prompted us to enquire into the circumstances attending the melancholy fate of our countrymen ; and Omai was made use of as our interpreter for this purpose. The natives present answered all the questions that were put to them on the subject without reserve, and like men who are under no dread of punishment for a crime of which they are not guilty ; for we already knew that none of them had been concerned in the unhappy transaction. They told us, that while our people were sitting at dinner, surrounded by several of the natives, some of the latter stole, or snatched from them, some bread and fish, for which they were beat. This being resented, a quarrel ensued, and two New Zealanders were shot dead, by the only two muskets that were fired ; for before our people had time to discharge a third, or to load again those that had been fired, the natives rushed in upon them, overpowered them with their numbers, and put them all to death. We stayed here till the evening, when, having loaded the rest of the boats with grass, celery, and scurvy-grass, we embarked to return to the ships ; where some of the boats did not arrive till one o'clock the next morning ; and it was fortunate that they got on board then, for it afterwards blew a perfect storm. In the evening the gale ceased, and the wind having veered to the east, brought with it fair weather.

By this time more than two thirds of the inhabitants of

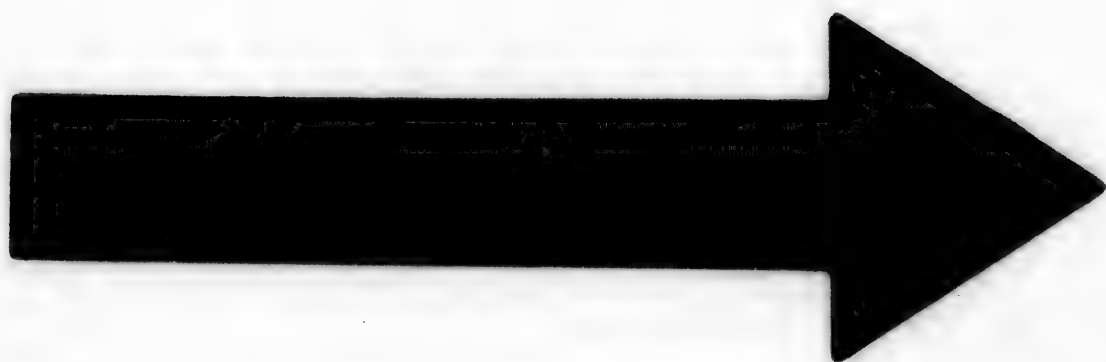
the Sound had settled themselves about us. Great numbers of them daily frequented the ships, while our people were there melting some seal blubber. No Greenlander was ever fonder of train-oil, than our friends here seemed to be. They relished the very skimmings of the kettle; but a little of the pure stinking oil was a delicious feast. Having got on board as much hay and grass as we judged sufficient to serve the cattle till our arrival at Otaheite, and having completed the wood and water of both ships, on the 24th we weighed anchor, and stood out of the cove. While we were unmooring and getting under sail, many of the natives came to take their leave of us, or rather to obtain, if they could, some additional presents from us before we left them. Accordingly, I gave to two of their chiefs, two pigs, a boar and a sow. They made me a promise not to kill them; though I must own I put no great faith in this. The animals which Capt. Furneaux sent on shore here, and which soon after fell into the hands of the natives, I was now told, were all dead; but I was afterwards informed, that Tiratou, a chief, had a great many cocks and hens in his possession, and one of the sows.

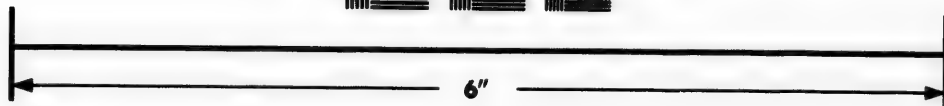
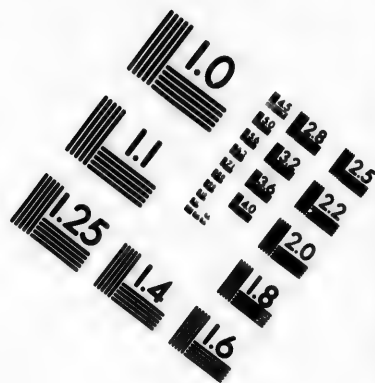
We had not been long at anchor near Motuara, before three or four canoes, filled with natives, came off to us from the south-east side of the Sound; and a brisk trade was carried on with them for the curiosities of this place. In one of these canoes was Kahoora. This was the third time he had visited us, without betraying the smallest appearance of fear. Next morning, he returned again with his whole family, men, women, and children, to the number of twenty and upwards. Omai was the first who acquainted me with his being along-side the ship, and desired to know if he should ask him to come on board. I told him he might; and accordingly he introduced the chief into the cabin, saying, "There is Kahoora; kill him!" He afterwards expostulated with me very earnestly, "Why do you not kill him! You tell me, if a man kills another in England,

that he is hanged for it. This man has killed ten, and yet you will not kill him ; though many of his countrymen desire it ; and it would be very good." Omai's arguments, though specious enough, having no weight with me, I desired him to ask the chief why he had killed Capt. Furneaux's people ? At this question, Kahoorā folded his arms, hung down his head, and looked like one caught in a trap ; and I firmly believe he expected instant death. But no sooner was he assured of his safety, than he became cheerful. He did not, however, seem willing to give me an answer to the question that had been put to him, till I had, again and again, repeated my promise that he should not be hurt. Then he ventured to tell us, that one of his countrymen having brought a stone hatchet to barter, the man to whom it was offered took it, and would neither return it, nor give any thing for it ; on which the owner of it snatched up the bread as an equivalent ; and then the quarrel began.

For some time before we arrived at New Zealand, Omai had expressed a desire to take one of the natives with him to his own country. We had not been there many days, before a youth, about seventeen or eighteen years of age, named Taweharōoa, offered to accompany him. Finding that he was fixed in his resolution to go with us, and having learnt that he was the only son of a deceased chief, I told his mother that, in all probability, he would never return : but this made no impression on either ; for when she returned the next morning, to take her last farewell of him, all the time she was on board she remained quite cheerful, and went away wholly unconcerned. Another youth, about ten years of age, accompanied him as a servant, named Kokoa ; he was presented to me by his own father, who stripped him, and left him naked as he was born ; indeed, he seemed to part with him with perfect indifference.

From my own observations, and from the information of Taweharōoa and others, it appears to me that the New Zealanders must live under perpetual apprehensions of being





Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

18
20
22
25
28
32
36
40
45
50
56
63
72
84
96
108
125
144
168
196
225
256
288
324
360
400
450
504
560
624
696
776
864
960
1080
1200
1344
1500
1680
1872
2080
2304
2544
2800
3072
3360
3672
4000
4352
4728
5120
5536
5968
6416
6880
7360
7856
8376
8912
9472
10056
10664
11296
11952
12632
13336
14064
14816
15592
16392
17216
18064
18936
19832
20752
21696
22664
23656
24672
25712
26776
27864
28976
30112
31272
32456
33664
34896
36152
37432
38736
40064
41416
42792
44192
45616
47064
48536
49936
51360
52800
54256
55736
57240
58768
60320
61896
63496
65120
66760
68416
70096
71800
73528
75280
77056
78856
80680
82528
84400
86304
88232
90184
92160
94160
96184
98232
100304
102400
104520
106656
108816
110992
113184
115392
117616
119856
122112
124384
126672
128976
131296
133632
135984
138352
140736
143136
145552
147984
150432
152896
155376
157872
160384
162912
165456
168016
170592
173184
175792
178416
181056
183712
186384
189072
191776
194496
197232
200000
202792
205600
208424
211264
214120
216992
219880
222784
225704
228640
231592
234560
237544
240544
243560
246592
249640
252704
255784
258880
261992
265120
268264
271424
274592
277776
280976
284192
287424
290672
293936
297216
300512
303824
307152
310496
313856
317232
320624
324032
327456
330896
334352
337824
341312
344816
348336
351872
355424
358992
362576
366176
369792
373424
377072
380736
384416
388112
391824
395552
399296
403056
406832
410624
414432
418256
422096
425952
429824
433712
437616
441536
445472
449424
453392
457376
461376
465392
469424
473472
477536
481616
485712
489824
493952
498096
502256
506432
510624
514832
519056
523296
527552
531824
536112
540416
544736
549072
553424
557792
562176
566576
570992
575424
579872
584336
588816
593312
597824
602352
606896
611456
616032
620624
625232
629856
634496
639152
643832
648528
653240
657968
662712
667472
672248
677040
681848
686672
691512
696368
701240
706128
711032
715952
720888
725840
730808
735792
740792
745808
750840
755888
760952
766032
771128
776240
781368
786512
791672
796848
802040
807248
812472
817712
822968
828240
833528
838832
844152
849488
854840
860208
865592
870992
876408
881840
887288
892752
898232
903728
909240
914768
920312
925872
931448
937040
942648
948272
953912
959568
965240
970928
976632
982352
988088
993840
1000000

10
01

destroyed by each other ; there being few of their tribes that have not, as they think, sustained wrongs from some other tribe, which they are continually upon the watch to revenge. A New Zealander is never off his guard either by night or by day ; indeed, no one can have more powerful motives to be vigilant ; for, according to their system of belief, the soul of the man whose flesh is devoured by the enemy, is doomed to a perpetual fire ; whilst the soul of the man whose body has been rescued from those who killed him, as well as the souls of all who die a natural death, ascend to the habitations of the gods.

Polygamy is allowed amongst these people ; and it is not uncommon for a man to have two or three wives. The women are marriageable at a very early age ; and it should seem, that one who is unmarried is but in a forlorn state. Their public contentions are frequent, or rather perpetual ; for it appears, from their number of weapons, and dexterity in using them, that war is their principal profession. Before they begin the onset, they join in a war-song, to which they all keep the exactest time, and soon raise their passions to a degree of frantic fury, attended with the most horrid distortion of their eyes, mouths, and tongues, to strike terror into their enemies ; which to those who have not been accustomed to such a practice, makes them appear more like demons than men, and would almost chill the boldest with fear. To this succeeds a circumstance, almost foretold in their fierce demeanour, horrid, cruel and disgraceful to human nature ; which is, cutting in pieces, even before being perfectly dead, the bodies of their enemies, and, after dressing them on a fire, devouring the flesh, not only without reluctance, but with peculiar satisfaction.

On the 25th of February, we sailed from New Zealand, and had no sooner lost sight of the land, than our two young adventurers repented heartily of the step they had taken. All the soothing encouragement we could think of, availed but little. They wept both in public and private ; and

made their lamentations in a kind of song, which was expressive of the praises of their country. Thus they continued for many days ; but at length their native country and their friends were forgot, and they appeared to be as firmly attached to us, as if they had been born amongst us.

On the 29th of March, as we were standing to the north-east, the Discovery made the signal of seeing land, which we soon discovered to be an island of no great extent. On approaching the shore, we could perceive with our glasses that several of the natives were armed with long spears and clubs, which they brandished in the air with signs of threatening ; or, as some on board interpreted their attitudes, with invitations to land. Most of them appeared naked, except having a sort of girdle, which, being brought up between the thighs, covered that part of the body. But some of them had pieces of cloth of different colours, white, striped, or chequered, which they wore as a garment thrown about their shoulders ; and almost all of them had a white wrapper about their heads, not much unlike a turban. They were of a tawny colour, and of a middling stature. At this time a small canoe was launched in a great hurry from the further end of the beach, and putting off with two men, paddled towards us, when I brought to. They stopped short, however, as if afraid to approach, until Omai, who addressed them in the Otaheitean language, in some measure quieted their apprehensions. They then came near enough to take some beads and nails, which were tied to a piece of wood, and thrown into the canoe. Omai, perhaps improperly, put the question to them, whether they ever eat human flesh ? which they answered in the negative, with a mixture of indignation and abhorrence. One of them, whose name was Mourooa, being asked how he came by a scar on his forehead, told us that it was the consequence of a wound he had got in fighting with the people of an island, which lies to the north eastward, who sometimes came to invade

them. They afterwards took hold of a rope. Still, however, they would not venture on board.

Mourooa was lusty and well made, but not very tall. His features were agreeable, and his disposition seemingly no less so ; for he made several droll gesticulations, which indicated both good-nature and a share of humour. His colour was nearly of the same cast with that common to the most southern Europeans. The other man was not so handsome. Both of them had strong straight hair, of a jet colour, tied together on the crown of the head with a bit of cloth. They wore girdles of a substance made from the *morus papyrifera*, in the same manner as at the other islands of this ocean. They had on a kind of sandals, made of a grassy substance interwoven ; and, as we supposed, intended to defend their feet against the rough coral rock. Their beards were long, and the inside of their arms, from the shoulder to the elbow, and some other parts, were punctured or tattooed, after the manner of the inhabitants of almost all the other islands in the South Sea. The lobe of their ears was slit to such a length, that one of them stuck there a knife and some beads, which he had received from us ; and the same person had two polished pearl shells, and a bunch of human hair, loosely twisted, hanging about his neck, which was the only ornament we observed. The canoe they came in was not above ten feet long, and very narrow ; but both strong and neatly made. They paddled either end of it forward indifferently.

We now stood off and on ; and as soon as the ships were in a proper station, I ordered two boats to sound the coast, and to endeavour to find a landing place. With this view, I went in one of them myself, taking with me such articles to give the natives, as I thought might serve to gain their good-will. I had no sooner put off from the ship, than the canoe, with the two men, which had not left us long before, paddled towards my boat ; and, having come along-side, Mourooa stepped into her, without being asked, and without a moment's hesitation.

Omai, who was with me, was ordered to enquire of him where we could land ; and he directed us to two different places. But I saw, with regret, that the attempt could not be made at either place, unless at the risk of having our boats filled with water, or even staved to pieces. Nor were we more fortunate in our search for anchorage ; for we could find no bottom till within a cable's length of the breakers.

While we were thus employed in reconnoitering the shore, great numbers of the natives thronged down upon the reef, all armed. Mourooa, who was now in my boat, probably thinking that this warlike appearance hindered us from landing, ordered them to retire back. As many of them complied, I judged he must be a person of some consequence among them. Indeed, if we understood him right, he was the king's brother. So great was the curiosity of several of them, that they took to the water, and swimming off to the boats, came on board them without reserve. Nay, we found it difficult to keep them out ; and still more difficult to prevent them carrying off every thing they could lay their hands upon. At length, when they perceived that we were returning to the ships, they all left us, except our original visitor Mourooa. He, though not without evident signs of fear, kept his place in my boat, and accompanied me on board the ship.

The cattle, and other new objects, that presented themselves to him there, did not strike him with much surprise. Perhaps his mind was too much taken up about his own safety, to allow him to attend to other things. I could get but little information from him ; and therefore, after he had made a short stay, I ordered a boat to carry him in toward the land. As soon as he got out of the cabin, he happened to stumble over one of the goats. His curiosity now overcoming his fear, he stopped, looked at it, and asked Omai what bird this was ? and not receiving an immediate answer from him, he repeated the question to some of the people

upon deck. The boat having conveyed him pretty near to the surf, he leaped into the sea, and swam ashore. He had no sooner landed, than a multitude of his countrymen gathered round him, as if with an eager curiosity to learn from him what he had seen ; and in this situation they remained, when we lost sight of them.

After leaving Mangeea, as this island was called, on the afternoon of the 30th, we continued our course northward all that night, and till noon on the 31st ; when we again saw land, in the direction of north-east by north, distant eight or ten leagues ; and next morning we got abreast of its north end. I sent three armed boats to look for anchoring-ground, and a landing-place. In the mean time, we plyed up under the island with the ships. Just as the boats were putting off, we observed several single canoes coming from the shore. They went first to the *Discovery*, she being the nearest ship. Not long after, three of the canoes came along-side the *Resolution*, each conducted by one man. They are long and narrow, and supported by outriggers. Some knives, beads, and other trifles, were conveyed to our visitors ; and they gave us a few cocoa-nuts, upon our asking for them. But they did not part with them by way of exchange for what they had received from us, for they seemed to have no idea of bartering ; nor did they appear to estimate any of our presents at a high rate. With a little persuasion, one of them came on board ; and the other two, encouraged by his example, soon followed him. Their whole behaviour marked that they were quite at their ease.

After their departure, another canoe arrived, conducted by a man who brought a bunch of plantains as a present to me ; asking for me by name, having learnt it from Omai, who was sent before us in a boat, with Mr. Gore. In return for this civility, I gave an axe and a piece of red cloth ; and he paddled back to the shore well satisfied. I afterward understood from Omai, that this present was sent from the king, or principal chief of the island. Not long after a dou-

ble canoe, in which were twelve men, came towards us. As they drew near the ship, they recited some words in concert, by way of chorus, one of their number first standing up, and giving the word before each repetition. When they had finished their solemn chaunt, they came along-side, and asked for the chief: as soon as I shewed myself, a pig, and a few cocoa-nuts were conveyed up into the ship; and the principal person in the canoe made me an additional present of a piece of matting. Our visitors were conducted into the cabin, and to other parts of the ship. Some objects seemed to strike them with a degree of surprise; but nothing fixed their attention for a moment. They were afraid to come near the cows and horses; nor did they form the least conception of their nature. But the sheep and goats did not surpass the limits of their ideas; for they gave us to understand that they knew them to be birds. I made a present to my new friend of what I thought would be most acceptable to him; but on his going away he seemed rather disappointed than pleased. I afterwards understood that he was very desirous of obtaining a dog, of which animal this island could not boast.

The people in these canoes were in general of a middling size, and not unlike those of Mangeea; though several were of a blacker cast than any we saw there. Their features were various, and some of the young men rather handsome. Like those of Mangeea, they had girdles of glazed cloth, or fine matting, the ends of which being brought betwixt the thighs, covered the adjoining parts. Ornaments composed of a sort of broad grass, stained with red, and strung with berries of the night-shade, were worn round their necks. Their ears were bored, but not slit; and they were punctured upon their legs, from the knee to the heel, which made them appear as though they wore a kind of boots. Their behaviour was frank and cheerful, with a great deal of good nature. Soon after day-break, we saw some canoes coming off to the ships; one of them directed its course to the Reso-

lution. In it was a hog, with some plantains and cocoa-nuts, for which the people who brought them demanded a dog, and refused every other thing that we offered in exchange. To gratify these people Omai parted with a favourite dog he had brought from England; and with this acquisition they departed highly satisfied.

I dispatched Lieut. Gore with three boats, two from the *Resolution*, and one from the *Discovery*. Two of the natives, who had been on board, accompanied him, and Omai went with him in his boat as an interpreter. The ships being a full league from the island when the boats put off, it was noon before we could work up to it. We then perceived a prodigious number of the natives abreast of the boats. In order to observe their motions, and to be ready to give such assistance as our people might want, I kept as near the shore as was prudent. Some of the islanders now and then came off to the ships in their canoes, with a few cocoa-nuts, which they exchanged for any thing that was offered to them. These occasional visits served to lessen my solicitude about the people who had landed. Though we could get no information from our visitors, yet their venturing on board seemed to imply, at least, that their countrymen on shore had not made an improper use of the confidence put in them. At length, a little before sun-set, we had the satisfaction of seeing the boats put off. When they got on board, I found that Mr Gore himself, Omai, Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Burney, were the only persons who had landed. The transactions of the day were now fully reported to me by Mr. Anderson. I shall give them nearly in his words. "We rowed towards a small sandy beach, on which a great number of the natives had assembled. Several of the natives swam off, bringing cocoa-nuts; and Omai, with their countrymen, whom we had with us in the boats, made them sensible of our wish to land. Mr. Burney, the first lieutenant of the *Discovery*, and I, went in one canoe, a little time before the other; and our conductors, watching attentively

the motions of the surf, landed us safely upon the reef. An islander took hold of each of us, obviously with an intention of supporting us in walking over the rugged rocks to the beach, where several of the others met us, holding the green boughs of a species of mimosa in their hands, and saluting us by applying their noses to ours. We were conducted from the beach amidst a crowd of people, who flocked with very eager curiosity to look at us. We were then led up an avenue of cocoa-palms ; and soon came to a number of men, arranged in two rows, armed with clubs. After walking a little way amongst these, we found a person who seemed a chief, sitting on the ground cross legged, cooling himself with a sort of fan, made from a leaf of the cocoa-palm. In his ears were large bunches of beautiful red feathers ; but he had no other mark to distinguish him from the rest of the people, though they all obeyed him. We proceeded still amongst the men armed with clubs, and came to a second chief, who sat fanning himself, and ornamented as the first. In the same manner we were conducted to a third chief, who seemed older than the two former. He also was sitting, and adorned with red feathers ; and after saluting him as we had done the others, he desired us both to sit down. In a few minutes we saw about twenty young women, ornamented as the chiefs, with red feathers, engaged in a dance, which they performed to a slow and serious air, sung by them all. We got up and went forward, to see them ; and though we must have been strange objects to them, they continued their dance without paying the least attention to us. Their motions and their song were performed in exact concert. In general, they were rather stout than slender, with black hair flowing in ringlets down the neck, and of an olive complexion. Their eyes were of a deep black, and each countenance expressed a degree of complacency and modesty, peculiar to the sex in every part of the world ; but perhaps more conspicuous here, where nature presented us with her productions in the fullest per-

section, unbiassed in sentiment by custom, or unrestrained in manner by art. The natives now seemed to take some pains to separate us from each other, every one having his circle to surround and gaze at him ; and when I told the chief with whom I sat, that I wanted to speak to Omai, he peremptorily refused my request. At the same time I found that the people began to steal several trifling things which I had in my pocket ; and when I took the liberty of complaining to the chief of this treatment, he justified it. From these circumstances, I now entertained apprehensions, that they might have formed the design of detaining us amongst them.

“ Mr. Barney happening to come to the place where I was, I mentioned my suspicions to him ; and, to put it to the test, whether they were well founded, we attempted to get to the beach. But we were stopped, when about half way, by some men, who told us that we must go back to the place which we had left. On coming up, we found Omai entertaining the same apprehensions. But he had, as he fancied, an additional reason for being afraid ; for he had observed that they had dug a hole in the ground for an oven, which they were now heating ; and he could assign no other reason for this, than that they meant to roast, and eat us, as is practised by the inhabitants of New Zealand.

In this manner we were detained the greatest part of the day, being sometimes together and sometimes separated, but always in a crowd ; who, not satisfied with gazing at us, frequently desired us to uncover parts of our skin, the sight of which commonly produced a general murmur of admiration. Upon our urging the business we came upon, they gave us to understand, that we must stay and eat with them ; and a pig which we saw, soon after, lying near the oven, which they had prepared and heated, removed Omai's apprehensions of being put into it himself, and made us think it might be intended for our repast. A piece of the young hog that had been dressed, was set before us, of

which we were desired to eat. Our appetites however had failed, from the fatigue of the day; and though we did eat a little to please them, it was without satisfaction to ourselves. It being now near sun-set, we told them it was time to go on board. This they allowed; and sent down to the beach the remainder of the victuals that had been dressed, to be carried with us to the ships. They put us on board our boats, with the cocoa-nuts, plantains, and other provisions, which they had brought; and we rowed to the ships, very well pleased that we had at last got out of the hands of our troublesome masters. We regretted much, that our restrained situation gave us so little opportunity of making observations on the country. For, during the whole day, we were seldom a hundred yards from the place where we were introduced to the chiefs, on landing; and, consequently, were confined to the surrounding objects. The first thing that presented itself, worthy of our notice, was the number of people; which must have been at least two thousand. In general, they had their hair tied on the crown of the head, long, black, and of a most luxuriant growth. Many of the young men were perfect models in shape, of a complexion as delicate as that of the women, and, to appearance, of a disposition as amiable. The wife of one of the chiefs appeared with her child, laid in a piece of red cloth, which had been presented to her husband; and seemed to carry it with great tenderness, suckling it much after the manner of our women. Another chief introduced his daughter, who was young and beautiful; but appeared with all the timidity natural to the sex, though she gazed on us with a kind of anxious concern, that seemed to struggle with her fear, and to express her astonishment at so unusual a sight.

“About a third part of the men were armed with clubs and spears. The clubs were generally about six feet long, made of hard black wood, lance-shaped at the end, but much broader, with the edge nicely scolloped, and the whole neatly polished.

"What the soil of the island may be, farther inland, we could not tell ; but, toward the sea, it is nothing more than a bank of coral, ten or twelve feet high, steep and rugged ; except where there are small sandy beaches, at some clefts where the ascent is gradual. The reef or rock, that lines the shore entirely, runs to different breadths into the sea, where it ends, all at once, and becomes like a high wall."

Though the landing of our gentlemen has proved the means of enriching my journal with the foregoing particulars, the principal object I had in view was, in a great measure, unattained ; for the day was spent without getting any one thing from the island worth mentioning. The natives, however, were gratified with a sight they never before had, and probably will never have again. And mere curiosity seems to have been the motive for keeping the gentlemen under such restraint, and for using every art to prolong their continuance amongst them.

Omai was Mr. Gore's interpreter ; but that was not the only service he performed this day : he was asked by the natives a great many questions concerning us ; and according to the account he gave me, his answers were not a little upon the marvellous. As, for instance, he told them, that our country had ships as large as their island ; on board which were instruments of war, of such dimensions, that several people might sit within them ; and that one of these was sufficient to crush the whole island at one shot. This led them to enquire what sort of guns we actually had in our two ships. He said, that though they were but small, in comparison with those he had just described, yet, with such as they were, we could, with the greatest ease, and at the distance the ships were from the shore, destroy the island, and kill every soul in it. They persevered in their enquiries, to know by what means this could be done ; and Omai explained the matter as well as he could. He happened luckily to have a few cartridges in his pocket. These he produced ; the balls, and the gunpowder which was to set them in motion,

were submitted to inspection ; and to supply the defects of his description, an appeal was made to the senses of the spectators. In the centre of a circle formed by the natives, the inconsiderable quantity of gunpowder, collected from his cartridges, was properly disposed upon the ground, and, by means of a bit of burning wood from the oven where dinner was dressing, set on fire. The sudden blast, and loud report, the mingled flame and smoke that instantly succeeded, now filled the whole assembly with astonishment ; they no longer doubted the tremendous power of our weapons, and gave full credit to all Omai had said. This probably induced them to liberate the gentlemen.

Omai found three of his countrymen here ; their story is an affecting one, as related by him. About twenty persons had embarked on board a canoe at Otaheite, to cross over to the neighbouring island, Ulieten. A violent contrary wind arising, they could neither reach the latter, nor get back to the former. The intended passage being a very short one, their stock of provisions was very scanty, and soon exhausted. The hardships they suffered, while driven along by the storm, are not to be conceived. They passed many days without sustenance. Their numbers gradually diminished, worn out by famine and fatigue. Four only survived, when the canoe upset ; however they kept hanging by the side of the vessel, till Providence brought them in sight of the people of this island, who immediately sent out canoes, and brought them ashore. Of the four, one was since dead. The other three still living, spoke highly of the treatment they here met with. And so well satisfied were they with their situation, that they refused the offer made to them by our gentlemen, at Omai's request, of giving them a passage on board our ships, to restore them to their native islands. This will serve to explain, better than a thousand conjectures of speculators, how the detached parts of the earth, and in particular how the islands of the South

Seas, may have been first peopled ; especially those that lie remote from any inhabited continent, or from each other.

With a gentle breeze at east, we got up with Wateooo on the 3d of April, and I immediately dispatched Mr. Gore, with two boats, to endeavour to procure some food for our cattle. As there seemed to be no inhabitants here to obstruct our taking away whatever we might think proper, our boats no sooner reached the west side of the island, but they ventured in, and Mr. Gore and his party got safe on shore. The supply obtained here, consisted of about a hundred cocoa-nuts for each ship ; we also got for our cattle some grass, and a quantity of leaves and branches of young cocoa-trees, and of the wharra tree, as it is called at Otaheite. Though there were, at this time, no fixed inhabitants upon the island, indubitable marks remained of its being, at least, occasionally frequented. In particular, a few empty huts were found. In one of them, Mr. Gore left a hatchet and some nails, to the value of what we took away.

As soon as the boats were hoisted in, I made sail again to the northward. Although Hervey's Island, discovered in 1773, was not above fifteen leagues distant, yet we did not get sight of it till day-break in the morning. As we drew near it, we observed several canoes put off towards the ships. There were from three to six men in each of them. They stopped at the distance of about a stone's throw from the ship, and it was some time before Omai could prevail upon them to come along-side ; but no entreaties could induce any of them to venture on board. Indeed, their disorderly and clamorous behaviour, by no means indicated a disposition to trust us, or treat us well. We afterwards learnt, that they had attempted to take some oars out of the Discovery's boat that lay along-side, and struck a man who endeavoured to prevent them. They also cut away, with a shell, a net with meat, which hung over that ship's stern, and absolutely refused to restore it ;

though we afterwards purchased it of them. Those who were about our ship, behaved in the same daring manner. At the same time, they immediately shewed a knowledge of bartering, and sold some fish they had for small nails, of which they were immoderately fond, and called them goore. But they caught, with the greatest avidity, bits of paper, or any thing else that was thrown to them. These people seemed to differ as much in person, as in disposition, from the natives of Wateeoo; though the distance between the two islands is not great. Their colour was of a deeper cast; and several had a fierce, rugged aspect, resembling the natives of New Zealand. The shell of a pearl oyster, polished, hung about the neck, was the only personal decoration that we observed amongst them; for not one of them had adopted that mode of ornament, so generally prevalent amongst the natives of this ocean, of puncturing, or tatooing, their bodies. Though singular in this, we had the most unequivocal proofs of their being of the same common race. Their language approached still nearer to the dialect of Otaheite than that of Wateeoo or Mangeea.

Having but very little wind, it was one o'clock before we drew near the north-west part of the island; when I sent Lieutenant King, with two armed boats, to sound and reconnoitre the coast, while we stood off and on with the ships. At three o'clock, the boats returned; and Mr. King informed me, "that there was no anchorage for the ships; and that the boats could only land on the outer edge of the reef, which lay about a quarter of a mile from the dry land. He said, that a number of the natives came down upon the reef, armed with long pikes and clubs; but as he had no motive to land, he did not give them an opportunity to use them. If I had been so fortunate as to have procured a supply of water, and of grass, at any of the islands we had lately visited, it was my purpose to have stood back to the south, till I had met with a westerly wind. But the certain consequence of doing this, without such a

supply, would have been the loss of all the cattle, before we could possibly reach Otaheite, without gaining one advantage with regard to the great object of our voyage. I therefore determined to bear away for the Friendly Islands, where I was sure of meeting with abundance of every thing I wanted.

April the 7th, I steered west by south, with a fine breeze easterly. I proposed to proceed first to Middleburgh, or Eooa ; thinking, if the wind continued favourable, that we had food enough on board for the cattle, to last till we should reach that island ; but, about noon next day, those faint breezes, that had attended and retarded us so long, again returned ; and I found it necessary to haul more to the north, to get into the latitude of Palmerston's and Savage Islands discovered in 1774, during my last voyage ; that if necessity required it, we might have recourse to them. At length, at day-break, on the 13th, we saw Palmerston Island, distant about five leagues. However, we did not get up with it, till eight o'clock the next morning. I then sent four boats, with an officer in each, to search the coast for the most convenient landing place. The boats first examined the south-easternmost part, and failing there ran down to the east, where we had the satisfaction to see them land. This place is not inhabited. About one o'clock, one of the boats came on board, laden with scurvy-grass and young cocoa-nut trees ; which at this time, was a feast for the cattle. Before evening, I went ashore in a small boat, accompanied by Capt. Clerke. We found every body hard at work, and the landing place to be in a small creek. Upon the bushes that front the sea, or even farther in, we found a great number of men of war birds, tropic birds, and two sorts of boobies, which, at this time, were laying their eggs, and so tame, that they suffered us to take them off with our hands.

At one part of the reef, which looks into, or bounds, the lake that is within, there was a large bed of coral, almost

even with the surface, which affords, perhaps, one of the most enchanting prospects that Nature has any where produced. Its base was fixed to the shore, but reached so far in, that it could not be seen; so that it seemed to be suspended in the water, which deepened so suddenly, that, at the distance of a few yards, there might be seven or eight fathoms. The sea was, at this time, quite unruffled; and the sun shining bright, exposed the various sorts of coral, in the most beautiful order. This scene was enlivened by numerous species of fishes gliding along in apparent security. There were no traces of inhabitants having ever been here; if we except a small piece of a canoe that was found upon the beach, which might have drifted from some other island. After the boats were laden, I returned on board, leaving Mr. Gore, with a party, to pass the night on shore, in order to be ready to go to work early the next morning. That day was accordingly spent, as the preceding one had been, in collecting food for the cattle. Having got a sufficient supply by sun set, I ordered every body on board. But having little or no wind, I determined to wait, and to employ the next day in trying to get some cocoa-nuts from the next island, where we could observe that those trees were in greater abundance than where we had already landed. With this view I went with the boats to the west side of the island, and landed with little difficulty; and immediately set the people to gather cocou-nuts, which we found in great abundance. Omai, who was with me, caught with a scoop net, in a very short time, as much fish as served the whole party on shore for dinner, besides sending some to both ships. Here were also great abundance of birds, particularly men of war and tropic birds; so that we fared sumptuously. And it is but doing justice to Omai to say, that, in these excursions, he was of the greatest use. For he not only caught the fish, but dressed them, and the birds we killed, in an oven, with heated stones, after the fashion of his country, with a dexterity and good humour that

did him great credit. We found this islet near a half larger than the other, and almost entirely covered with cocoa palms. A young turtle had been lately thrown ashore here, as it was still full of maggots. We found some scorpions, a few other insects, and a greater number of fish upon the reefs. Upon the whole, we did not spend our time unprofitably at this last islet ; for we got there above twelve hundred cocoa-nuts, which were equally divided amongst the whole crew.

The nine or ten low islets, comprehended under the name of Palmerston's Island, may be reckoned the heads or summits of the reef of coral rock, that connects them together, covered only with a thin coat of sand, yet clothed, as already observed, with trees and plants. The heat, which had been great for a month, became now much more disagreeable, from the close rainy weather ; and, from the moisture attending it, threatened soon to be noxious. However, it is remarkable enough, that though the only refreshment we had received since leaving the Cape of Good Hope, was that at New Zealand, there was not a single person sick, from the constant use of salt food, or vicissitude of climate.

In the night between the 24th and 25th we passed Savage Island, which I had discovered in 1774. I steered for the south, and then hauled up for Annamooka. It was no sooner day-light, than we were visited by six or seven canoes from different islands, bringing with them, besides fruits and roots, two pigs, several fowls, some large wood-pigeons, small rails, and large violet-coloured coots. A" these they exchanged with us for beads, nails, hatchets, &c. They had also other articles of commerce ; but I ordered that no curiosities should be purchased till the ships should be supplied with provisions, and leave had been given for that purpose. Knowing, also, from experience, that if all our people might trade with the natives, according to their own caprice, perpetual quarrels would ensue, I ordered that particular persons should manage the traffic both on

board and on shore, prohibiting all others to interfere. Before mid-day, Mr. King, who had been sent to Kamango, returned with seven hogs, some fowls, a quantity of fruit and roots, and some grass for the cattle. His party was very civilly treated at Kamango. The inhabitants did not seem to be numerous ; and their huts, which stood close to each other, within a plantain walk, were but indifferent. Not far from them was a pretty large pond of fresh water, tolerably good ; but there was no appearance of any stream. The chief of the island, named Tooboulangee, came on board with Mr. King, and another whose name was Taipa. They brought with them a hog, as a present to me, promising more the next day ; and they kept their word.

I now resumed the very same station which I had occupied when I visited Annamooka three years before ; and probably, almost in the same place where Tasman, the first discoverer of this and some of the neighbouring islands, anchored in 1643. The following day I went ashore, accompanied by Capt. Clerke. Toobou, the chief of the island, conducted me and Omai to his house. We found it situated on a pleasant spot, in the centre of his plantations. While we were on shore, we procured a few hogs and some fruit, by bartering ; and before we got on board again, the ships were crowded with the natives. Few of them coming empty-handed, every necessary refreshment was now in greatest plenty. I landed again in the afternoon, with a party of marines ; and, at the same time, the horses, and such of the cattle as were in a weakly state, were sent on shore. Every thing being settled to my satisfaction, I returned to the ship at sun-set, leaving the command upon the island to Mr. King. Next day, May 3rd, our various operations on shore began. In the evening, before the natives retired from our post, Taipa harangued them for some time. We could only guess at the subject ; and judged, that he was instructing them how to behave towards us, and encouraging them to bring the produce of the island to market.

We experienced the good effects of his eloquence in the plentiful supply of provisions which, next day, we received.

On the 6th, we were visited by a great chief from Tongataboo, whose name was Feenou, and whom Taipa introduced to us as king of all the Friendly Isles. All the natives paid their obeisance to him, by bowing their heads as low as his feet, the soles of which they also touched with each hand; first with the palm, and then with the back part. There could be little room to suspect that a person received with so much respect could be any thing less than the king. In the afternoon, I went to pay this great man a visit, having first received a present of two fish from him, brought on board by one of his servants. As soon as I landed, he came up to me. He appeared to be about thirty years of age; tall, but thin, and had more of the European features than any I had yet seen here. After a short stay, our new visitor, and five or six of his attendants, accompanied me on board. I gave suitable presents to them all, and entertained them in such a manner as I thought would be most agreeable. In the evening I attended them on shore in my boat, into which the chief ordered three hogs to be put, as a return for the presents he had received from me.

The first day of our arrival at Annamooka, one of the natives had stolen, out of the ship, a large junk axe. I now applied to Feenou, who was my guest on the 8th, to exert his authority to get it restored to me: so implicitly was he obeyed, that it was brought on board while we were at dinner. These people gave us very frequent opportunities of remarking what expert thieves they were. Even some of the chiefs did not refrain from it. On the lower class a flogging seemed to make no greater impression than it would have done upon the mainmast. When any of them happened to be caught in the act, their superiors, far from interceding for them, would often advise us to kill them. As this was a punishment we did not choose to inflict, they generally escaped without any punishment. Capt. Clerke, at length,

hit upon a mode of treatment which appeared to have some effect : he put them under the hands of the barber, and completely shaved their heads ; thus pointing them out as objects of ridicule to their countrymen, and enabling our people to deprive them of future opportunities to repeat their rogueries, by keeping them at a distance.

Feenou, understanding that I meant to proceed directly to Tongataboo, importuned me strongly to alter this plan, to which he expressed as much aversion as if he had some particular interest to promote by diverting me from it. In preference to it, he warmly recommended an island, or rather a group of islands, called Hapae, lying to the north-east. There, he assured us, we could be supplied plentifully with every refreshment, in the easiest manner ; and, to add weight to his advice, he engaged to attend us thither in person. He carried his point with me, and Hapae was made choice of for our next station : as it had never been visited by any European ships, the examination of it became an object with me. After some unimportant transactions, at day-break, in the morning of the 16th, we steered north-east for Hapae, which was now in sight. Next day we came to anchor, and the ships were soon filled with the natives. They brought hogs, fowls, fruit, and roots, which they exchanged for hatchets, knives, nails, beads, and cloth. I went on shore, accompanied by Omai and Feenou, landing at the north part of Lefooga, a little to the right of the ship's station. The chief conducted me to a hut, situated close to the sea-beach, which I had seen brought thither, but a few minutes before, for our reception. Feenou, Omai, and myself were seated in it ; the other chiefs, and the multitude, composed a circle on the outside, and they also sat down. I was then asked how long I intended to stay ? On my replying five days, Taipa was ordered to come and sit by me, and proclaim this to the people. He then harangued them in a speech mostly dictated by Feenou ; the purport of it, as I learned from Omai, was, that they were all, both old and

young, to look upon me as a friend, who intended to remain with them a few days ; that, during my stay, they must not steal any thing, or molest me any other way ; and that it was expected, they should bring hogs, fowls, fruit, &c. to the ships, where they would receive, in exchange for them, such and such articles, which he enumerated. 'Taipa then took occasion to signify to me, that it was necessary I should make a present to the chief of the island, whose name was Earoupa. I was not unprepared for this ; and gave him such articles as far exceeded his expectation. My liberality brought on me new demands, of the same kind, from two chiefs of other isles who were present, and from 'Taipa himself.

After viewing the watering-place, we returned to our former station, where I found a baked hog, and some yams, smoking hot, ready to be carried on board for my dinner. I invited Feenou and his friends, to partake of it ; and we embarked for the ship ; but none but himself sat down with us at table. After dinner I conducted them on shore ; and before I returned on board, the chief gave me a fine large turtle, and a quantity of yams. Our supply of provisions was copious ; for, in the course of the day, we got, by barter, along-side the ship, about twenty small hogs, beside fruit and roots. Next morning early, Feenou and Omai, who scarcely ever quitted the chief, and now slept on shore, came on board. The object of the visit was to require my presence upon the island. I saw a large concourse of people already assembled. I guessed that something more than ordinary was in agitation : but could not tell what, nor could Omai inform me. I had not long landed, before a hundred of the natives appeared in sight, and advanced, laden with yams, bread-fruit, plantains, cocoa-nuts, and sugar canes. They deposited their burthens in two piles, or heaps, on our left. Soon after arrived a number of others, bearing the same kind of articles, which were collected into two heaps on the right. To these were tied two pigs and six fowls ;

and to those on the left, six pigs and two turtles. As soon as this munificent collection of provisions was laid down in order, and disposed to the best advantage, the bearers of it joined the multitude, who formed a large circle round the whole. Presently after a number of men entered this circle, or area, before us, armed with clubs, made of the green branches of the cocoa-nut tree. These paraded about for a few minutes and then retired; the one half to one side, and the other half to the other side, seating themselves before the spectators. Soon after, they successively entered the lists, and entertained us with single combats. One champion, rising up and stepping forward from one side, challenged those of the other side, by expressive gestures, more than by words, to send one of their body to oppose him. If the challenge was accepted, which was generally the case, the two combatants put themselves in proper attitudes, and then began the engagement, which continued till one or other owned himself conquered, or till their weapons were broken. As soon as each combat was over, the victor squatted himself down facing the chief, then rose up, and retired. At the same time, some old men, who seemed to sit as judges, gave their plaudit in a few words; and the multitude, especially those on the side to which the victor belonged, celebrated the glory he acquired in two or three huzzas.

This entertainment was now and then suspended for a few minutes. During these intervals there were both wrestling and boxing matches. The first were performed in the same manner as at Otaheite; and the second differed very little from the method practised in England. But what struck us most with surprise was, to see a couple of lusty wenches step forth, and begin boxing, without the least ceremony, and with as much art as the men. This contest, however, did not last above half a minute, before one of them gave it up. The conquering heroine received the same applause from the spectators, which they bestowed on the successful

combatants of the other sex. We expressed some dislike at this part of the entertainment ; which, however, did not prevent two other females from entering the lists : they appeared to be girls of spirit, and would certainly have given each other a good drubbing, if two old women had not interposed to part them. All these combats were exhibited in the midst of at least three thousand people, and were conducted with the greatest good humour on all sides.

As soon as these diversions were ended, the chief told me, that the heaps of provisions on our right hand, were a present to Omai ; and that those on our left hand, being about two-thirds of the whole quantity, were given to me. He added, that I might take them on board whenever it was convenient ; but that there would be no occasion to set any of our people as guards over them, as I might be assured that not a single cocoa-nut would be taken away by the natives. So it proved ; for I left every thing behind, and returned to the ship to dinner, carrying the chief with me ; and when the provisions were removed on board in the afternoon, not a single article was missing. There was as much as loaded four boats ; and I could not but be struck with the munificence of Feenou ; for this present far exceeded any I had ever received from any of the sovereigns of the various islands I had visited in the Pacific Ocean. I lost no time in convincing our friend that I was not insensible of his liberality ; for, before he quitted the ship, I bestowed upon him such commodities as I guessed were most valuable in his estimation.

Feenou had expressed a desire to see the marines go through the military exercise. As I was desirous to gratify his curiosity, I ordered them all ashore, from both ships, in the morning. After they had performed various evolutions, and fired several volleys, with which the numerous body of spectators seemed well pleased, the chief entertained us, in his turn, with an exhibition, which, as was acknowledged by us all, was performed with a dexterity and

exactness far surpassing the specimen we had given of our military manœuvres. It was a kind of a dance, so entirely different from any thing I had ever seen, that I can give no description that will convey any tolerable idea of it to my readers. It was performed by men, and one hundred and five persons bore their parts in it. Each of them had in his hand an instrument neatly made, shaped somewhat like a paddle, of two feet and a half in length, with a small handle and a thin blade; so that they were very light. - With these instruments, they made many and various flourishes, each of which was accompanied with a different movement. At first, the performers ranged themselves in three lines; and by various evolutions, each man changed his station in such a manner, that those who had been in the rear came into the front. Nor did they remain long in the same position. At one time, they extended themselves in one line; they then formed into a semicircle; and lastly into two square columns. While this last movement was executing, one of them advanced, and performed an antic dance before me, with which the whole ended. The musical instruments consisted of two drums, or rather two hollow logs of wood, from which some varied notes were produced, by beating on them with two sticks. It did not, however, appear to me that the dancers were much assisted by these sounds, but by a chorus of vocal music, in which all the performers joined at the same time. Their song was not destitute of pleasing melody; and all their corresponding motions were executed with so much skill, that the numerous body of dancers seemed to act as if they were one great machine. It was the opinion of every one of us, that such a performance would have met with universal applause on an European theatre; and it so far exceeded any attempt we had made to entertain them, that they seemed to pique themselves upon the superiority they had over us. As to our musical instruments, they held none of them in the least esteem ex-

cept the drum ; and even that they did not think equal to their own.

In order to give them a more favourable opinion of English amusements, and to leave their minds fully impressed with the deepest sense of our superior attainments, I directed some fire-works to be got ready ; and, after it was dark, played them off in the presence of Feenou, the other chiefs, and a vast concourse of their people. Our water and sky-rockets, in particular, pleased and astonished them beyond all conception ; and the scale was now turned in our favour. This, however, seemed only to furnish them with an additional motive to proceed to fresh exertions of their very singular dexterity ; and our fire-works were no sooner ended than a succession of dances began. As a prelude to them, a band of music, or chorus of eighteen men, seated themselves before us, in the centre of the circle. Four or five of this band had pieces of large bamboo, from three to five or six feet long ; the upper end open, but the other end closed by one of the joints. With this close end the performers kept constantly striking the ground, though slowly, thus producing different notes, according to the different lengths of the instruments, but all of them of the hollow or base sort ; to counteract which, a person kept striking quickly, and with two sticks, a piece of the same substance, split and laid along the ground, and by that means furnishing a tone as acute as those produced by the others were grave. The rest of the band, as well as those who performed upon the bamboo, sung a slow and soft air, which so tempered the harsher notes of the above instruments, that no bye-stander, however accustomed to hear the most perfect and varied modulation of sweet sounds, could avoid confessing the vast power and pleasing effects of this simple harmony. Soon after they had finished, nine women exhibited themselves, and sat down fronting the hut where the chief was. A man then rose, and struck the first of these women on the back, with both fists joined. He proceeded, in the

same manner, to the second and third ; but when he came to the fourth, whether from accident or design I cannot tell, instead of the back, he struck her on the breast. Upon this a person rose instantly from the crowd, who brought him to the ground with a blow on the head ; and he was carried off without the least noise or disorder. But this did not save the other five women from so odd a ceremony ; for a person succeeded him, who treated them in the same manner. Their disgrace did not end here ; for when they danced they had the mortification to find their performance twice disapproved of, and were obliged to repeat it.

Curiosity, on both sides, being now sufficiently gratified, by the exhibition of the various entertainments I have described, I began to have time to look about me. Accordingly next day I took a walk into the island of Leefooga, of which I was desirous to obtain some knowledge. I found it to be, in several respects, superior to Annamooka. The plantations were more numerous, and more extensive. We observed large spots covered with the paper mulberry-trees ; and the plantations, in general, were well stocked with such roots and fruits as are the natural produce of the island. To these I made some addition, by sowing the seeds of Indian corn, melons, pumpkins, and the like. The island is not above seven miles long ; and in some places, not above two or three broad. The east side of it, which is exposed to the trade wind, has a reef, running to a considerable breadth from it, on which the sea breaks with great violence. When I returned from my excursions into the country, I found a large sailing canoe fast to the ship's stern. In this canoe was Latooliboula, whom I had seen at Tongataboo, during my last voyage ; and who was then supposed by us to be the king of that island. He sat in the canoe with all that gravity by which he was so remarkably distinguished at that time ; nor could I, by any entreaties, prevail upon him now to come into the ship. Many of the islanders were present ; and they all called him Arekee, which signifies

king. I had never heard any one of them give this title to Feenou, however extensive his authority over them, both here and at Annamooka, had appeared to be ; which had all along inclined me to suspect that he was not the king ; though his friend Taipa, had taken pains to make me believe he was. Feenou was on board my ship at the same time ; but neither of these great men took the least notice of each other.

In the morning of the 23rd, as we were going to unmoor, in order to leave the island, Feenou, and his prime-minister Taipa, came along-side in a sailing canoe, and informed me that they were setting out for Vavaoo, an island which, they said, lies about two days sail to the northward of Hapae. The object of their voyage, they would have me believe, was to get for me an additional supply of hogs, and some red feathered caps for Omai, to carry to Otaheite, where they are in high esteem. Feenou assured me, that he should be back in four or five days ; and desired me not to sail till his return, when he promised he would accompany me to Tongataboo. I thought this a good opportunity to get some knowledge of Vavaoo, and proposed to him to go thither with the ships ; but he seemed not to approve of the plan, and by way of diverting me from it, told me that there was neither harbour nor anchorage about it. I therefore consented to wait, in my present station, for his return ; and he immediately set out.

In my walk, on the 25th, I happened to step into a house, where I found a woman shaving a child's head with a shark's tooth, stuck into the end of a piece of stick. I observed that she first wetted the hair with a rag dipped in water, applying her instrument to that part which she had previously soaked. The operation seemed to give no pain to the child ; although the hair was taken off as close as if one of our razors had been employed. Encouraged by what I now saw, I soon after tried one of those singular instruments upon myself, and found it to be an excellent suc-

cedaneum. However, the men of these islands have recourse to another contrivance when they shave their beards : the operation is performed with two shells ; one of which they place under a small part of the beard, and with the other, applied above, they scrape that part off. In this manner they are able to shave very close. The process is, indeed, rather tedious, but not painful ; and there are men amongst them who seem to profess this trade. It was as common, while we were here, to see our sailors go ashore to have their beards scraped off, after the fashion of *Hiapae*, as it was to see their chiefs come on board to be shaved by our barbers. Finding that little or nothing of the produce of the island was now brought to the ships, I resolved to change our station, and in the afternoon of the 26th of May, I hauled into a bay that lies between the south end of *Lefooga*, and the north end of *Hoolaiva*, and there anchored.

About noon, a large sailing canoe came under our stern, in which was a person namee *Futtafaihe*, or *Poulaho*, or both, who, as the natives then on board told us, was king of *Tongataboo*, and of all the neighbouring islands. It being my interest, as well as my inclination, to pay court to all the great men, without making inquiry into the validity of their assumed titles, I invited *Poulaho* on board ; he brought with him as a present, two fat hogs, though not so fat as himself. If weight of body could give weight in rank or power, he was certainly the most eminent man, in that respect, we had seen. I found him to be a sedate, sensible man. He viewed the ship, and the several new objects, with uncommon attention, and asked many pertinent questions ; one of which was, what could induce us to visit these islands ? After he had satisfied his curiosity in looking at the cattle and other novelties which he met with upon deck, I desired him to walk down into the cabin. To this his attendants objected, saying that if he were to accept of that invitation, it must happen that people would walk over his

head ; but the chief himself, less scrupulous in this respect than his attendants, waved all ceremony, and walked down.

Poulaho sat down with us to dinner ; but he ate little and drank less. When we arose from the table, he desired me to accompany him ashore. I attended him in my own boat, having first made presents to him of such articles as I could observe he valued much, and were even beyond his expectation to receive. I was not disappointed in my view of thus securing his friendship ; for the moment the boat reached the beach, he ordered two more hogs to be brought, and delivered to my people. He was then carried out of the boat, by some of his own people, upon a board resembling a handbarrow, and went and seated himself in a small house near the shore ; which seemed to have been erected there for his accommodation. He placed me at his side ; and his attendants seated themselves in a semicircle before us, on the outside of the house. Behind the chief, or rather on one side, sat an old woman, with a sort of fan in her hand, whose office it was to prevent his being pestered with the flies. I staid till several of his attendants left him, first paying him obeisance, by bowing the hand down to the sole of his foot, and touching or tapping the same, with the upper and under side of the fingers of both hands. Others who were not in the circle, came as it seemed on purpose, and paid him this mark of respect, and then retired without speaking a word. I was charmed with the decorum that was observed : I had no where seen the like, not even amongst more civilized nations.

Poulaho, the king, as I shall now call him, came on board betimes next morning ; and brought, as a present to me, one of their caps made, or at least covered, with red feathers. These caps, or rather bonnets, are composed of the tail feathers of the tropic bird, with the red feathers of the parroquets wrought upon them, or jointly with them. They are made so as to tie upon the forehead without any crown, and have the form of a semicircle, whose radius is

eighteen or twenty inches. At day break the next morning, I weighed with a fine breeze, and stood to the westward, with a view to return to Annamooka. We were followed by several sailing canoes, in one of which was the king. He quitted us in a short time, but left his brother, and five of his attendants on board. We had also the company of a chief, just then arrived from Tongataboo, whose name was Tooboueitoa. The moment he arrived, he sent his canoe away, and declared that he and five more who came with him, would sleep on board; so that I had now my cabin filled with visitors. They brought plenty of provisions with them, for which they always had suitable returns.

In our course the ship was very near running full upon a low, sandy isle, called Pootoo. It happened very fortunately that the people had just before been ordered upon deck, to put the ship about, so that the necessary movements were executed with judgment and alertness; and this alone saved us from destruction. The *Discovery* being astern, was out of danger. Such hazardous situations are the unavoidable companions of the man who goes upon a voyage of discovery. This circumstance frightened our passengers so much, that they expressed a strong desire to get ashore. Accordingly, as soon as day-light returned, I hoisted out a boat, and ordered the officer who commanded her, after landing them at Kotoo, to sound along the reef for anchorage. Having met with a convenient station, we lay here until the 4th, when we weighed and stood for Annamooka, where we anchored next morning. I went on shore soon after, and found the inhabitants very busy in digging up yams, to bring to market. These were now in the greatest perfection; and we procured a good quantity, in exchange for pieces of iron.

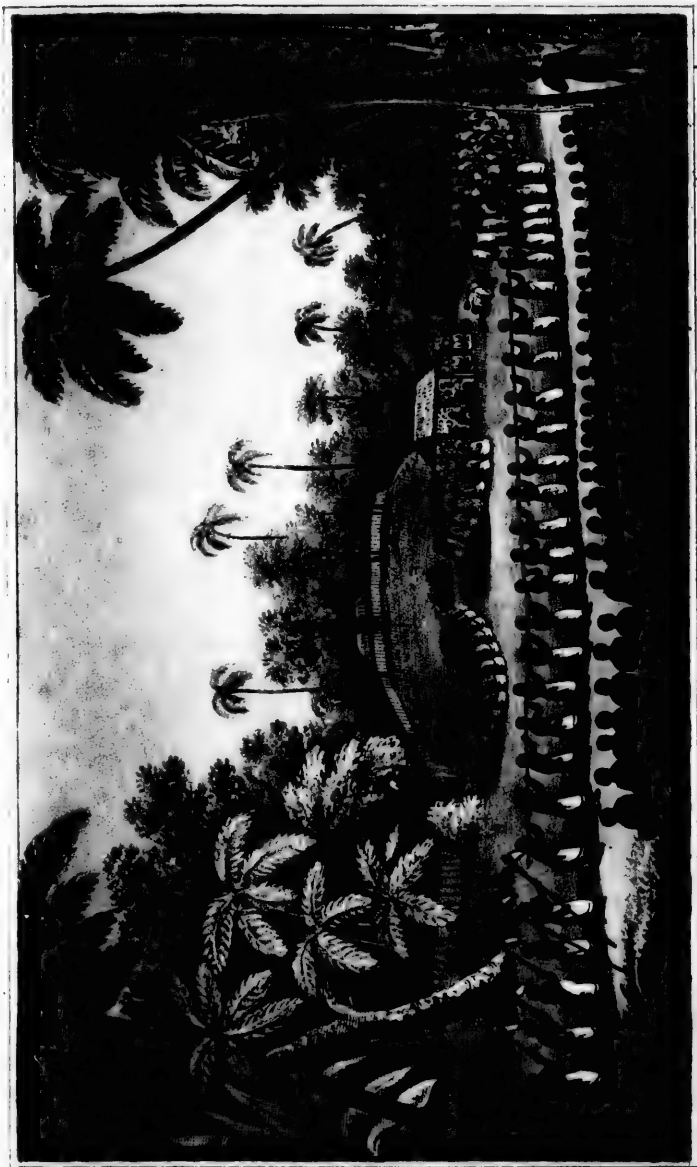
About noon, next day, Feenou arrived from Vavaoo. He told us that several canoes, laden with hogs and other provisions, which had sailed with him from that island, had been lost, owing to the late blowing weather, and that every

body on board them had perished. This melancholy tale did not seem to affect any of his countrymen that heard it; and, as to ourselves, we were by this time too well acquainted with his character to give much credit to such a story. The following morning, Poulaho and the other chiefs, who had been wind-bound with him, arrived. I happened at this time to be ashore, in company with Feenou, who now seemed to be sensible of the impropriety of his conduct, in assuming a character that did not belong to him; for he not only acknowledged Poulaho to be king of Tongataboo and the other isles, but affected to insist much on it, which, no doubt, was with a view to make amends for his former presumption. I left him to visit this greater man, whom I found sitting with a few people before him: but, as every one hastened to pay court to him, the circle increased pretty fast. I was very desirous of observing Feenou's behaviour on this occasion, and had the most convincing proof of his inferiority; for he placed himself amongst the rest that sat before Poulaho, as attendants on his majesty. Both he and Poulaho went on board with me to dinner; but only the latter sat at table. Feenou, having made his obeisance in the usual way, saluting his sovereign's foot with his head and hands, retired out of the cabin. The king had before told us that this would happen; and it now appeared that Feenou could not eat or drink in his royal presence.

At eight o'clock next morning, we steered for Tongataboo, having a gentle breeze at north-east. About fourteen or fifteen sailing vessels, belonging to the natives, set out with us; but every one of them outran the ships considerably. In the afternoon of the next day we came to an anchor off that island, in a safe station. Soon after I landed, accompanied by Omai and some of the officers. We found the king waiting for us upon the beach. He immediately conducted us to a small neat house, situated a little within the skirts of the woods, with a fine large area before it.

ly tale
ard it;
ell ac-
such a
other
ed. I
eenou,
of his
ng to
king of
much
mends
reater
him :
circle
erving
most
himself
ts on
th me
aving
sign's
The
t new
royal

aboo,
en or
t out
dera-
anchor
, ac-
ound
ately
within
e it.



Engraved by J.E. Keat

The Statue a Ceremony in Honour of the King of the Kingdom of Tongatabu.

London, Published by Hughes and Wheeler, Printers, No. 182, 4

This house, he told me, was at my service during our stay at this island ; and a better situation we could not wish for. We had not been long in the house before a pretty large circle of the natives were assembled before us. A root of the kava plant being brought and laid down before the king, he ordered it to be split into pieces, and distributed to several people of both sexes, who began the operation of chewing it ; and a bowl of their favourite liquor was soon prepared. In the mean time a baked hog and two baskets of baked yams were produced, and afterwards divided into ten portions : these portions were then given to certain people present ; but how many were to share in each I could not tell. The liquor was next served out, but I observed that not a fourth part of the company had tasted either the victuals or the drink. As I intended to make some stay at Tongataboo, we pitched a tent in the forenoon just by the house which Poulaho had assigned for our use. The horses, cattle and sheep, were afterwards landed, and a party of marines, with their officer, stationed there as a guard. The observatory was then set up at a small distance from the other tent ; and Mr. King resided on shore, to attend the observations. The gunners were ordered to conduct the traffic with the natives, who thronged from every part of the island with hogs, yams, cocoa-nuts, and other articles of their produce. In a short time our land post was like a fair, and the ships were so crowded with visitors that we had hardly room to stir upon the decks.

Feenou had taken up his residence in our neighbourhood ; but he was no longer the leading man. However we still found him to be a person of consequence, and we had daily proofs of his opulence and liberality, by the continuance of his valuable presents. But the king was equally attentive in this respect ; for scarcely a day passed without receiving from him some considerable donation. We now heard, that there were other great men of the island, whom we had not yet seen. Otago and Toobou, in particular, mentioned

a person named Mareewagee, who, they said, was of the first consequence in the place. Some of the natives even hinted that he was too great a man to confer the honour of a visit upon us. This account exciting my curiosity, I mentioned to Poulaho that I was very desirous of waiting upon Mareewagee; and he readily agreed to accompany me to the place of his residence, but we did not find him at home. About noon the next day, this chief actually came to the neighbourhood of our post on shore; and with him, a considerable number of people of all ranks. I was informed that he had taken this trouble on purpose to give me an opportunity of waiting upon him. In the afternoon a party of us, therefore, accompanied by Feenou, landed to pay him a visit. We found a person sitting under a large tree, near the shore, a little to the right of the tent. A piece of cloth, at least forty yards long, was spread before him, round which a great number of persons of both sexes were seated. It was natural to suppose that this was the great man; but we were undeceived by Feenou, who informed us that another, who sat on a piece of mat a little way from this chief, to the right hand, was Mareewagee. He received us very kindly, and desired us to sit down by him. The person who sat under the tree, fronting us, was called Too-bou. Both he and Mareewagee had a venerable appearance. The latter is a slender man, and from his appearance seems to be considerably above three-score years of age; the former is rather corpulent, and almost blind with a disorder in his eyes, though not so old. We entertained them for about an hour, with the performance of two French horns and a drum; but they seemed more pleased with the firing off of a pistol, which Capt. Clerke had in his pocket. Before I took my leave, the large piece of cloth was rolled up, and with a few cocoa-nuts, presented to me.

About noon, Poulaho returned from the place where we had left him two days before, and brought with him his son, a youth about twelve years of age. I had his company at

dinner; but his son, though present, was not allowed to sit down with him. It was very convenient to have him for my guest; for, when he was present, every other native was excluded from the table, and but few of them would remain in the cabin. The king was very soon reconciled to our manner of cookery; but still, I believe, he dined thus frequently with me more for the sake of what we gave him to drink than for what we set before him to eat, for he had taken a liking to our wine, could empty his bottle as well as most men, and was as cheerful over it.

Having visited Toobou, and interchanged presents with him, soon after Feenou came and acquainted me that young Fattafaihe, Poulaho's son, desired to see me. I obeyed the summons, and found the Prince and Omai sitting under a large canopy of the finer sort of cloth, with a piece of the coarser sort spread under them and before them, seventy-six yards long, and seven and a half broad. On one side was a large old boar, and on the other side a heap of cocoa-nuts. A number of people were seated round the cloth; and amongst them I observed Mareewagee, and others of the first rank. I was desired to sit by the side of the prince; and then Omai informed me, that he had been instructed by the king to tell me, that as he and I were friends, he hoped that his son might be joined in this friendship and that as a token of my consent I would accept of his present. I very readily agreed to the proposal; and it being now dinner time, I invited them all on board. Accordingly the young prince, Mareewagee, Toubou, three or four inferior chiefs, and two respectable old ladies of the first rank, accompanied me. Mareewagee was dressed in a new piece of cloth, on the skirts of which were fixed six pretty large patches of red feathers. This dress seemed to have been made on purpose for this visit; for as soon as he had got on board, he put it off and presented it to me. Every one of my visitors received from me such presents as, I had reason to believe, they were highly satisfied with. When dinner came upon

the table, not one of them would sit down, or eat a bit of any thing that was served up. On expressing my surprise at this, they were all taboo, as they said ; which word has a very comprehensive meaning, but in general signifies that a thing is forbidden. Dinner being over, and having gratified their curiosity by shewing to them every part of the ship, I then conducted them ashore. As soon as the boat reached the beach, Feenou, and some others stepped out. Young Fattafaihe following them, was called back by Mareewagee, who now paid the heir apparent the same obeisance, and in the same manner, that I had seen it paid to the king. By this time I had acquired some certain information about the relative situations of the several great men, whose names have been so often mentioned. I now knew that Mareewagee and Toubou were brothers. Feenou was one of Mareewagee's sons ; and Tooboueitou was another.

On the 16th, in the morning, Mr. Gore and I took a walk into the country ; in the course of which nothing remarkable appeared, but our having opportunities of seeing the whole process of making cloth, which is the principal manufacture of these islands as well as of many others of this ocean. This is performed in the following manner : the manufacturers, who are females, take the slender stalks, or trunks, of the paper-mulberry, which they cultivate for that purpose, and which seldom grow more than six or seven feet in height, and about four in thickness ; from these they strip the bark, and scrape off the outer rind with a muscle-shell ; the bark is then rolled up, to destroy the convexity which it had round the stalk, and macerated in water for some time ; after this, it is laid across the trunk of a small tree, squared, and beaten with a squared wooden instrument, about a foot long, full of coarse grooves on all sides ; but sometimes with one that is plain, according to the size of the bark. A piece is soon produced ; but the operation is often repeated by another hand, or it is folded several times, and beat longer, which seems rather intended

t of
rise
has
that
gra-
the
cont
out.
Ma-
bei-
l to
for-
tion,
new
was
her.
walk
able
hole
ture
ean.
anu-
, or
that
feet
they
nus-
con-
ater
of a
oden
n all
g to
the
dded
aded



Engr. by E. B. R. & Co.

The Party of Two, a Chief, as Preserved after Death in America.

Published by Jacques & Wright, Newington-Parish, 1854.

to c
cient
from
They
by s
herr
thus
with
close
cloth
calle
is m
a d
join
of o
leav
the
of th
ofte
com
blac
call
qua
N
gra
For
tem
the
gre
eve
sho
Th
are
difi
adv
Ch

to close, than to divide its texture. When this is sufficiently effected, it is spread out to dry; the pieces being from four to six, or more, feet in length, and half as broad. They are then given to another person, who joins the pieces, by smearing part of them over with the viscous juice of a berry called tooo, which serves as a glue. Having been thus lengthened, they are laid over a large piece of woody, with a kind of stamp made of a fibrous substance, pretty closely interwoven, placed beneath. They then take a bit of cloth, and dip it in a juice expressed from the bark of a tree called kokka, which they rub briskly upon the piece that is making. This at once leaves a dull brown colour, and a dry gloss upon its surface. In this manner they proceed, joining and staining by degrees, till they produce a piece of cloth of such length and breadth as they want, generally leaving a border of a foot broad at the sides, and longer at the ends, unstained. Throughout the whole, if any parts of the original pieces are too thin, or have holes, which is often the case, they glue spare bits upon them, till they become of an equal thickness. When they want to produce a black colour, they mix the soot procured from an oily nut, called dovedooe, with the juice of the kokka, in different quantities, according to the proposed depth of the tinge.

Next day was fixed upon by Mareewagee for giving a grand haiva, or entertainment, to which we were all invited. For this purpose, a large space had been cleared, before the temporary hut of this chief, near our post, as an area where the performances were to be exhibited. In the morning, great multitudes of the natives came in from the country, every one carrying a pole, about six feet long, upon his shoulder; and at each end of every pole a yam was suspended. These yams and poles were desposited on each side of the area, so as to form two large heaps, decorated with different sorts of small fish, and piled up to the greatest advantage. They were Mareewagee's present to Captain Clerke and me. Every thing being thus prepared, about

eleven o'clock they began to exhibit various dances, which they called mai. The music consisted, at first, of seventy men as a chorus, who sat down; and amidst them were placed three instruments which we called drums, from their effect; the natives called them naffa. These instruments produce a rude, though loud and powerful sound. The first dance consisted of four ranks, of twenty-four men each, holding in their hands a little thin, light, wooden instrument, about two feet long, and in shape not unlike a small oblong paddle. With these, which are called pagge, they made a great many different motions; all which were accompanied by corresponding attitudes of the body. Their motions were at first slow, but quickened as the drums beat faster; and they recited sentences, in a musical tone, the whole time, which were answered by the chorus; but at the end of a short space they all joined, and finished with a shout; then the rear rank dividing, shifted themselves very slowly round each end, and meeting in the front, formed the first rank; the whole number continuing to recite the sentences as before. The other ranks did the same successively, till that which at first was the front, became the rear; and their evolution continued in the same manner, till the last rank regained its first situation. They then began a much quicker dance, though slow at first, and sung about ten minutes, when the whole body divided into two parts, retreated a little, and then approached, forming a sort of circular figure, which finished the dance.

In a short time, seventy men sat down as a chorus to another dance. This consisted of two ranks, of sixteen persons each, with young Toobou at their head. These danced, sung, and twirled the pagge as before; but, in general, much quicker. A motion that met with particular approbation, was one in which they held the face aside, as if ashamed. The back rank close before the front one, and that again resumed its place, as in the two former dances. At that instant, two men entered very hastily, and exercised

the clubs which they use in battle. They did this, by first twirling them in their hands, and making circular strokes before them, with great force and quickness; but so skilfully managed, that, though standing quite close, they never interfered. To them succeeded a person with a spear, in the same hasty manner; looking about eagerly, as if in search of somebody to throw it at. He then ran hastily to one side of the crowd in the front, and put himself in a threatening attitude, as if he meant to strike with his spear at one of them, bending the knee a little, and trembling, as it were with rage. He continued in this manner only a few seconds, when he moved to the other side, and having stood in the same posture there, for the same short time, retreated from the ground, as fast as when he made his appearance; and various other evolutions were performed with much adroitness.

These dances lasted from eleven till near three o'clock; and though they were, doubtless, intended to shew us a specimen of their dexterity, vast numbers of their own people attended as spectators. Some computed that there were not less than 10,000 or 12,000 people within the compass of a quarter of a mile, drawn together for the most part by mere curiosity. No pen can describe the numerous actions and motions, the singularity of which was not greater than was the ease and gracefulness with which they were performed; and the whole was conducted with more order than could have been expected in so large an assembly.

Early in the morning of the 18th, an accident happened that strongly marked one of their customs. A man got out of a canoe into the quarter gallery of the *Resolution*, and stole from thence a pewter bason. He was discovered, pursued, and brought along-side the ship. On this occasion, three old women, who were in the canoe, made loud lamentations over the prisoner, beating their breasts and faces in a most violent manner, and all this was done without shedding a tear.

This day I bestowed on Marceewagee some presents, in return for those we had received from him the day before; and as the entertainments which he had then exhibited for our amusement called upon us to make some exhibition in our way, I ordered a party of marines to go through their exercise, on the spot where the dances had been performed; and in the evening played off some fireworks at the same place. Poulaho, with all the principal chiefs, and a great number of people of all denominations, were present. The platoon firing, which was executed tolerably well, seemed to give them pleasure; but they were lost in astonishment when they beheld our water rockets. In expectation of this evening show, the circle of natives about our tent being pretty large, they engaged in boxing and wrestling the greatest part of the afternoon. When one of them chooses to wrestle, he gets up from one side of the ring, and crosses the ground in a sort of measured pace, clapping smartly on the elbow joint of one arm, which is bent, and produces a hollow sound. That is reckoned the challenge. If no person comes out from the opposite side to engage him, he returns in the same manner and sits down; but sometimes stands clapping in the midst of the ground, to provoke some one to come out. If an opponent appears, they come together with marks of the greatest good-nature, generally smiling, and taking time to adjust the piece of cloth which is fastened round the waist. Their combats seldom last long before one gives in. Some of our people ventured to contend with the natives in both these exercises, but were always worsted.

The animals which we had brought were all on shore. Knowing their thievish disposition, I thought it prudent to declare my intention of leaving some of them behind, and even to make a distribution of them previous to my departure. With this view, in the evening of the 19th I assembled all the chiefs before our house, and my intended presents to them were marked out. To Poulaho, the king, I gave a young English bull and cow; to Marceewagee, a Cape

ram and two ewes; and to Feenou, a horse and a mare. As my design to make such a distribution had been made known the day before, most of the people in the neighbourhood were present. I instructed Omai to tell them that there were no such animals within many months sail of their island, and that we had brought them at a vast expence; that therefore they must be careful not to kill any of them till they had multiplied to a numerous race; and lastly, that they and their children ought to remember that they had received them from the men of Britain. He also explained to them their several uses, and what else was necessary for them to know, or rather as far as he knew, for Omai was not well versed in such things himself.

Next day I dined ashore. The king sat down with us; but he neither ate nor drank. I found that this was owing to the presence of a female, who, as we afterwards understood, had superior rank to himself. As soon as this great personage had dined, she stepped up to the king, who put his hands to her feet; and then she retired. He immediately dipped his fingers into a glass of wine, and then received the obeisance of all her followers. This was the single instance we ever observed of his paying this mark of reverence to any person. At the king's desire, I ordered some fireworks to be played off in the evening; but unfortunately being damaged, this exhibition did not answer expectation. As no more entertainments were to be expected on either side, and the curiosity of the populace was, by this time, pretty well satisfied, most of them left us. We still, however, had thieves about us; and encouraged by the negligence of our own people, we had continual instances of their depredations. Some of the officers, belonging to both ships, who had made an excursion into the interior parts of the island, without my leave, and without my knowledge, returned this evening, after an absence of two days. They had taken with them their muskets, with the necessary ammunition, and several small articles of the

favourite commodities ; all which the natives had the dexterity to steal from them, in the course of their expedition. Feenou and Poulaho, upon this occasion, very justly observed, that if any of my people, at any time, wanted to go into the country, they ought to be acquainted with it ; in which case they would send proper persons along with them, and then they would be answerable for their safety. Though I gave myself no trouble about the recovery of the things stolen upon this occasion, most of them, through Feenou's interposition, were recovered ; except one musket and a few other articles of inferior value.

We had now recruited the ships with wood and water, and had finished the repairs of our sails. However, as an eclipse of the sun was to happen on the 5th of July, and it was now the 25th of June, I resolved to defer sailing till that time had elapsed, in order to have a chance of observing it. Having therefore some days of leisure before me, a party of us, accompanied by Poulaho, set out early next morning, in a boat, for Mooa, the village where he and the other great men usually reside. As we rowed up the inlet, we met fourteen canoes fishing in company ; in one of which was Poulaho's son. In each canoe was a triangular net, extended between two poles ; at the lower end of which was a cod to receive and secure the fish. They had already caught some fine mullets ; and they put about a dozen into our boat. I desired to see their method of fishing ; which they readily complied with. A shoal of fish was supposed to be on one of the banks, which they instantly inclosed in a long net like a seine, or set-net. This the fishers, one getting into the water out of each boat, surrounded with the triangular nets in their hands, with which they scooped the fish out of the sein, or caught them as they attempted to leap over it.

Leaving the prince and his fishing party, we proceeded to the bottom of the bay. Here we observed a fiataoka, or burying place, which was much more extensive, and seem-

ingly of more consequence, than any we had seen at the other islands. We were told that it belonged to the king. It consisted of three pretty large houses, situated upon a rising ground, with a small one at a distance, all ranged longitudinally. They were covered, and paved with fine pebbles, and the whole was inclosed by large flat stones of hard coral rock, properly hewn, placed on their edges; one of which stones measured twelve feet in length, two in breadth, and above one in thickness. Within one of these houses were two rude wooden busts of men. On enquiring what these images were intended for, we were told they were merely memorials of some chiefs who had been buried there, and not the representations of any deity. In one of them was the carved head of an Otaheitean canoe, which had been driven ashore on their coast, and deposited here.

After we had refreshed ourselves, we made an excursion into the country, attended by one of the king's ministers. Our train was not great, as he would not suffer the rabble to follow us. He also obliged all those whom we met upon our progress, to sit down till we had passed; which is a mark of respect due only to their sovereigns. By far the greatest part of the country was cultivated, and planted with various sorts of productions. There were many public and well-beaten roads, and abundance of foot paths leading to every part of the island. It is remarkable that when we were on the most elevated parts, at least a hundred feet above the level of the sea, we often met with the same coral rock which is found at the shore; and yet these very spots, with hardly any soil upon them, were covered with luxuriant vegetation. We saw some springs, but the water was either stinking or brackish. When we returned from our walk, which was not till the dusk of the evening, our supper was ready. It consisted of a baked hog, some fish, and yams, all excellently well cooked, after the method of these islands. As there was nothing to amuse us after supper, we followed the custom of the country, and lay

down to sleep, our beds being mats spread upon the floor, and cloth to cover us. The king, who had made himself very happy with some wine and brandy which we had brought, slept in the same house, as well as several others of the natives.

Early next morning, they began to prepare a bowl of kava. We had seen the drinking of this liquor sometimes at the other islands ; but by no means so frequently as here, where it seems to be the only forenoon employment of the principal people. The kava is a species of pepper, which they cultivate for this purpose, and esteem it a valuable article. It seldom grows to more than a man's height ; its branches considerably, with heart-shaped leaves, and jointed stalks. The root is the only part that is used. They break it in pieces, scrape the dirt off with a shell, and then each begins and chews his portion, which he spits into a plantain leaf. The person who is to prepare the liquor, collects all these mouthfuls, and puts them into a large wooden dish or bowl, adding as much water as will make it of proper strength. It is then well mixed up with the hands ; and some loose stuff, of which mats are made, is thrown upon the surface. The immediate effect of this beverage is not perceptible on these people, who use it so frequently ; but on some of ours, who ventured to try it, though so nastily prepared, it had the same power as spirits have in intoxicating them ; or rather, it produced that kind of stupefaction, which is the consequence of using opium, or other substances of that kind. I have seen them drink it seven times before noon, yet it is so disagreeable or at least seems so, that the greater part of them cannot swallow it without making wry faces, and shuddering afterward. When we got on board the ship, I found that every thing had been quiet during my absence, not a theft having been committed ; of which Feemou and Futtasaihe, the king's brother, who had undertaken the management of his countrymen, boasted not a little. This shows what power the

chiefs have, when they have the will to execute it ; which we were seldom to expect, since whatever was stolen from us generally, if not always, was conveyed to them. But the good conduct of the natives was of short duration ; for the next day six or eight of them assaulted some of our people who were sawing planks. They were fired upon by the sentry ; and one was supposed to be wounded, and three others taken. These I kept confined all night ; and did not dismiss them without punishment. After this, they behaved with a little more circumspection, and gave us much less trouble. This change of behaviour was certainly occasioned by the man being wounded ; for before they had only been told the effect of fire-arms, but now they had felt it.

On the 30th, I visited Futtafaihe, where we spent the night ; but we were a good deal disturbed by a singular instance of luxury, in which their principal men indulge themselves, that of being beat while they are asleep. Two women sat by Futtafaihe, and performed this operation, which was called *tooge tooge*, by beating briskly on his body and legs with both fists, as on a drum, till he fell asleep, and continuing it the whole night, with some short intervals. When once the person is asleep, they abate a little in the strength and quickness of beating ; but resume it, if they observe any appearance of his waking. In the morning we found that Futtafaihe's women relieved each other, and went to sleep by turns. In any other country it would be supposed that such a practice would put an end to all rest ; but here it certainly acts as an opiate, and is a strong proof of what habit may effect. The noise of this, however, was not the only thing that kept us awake ; for the people, who passed the night in the house, not only conversed among each other frequently, as in the day ; but all got up before it was light, and made a hearty meal on fish and yams, which were brought to them by a person

who seemed to know very well the appointed time for this nocturnal refreshment.

I had prolonged my stay at this island, on account of the approaching eclipse; but on the 2nd of July, on looking at the micrometer belonging to the Board of Longitude, I found some of the rack-work broken, and the instrument useless till repaired; which there was not time to do before it was intended to be used. Preparing now for our departure, I got on board all the cattle, poultry, and other animals, except such as were destined to remain. The next day we unmoored, that we might be ready to take the advantage of the first favourable wind. The king, who was one of our company this day at dinner, took particular notice of the plates; this occasioned me to make him an offer of one, either of pewter or of earthen ware: he chose the first, and then began to tell us the several uses to which he intended to apply it; two of them are so extraordinary, that I cannot omit mentioning them. He said that whenever he should have occasion to visit any of the other islands, he would leave this plate behind him at Tongataboo, as a sort of representative in his absence, that the people might pay it the same obeisance they do to himself in person. He was asked what had been usually employed for that purpose before he got this plate; and we had the satisfaction of learning from him, that this singular honour had been hitherto conferred on a wooden bowl in which he washed his hands: the other extraordinary use to which he meant to apply it, in the room of his wooden bowl, was to discover a thief. He said, that when any thing was stolen, and the thief could not be found out, the people were all assembled together before him, when he washed his hands in water in this vessel; after which it was cleaned, and then the whole multitude advanced, one after another, and touched it in the same manner that they touch his foot, when they pay him obeisance: if the guilty person touched it, he died immediately upon the spot, not by violence, but by the hand of

Providence; and if any one refused to touch it, his refusal was a clear proof that he was the man.

In the morning of the 5th, the day of the eclipse, the weather was dark and cloudy, with showers of rain, so that we had little hopes of an observation. About nine o'clock, the sun broke out at intervals for about half an hour; after which it was totally obscured till within a minute or two of the beginning of the eclipse. We were all at our telescopes, viz. Mr. Bayly, Mr. King, Capt. Clerke, Mr. Bligh, and myself. I lost the observation by not having a dark glass at hand, suitable to the clouds that were continually passing over the sun; and Mr. Bligh had not got the sun into the field of his telescope, so that the commencement of the eclipse was only observed by the other three gentlemen.

The general appearance of the country conveys to the spectator an idea of the most exuberant fertility, whether we respect the places improved by art, or those still in a natural state. At a distance the surface seems entirely clothed with trees of various sizes; the tall cocoa-palms are far from being the smallest ornament to any country that produces them. Of cultivated fruits, the principal are the plantain and bread-fruit. There is plenty of excellent sugar cane. The only quadrupeds besides hogs, are a few rats and some dogs. Fowls, which are of a large breed, are domesticated here.

On July 6th, we were ready to sail; but the wind being unfavourable, we were under the necessity of waiting two or three days. We took our final leave of Tongataboo on the 10th, and early in the morning of the second day after, reached Middleburgh, or Eooa. We had no sooner anchored, than Taoofa, the chief, and several other natives, visited us on board, and seemed to rejoice much at our arrival. This Taoofa knew me when I was here during my last voyage, consequently we were not strangers to each other. In a little time I went ashore with him, in search of fresh water; the procuring of which was the chief object

that brought me to Eooa. I was first conducted to a brackish spring, between low and high water mark, in the cove where we landed. Finding that we did not like this, our friends took us a little way into the island, where, in a deep chasm, we found very good water; but rather than undertake the tedious task of bringing it down to the shore, I resolved to rest contented with the supply that the ships had got at Tongataboo. I put ashore the ram and two ewes, of the Cape of Good Hope breed; intrusting them to the care of Taoofoa, who seemed proud of his charge. As we lay at anchor, this island bore a very different aspect from any we had lately seen, and formed a most beautiful landscape.

The 13th, in the afternoon, a party of us made an excursion to the highest part of the island, in order to have a full view of the country. From the elevation to which we had ascended, we had a full view of the whole island, except a part of the south point. The plains and meadows, of which there are here some of great extent, lie all on the north-west side; and as they are adorned with tufts of trees, intermixed with plantations, they form a very beautiful landscape in every point of view. While I was surveying this delightful prospect, I could not help flattering myself with the pleasing idea, that some future navigators may, from the same station, behold these meadows stocked with cattle, brought to these islands by the ships of England; and that the completion of this single benevolent purpose, independently of all other considerations, would sufficiently mark to posterity that our voyages had not been useless to the general interests of humanity. The next morning I planted a pine apple, and sowed the seeds of melons and other vegetables, in the chief's plantation. I had some encouragement, indeed, to flatter myself that my endeavours of this kind would not be fruitless; for this day there was served up, at my dinner, a dish of turnips, being the produce of the seeds I had left during my last voyage. I had fixed on the 15th for sailing, till

Tacofa pressed me to stay a day or two longer, to receive a present he had prepared for me, consisting of two small heaps of yams, and some fruit, which seemed to be collected by a kind of contribution, as at the other isles. For this liberality I made an adequate return, and soon after weighed.

We now took leave of the Friendly Islands, after a stay of near three months; during which time we lived together in the most cordial friendship. Some accidental differences, it is true, now and then happened, owing to their great propensity to thieving; but too often encouraged by the negligence of our own people. The time employed amongst them was not throw away; we expended very little of our sea provisions, subsisting, in general, upon the produce of the islands while we staid, and carrying away with us a quantity of refreshments, sufficient to last till our arrival at another station, where we could depend upon a fresh supply. I was not sorry, besides, to have had an opportunity of bettering the condition of these good people, by leaving the useful animals before-mentioned among them; and, at the same time, those designed for Otaheite received fresh strength in the pastures of 'Tongataboo. But besides the immediate advantages which, both the natives of the Friendly Islands, and ourselves, received by this visit, future navigators from Europe, if any such ever tread our steps, will profit by the knowledge I acquired of the geography of this part of the Pacific Ocean; and the more philosophical reader, who loves to view human nature in new situations, will, perhaps, find matter of amusement, if not of instruction, in the information which I have been enabled to convey to him concerning the inhabitants of this Archipelago. According to the information that we received there, this Archipelago is very extensive. Above one hundred and fifty islands were reckoned up to us by the natives, who made use of bits of leaves to ascertain their number.

The natives of the Friendly Islands seldom exceed the

common stature (though we have measured some who were above six feet) but are very strong and well made; especially as to their limbs. They are generally broad about the shoulders; and though the muscular disposition of the men, which seems a consequence of much action, rather conveys the appearance of strength than of beauty, there are several to be seen who are really handsome. We met with hundreds of truly European faces, and many genuine Roman noses amongst them. Their eyes and teeth are good; but the last, neither so remarkably white, nor so well set as are often found amongst Indian nations. The women are not so much distinguished from the men by their features, as by their general form, which is, for the most part, destitute of that strong, fleshy firmness that appears in the latter. Though the features of some are so delicate, as not only to be a true index of their sex, but to lay claim to a considerable share of beauty and expression, for the bodies and limbs of most of the females are well proportioned; and are absolutely perfect models of a beautiful figure. But the most remarkable distinction in the women, is the uncommon smallness and delicacy of their fingers, which may be put in competition with the finest in Europe. The general colour is a cast deeper than the copper brown; but several of the men and women have a true olive complexion; and some of the last are even a great deal fairer. We saw a man and a boy at Hapae, and a child at Anamooka, perfectly white. Such have been found amongst all black nations; but I apprehend that their colour is rather a disease than a natural phenomenon. Their countenances very remarkably express the abundant mildness or good-nature which they possess; and are entirely free from that savage keenness which marks nations in a barbarous state. They are frank, cheerful, and good-humoured, though sometimes in the presence of their chiefs, they put on a degree of gravity, and such a serious air as becomes stiff and awkward, and has an appearance of reserve.

Their peaceable disposition is sufficiently evinced from the friendly reception that all strangers have met with who have visited them. Instead of offering to attack them openly or clandestinely, as has been the case with most of the inhabitants of these seas, they have never appeared in the smallest degree hostile; but on the contrary, like the most civilized people, have courted an intercourse with their visitors by bartering, which is the only medium that unites all nations in a sort of friendship. Upon the whole, they seem possessed of many of the most excellent qualities that adorn the human mind; such as industry, ingenuity, perseverance, affability, and, perhaps, other virtues, which our short stay with them might prevent our observing. The only defect sullyng their character, that we know of, is a propensity to thieving; to which we found those of all ages, and both sexes, addicted; and to an uncommon degree. Great allowances should be made for the foibles of these poor natives of the Pacific Ocean, whose minds we overpowered with the glare of objects equally new to them, as they were captivating. The thefts so frequently committed by the natives, of what we had brought along with us, may be said to arise solely from an intense curiosity or desire to possess something which they had not been accustomed to before, and belonged to a sort of people so different from themselves.

Their hair is, in general, straight, thick, and strong; though a few have it bushy or frizzled. The natural colour, I believe, almost without exception, is black; but the greatest part of the men, and some of the women, have it stained of a brown, or purple colour, and a few of an orange cast. The dress of both men and women is the same; and consists of a piece of cloth or matting (but mostly the former) about two yards wide, and two and a half long; at least so long as to go once and a half round the waist, to which it is confined by a girdle or cord. It is double before, and hangs down like a petticoat, as low as the middle of the leg. The

upper part of the garment, above the girdle, is plaited into several folds, so that, when unfolded, there is cloth sufficient to draw up and wrap round the shoulders; which is very seldom done. The inferior sort are satisfied with small pieces; and very often wear nothing but a covering made of leaves of plants, or the maro, which is a narrow piece of cloth, or matting, like a sash. This they pass between the thighs and wrap round the waist; but the use of it is chiefly confined to the men. The ornaments worn by both sexes are necklaces, made of the fruit of the pandanus and various sweet-smelling flowers, which go under the general name of kahulla. Others are composed of small shells, the wing and leg-bones of birds, shark's teeth, and other things; all which hang loose upon the breast; rings of tortoise-shell their fingers; and a number of these joined together as bracelets on the wrist.

The employment of the women, is of the easy kind, and, for the most part, such as may be executed in the house. The manufacturing their cloth is wholly consigned to their care. The manufacture next in consequence, and also within the department of the women, is that of their mats, which excel every thing I have seen at any other place, both as to their texture and their beauty. The province allotted to the men, as might be expected, is far more laborious and extensive than that of the women. Agriculture, architecture, boat-building, fishing, and other things that relate to navigation, are the objects of their care. Cultivated roots and fruits being their principal support, this requires their constant attention to agriculture, which they pursue very diligently, and seem to have brought almost to as great perfection as circumstances will permit. In planting the plantains and yams, they observe so much exactness, that which ever way you look, the rows present themselves regular and complete.

It is remarkable, that these people, who in many things display much taste and ingenuity, should show little of either

in building their houses. Those of the lower people are poor huts, and very small ; those of the better sort are larger and more comfortable. The dimensions of one of a middling size, are about thirty feet long, twenty broad, and twelve high. Their house is, properly speaking, a thatched roof or shed, supported by posts and rafters, disposed in a very judicious manner. The floor is raised with earth smoothed, and covered with strong thick matting, and kept very clean. Their whole furniture consists of a bowl or two, in which they make kava ; a few gourds ; cocoa-nut shells ; and some small wooden stools, which serve them for pillows. Their weapons are clubs of different sorts, (in the ornamenting of which they spend much time) spears, and darts. They have also bows and arrows ; but these seemed to be designed only for amusement, such as shooting at birds, and not for military purposes. They seem to have no set time for meals. They go to bed as soon as it is dark, and rise with the dawn in the morning. Their private diversions are chiefly singing, dancing and music, performed by the women. The dancing of the men has a thousand different motions with the hands, to which we are entire strangers ; and they are performed with an ease and grace which are not to be described but by those who have seen them. Whether their marriages be made lasting by any kind of solemn contract, we could not determine with precision ; but it is certain, that the bulk of the people satisfied themselves with one wife. The chiefs, however, have commonly several women ; though some of us were of opinion, that there was only one that was looked upon as a mistress of the family.

They shew great concern for the dead. They beat their teeth with stones, strike a shark's tooth into the head till the blood flows in streams, and thrust spears into the inner part of the thigh, into their sides, below the arm-pits, and through the cheeks into the mouth. All these operations convey an idea of such rigorous discipline, as must require an uncommon degree of affection, or the grossest super-

stitution, to exact. It should be observed, however, that the more painful operations are only practised on account of the death of those most nearly connected. The common people are interred in no particular spot. Their long and general mourning proves that they consider death as a very great evil. And this is confirmed by a very odd custom which they practise to avert it. They suppose that the Deity will accept of the little finger, as a sort of sacrifice efficacious enough to procure the recovery of their health. There was scarcely one in ten of them whom we did not find thus mutilated, in one or both hands. They seem to have little conception of future punishment. They believe, however, that they are justly punished upon earth; and consequently use every method to render their divinities propitious. The Supreme Author of most things they call Kallafootonga; who, they say, is a female, residing in the sky, and directing the thunder, wind, rain, and in general all the changes of the weather. They believe that when she is angry with them, the productions of the earth are blasted; that many things are destroyed by lightning; and that they themselves are afflicted with sickness and death, as well as their hogs and other animals. When this anger abates, they suppose that every thing is restored to its natural order. They also admit a plurality of Deities, though all inferior to Kallafootonga. But their notions of the power, and other attributes of these beings are so very absurd, that they suppose they have no farther concern with them after death.

Of the nature of their government, we know no more than the general outline. Some of them told us that the power of the king is unlimited, and that the life and property of the subject are at his disposal; and we saw instances enough to prove that the lower order of people have no property, nor safety for their persons, but at the will of the chief, to whom they respectively belong. The language of the Friendly Islands has the greatest affinity imaginable to that of New Zealand, of Watessoo, and Mangeen; and conse-

quently to that of Otaheite, and the Society Islands. Nothing material occurred for some time after we left the Friendly Islands. In the morning of the 8th of August, land was seen, nine or ten leagues distant. As we approached, we saw it every where guarded by a reef of coral rock, extending in some places a full mile from the land, and a high surf breaking upon it. We also observed people on several parts of the coast; and in a little time after we had reached the lee-side of the island, we saw them launch two canoes, into which above a dozen men got, and paddled towards us. I now shortened sail, as well to give these canoes time to come up to us, as to sound for anchorage. The canoes having advanced to about the distance of a pistol-shot, they stopped. Omai was employed, as he usually had been on such occasions, to use all his eloquence to prevail on the men in them to come nearer; but no entreaties could induce them to trust themselves within our reach. They kept eagerly pointing to the shore with their paddles, and calling to us to go thither; and several of their countrymen, who stood upon the beach, held up something white, which we considered also as an invitation to land. But I did not think proper to risk losing the advantage of a fair wind, for the sake of examining an island which appeared to be of little consequence. For this reason I made sail to the north, but not without getting from them, [during their vicinity to our ship, the name of their island, which they called Toobouai.

At day break, in the morning of the 12th, we saw the island of Maitoa. Soon after, Otaheite made its appearance. When we first drew near the island, several canoes came off to the ship, each conducted by two or three men. But, as they were common fellows, Omai took no particular notice of them, nor they of him. At length, a chief, whom I had known before, named Ootee, and Omai's brother-in-law, who chanced to be now at this corner of the island, and three or four more persons, all of whom knew Omai, came on board. Yet there was nothing either tender or striking

in their meeting. On the contrary, there seemed to be a perfect indifference on both sides, till Omai having taken his brother down into the cabin, opened the drawer where he kept his red feathers, and gave him a few. This being presently known among the rest of the natives upon deck, the face of affairs was entirely turned, and Ootee, who would hardly speak to Omai before, now begged that they might be friends, and exchange names. Omai accepted the honour, and confirmed it with a present of red feathers; and Ootee, by way of return, sent ashore for a hog. But it was evident to every one of us, that it was not the man, but his property, they were in love with. Such was Omai's first reception among his countrymen. I own I never expected it would be otherwise; but still I was in hopes that the valuable cargo of presents, with which the liberality of his friends in England had loaded him, would be the means of raising him into consequence, and of making him respected, and even courted by the first persons throughout the extent of the Society Islands. This would have happened, had he conducted himself with prudence; but instead of it, I am sorry to say, that he paid too little regard to the repeated advice of those who wished him well, and suffered himself to be duped by every designing knave. The important news of red feathers being on board our ships, having been conveyed on shore by Omai's friends, day had no sooner began to break next morning than we were surrounded by a multitude of canoes, crowded with people bringing hogs and fruit to market. At first, a quantity of feathers not greater than what might be got from a tomtit, would purchase a hog of forty or fifty pounds weight, but as almost every body in the ships was possessed of some of this precious article of trade, it fell in its value above five hundred per cent. before night. Soon after we had anchored, Omai's sister came on board to see him. I was happy to observe that, much to the honour of them both, their meeting was marked with expressions of the tenderest affection, easier to be conceived

than to be described. This moving scene having closed, and the ship being properly moored, Omai and I went on shore. My first object was to pay a visit to a man, whom my friend represented as a very extraordinary personage; indeed, for he said, that he was the god of Bolabola. We found him seated under one of those small awnings, which they usually carry in their larger canoes. He was an elderly man, and had lost the use of his limbs; so that he was carried from place to place upon a hand-barrow. From Omai's account of this person I expected to have seen some religious adoration paid to him; but, excepting some young plantain trees that lay before him, and upon the awning under which he sat, I could observe nothing by which he might be distinguished from their other chiefs. Omai presented to him a tuft of red feathers, tied to the end of a small stick; but after a little conversation on indifferent matters with this Bolabola man, his attention was drawn to an old woman, the sister of his mother. She was already at his feet, and had bedewed them plentifully with tears of joy. I left him with the old lady, in the midst of a number of people, who had gathered round him, and went to view a house, said to be built by strangers since I was here before. By an inscription, I found it was erected by some Spaniards that had been lately there in two ships from Lima. When I returned, I found Omai holding forth to a large company; and it was with some difficulty that he could be got away to accompany me on board; where I had an important affair to settle, in regard to the stated allowance of spirituous liquors; and I had the satisfaction to find, that the crews of both ships unanimously consented to an abridgement in the usual quantity, while at this place, that they might not be under the necessity of being put to a short allowance in a cold climate.

The next day we began some necessary operations. I also put on shore the bull, cows, horses, and sheep, and appointed two men to look after them while grazing; for I

did not intend to leave any of them at this part of the island. During the two following days it hardly ever ceased raining. The natives, nevertheless, came to us from every quarter, the news of our arrival having rapidly spread. On the 17th, Omai and I went on shore to pay a formal visit to a young chief, named Waheiaadoca, who had come down to the beach. On this occasion, Omai, assisted by some of his friends, dressed himself, not after the English fashion, nor that of Otaheite, nor that of Tongataboo, nor in the dress of any country upon earth; but in a strange medley of all that he was possessed of.

On our landing, Etary, or the god of Bolabola, carried on a hand-barrow, attended us to a large house, where he was set down; and we seated ourselves on each side of him. I caused a piece of Tongataboo cloth to be spread out before us, on which I laid the presents I intended to make. Presently the young chief came, attended by his mother, and several principal men, who all seated themselves at the other end of the cloth, facing us. Then a man, who sat by me, made a speech, consisting of short and separate sentences; part of which was dictated by those about him. He was answered by one from the opposite side near the chief. Etary spoke next; then Omai; and both of them were answered from the same quarter. These orations were entirely about my arrival and connections with them. The person who spoke last told me, amongst other things, that he was authorized to make a formal surrender of the province of Tiaraboo to me, and of every thing in it, which marks very plainly, that these people are no strangers to the policy of accommodating themselves to present circumstances. At length the young chief was directed by his attendants to come and embrace me; and, by way of confirming this treaty of friendship, we exchanged names. The ceremony being closed, he and his friends accompanied me on board to dinner. Having taken in a fresh supply of water, and finished all other necessary operations, on the 22nd I

brought off the cattle and sheep, and made ready for sea. On the 23rd, we got under sail, and steered for Matavai Bay, where the Resolution anchored the same evening. But the Discovery did not get in till the next morning. About nine o'clock in the morning, Otoo, the king of the whole island, attended by a great number of canoes full of people, came from Oparre, his place of residence, and sent a message on board, expressing his desire to see me. Accordingly I landed, accompanied by Omai and some of the officers. We found a prodigious number of people assembled on this occasion, and in the midst of them was the king, attended by his father, his two brothers, and three sisters. I went up first and saluted him, followed by Omai, who kneeled and embraced his legs. Omai had prepared himself for this ceremony, by dressing in his very best suit of clothes, and behaved with a great deal of respect and modesty; nevertheless, very little notice was taken of him. Perhaps envy had some share in producing this cold reception. He made the chief a present of a large piece of red feathers, and about two or three yards of gold cloth; and I gave him a suit of fine linen, a gold-laced hat, some tools, and, what was of more value than all the other articles, a quantity of red feathers, and one of the bonnets in use at the Friendly Islands. After the hurry of this visit was over, the king, and the whole royal family, accompanied me on board, followed by several canoes, laden with all kinds of provisions, in quantity sufficient to have served the companies of both ships for a week. Soon after, the king's mother, who had not been present at the first interview, came on board, bringing with her a quantity of provisions and cloth, which she divided between me and Omai. For although he was but little noticed at first by his countrymen, they no sooner gained the knowledge of his riches, than they began to court his friendship. I encouraged this as much as I could; for it was my wish to fix him with Otoo. As I intended to leave all my European animals at this island, I thought he

would be able to give some instruction about the management of them, and their use. Besides I knew and saw that the farther he was from his native island, he would be the better respected. But unfortunately, poor Omai rejected my advice, and conducted himself in so imprudent a manner, that he soon lost the friendship of Otoo, and of every other person of note in Otaheite. As soon as we had dined, a party of us accompanied Otoo to Oparre, taking with us the poultry with which we were to stock the island. These I left at Oparre, in the possession of Otoo; and the geese and ducks began to breed before we sailed. We found there a gander, which the natives told us was the same that Capt. Wallis had given to Oberea ten years before; several goats; and the Spanish bull, which they kept tied to a tree, near Otoo's house. I never saw a finer animal of his kind. He was now the property of Etary, and had been brought from Oheitepeha to this place, in order to be shipped for Bolabola. But it passes my comprehension how they can contrive to carry him in one of their canoes. If we had not arrived, it would have been of little consequence who had the property of him, as, without a cow, he could be of no use; and none had been left with him. Next day I put ashore three cows, a horse, a mare, and a sheep.

Having thus disposed of these passengers, I found myself lightened of a very heavy burthen. The trouble and vexation that attended the bringing this living cargo thus far, is hardly to be conceived. But the satisfaction that I felt in having been so fortunate as to fulfil his majesty's humane design, in sending such valuable animals to supply the wants of two worthy nations, sufficiently recompensed me for the many anxious hours I had passed, before this subordinate object of my voyage could be carried into execution. As I intended to make some stay here, we set up the two observatories on Matavai Point. Adjoining to them, two tents were pitched, for the reception of a guard, and of such people as it might be necessary to leave on shore in different depart-

ments. At this station I intrusted the command to Mr. King; who, at the same time, attended the observations for ascertaining the going of the time-keeper, and other purposes.

On the 26th, I had a piece of ground cleared for a garden, and planted in it several articles. Some melons, potatoes, and two pine-apple plants, were in a fair way of succeeding before we left the place. I had brought from the Friendly Islands several shaddock trees. These I also planted here; and they can hardly fail of success, unless their growth should be checked by the same premature curiosity which destroyed a vine, planted by the Spaniards at Oheitepeha. A number of the natives got together to taste the first fruit it bore, but, as the grapes were still sour, they considered it as little better than poison, and it was unanimously determined to tread it under foot. In that state, Omai found it by chance, and was overjoyed at the discovery; for he had full confidence that if he had but grapes, he could make wine. Accordingly he had several slips cut off from the tree, to carry with him; and we pruned and put in order the remains of it. Probably, grown wise by Omai's instructions, they may now suffer the fruit to grow to perfection, and not pass so hasty a sentence upon it again.

We found here the young man whom we called Oedidee, but whose real name is Heete-heete. I had carried him from Ulietea, in 1773, and brought him back in 1774; after he had visited the Friendly Islands, New Zealand, Easter Island, and the Marquesas, and been on board my ship, in that extensive navigation, about seven months. He was tenacious of his good breeding, and 'yes Sir,' or 'if you please, Sir,' were frequently repeated by him. Heete-heete, who is a native of Bolabola, had arrived in Otaheite three months before, with no other intention, as we could learn, than to gratify his curiosity, or perhaps some other favourite passion. It was evident, however, that he preferred the modes and even the garb of his own countrymen to ours. For though I gave him some clothes, which our Admiralty Board had

been pleased to send for his use (to which I added a chest of tools, and a few other articles, as a present from myself) he declined wearing them after a few days. This instance may be urged as a proof of the strong propensity natural to man, of returning to habits acquired at an early age, and only interrupted by accident.

In the morning of the 27th, a man came from Oheitepeha, and told us that two Spanish ships had anchored in that bay the night before ; and, in confirmation of this intelligence, he produced a piece of coarse blue cloth, which he said he got out of one of the ships ; and which, indeed, to appearance, was almost quite new. He added, that Mateema was in one of the ships ; and that they were to come down to Matavai in a day or two. Some other circumstances which he mentioned gave the story so much an air of truth, that I dispatched Lieut. Williamson in a boat to look into Oheitepeha Bay ; and, in the mean time, I put the ships into a proper posture of defence. For though England and Spain were in peace when I left Europe, for ought I knew, a different scene might by this time have opened. However, on farther enquiry, the fellow had imposed upon us ; and this was confirmed by Williamson's report, as soon as he returned.

Hitherto the attention of Otoo and his people was confined to us ; but next morning a new scene of business opened, by the arrival of messengers from Eimeo, with intelligence that the people in that island were in arms, and that Otoo's partizans there had been worsted, and obliged to retreat to the mountains. The quarrel between the two islands, which commenced in 1774, had, it seems, partly subsided ever since. The formidable armament, which I saw at that time, had sailed soon after I then left Otaheite ; but the malcontents of Eimeo had made so stout a resistance, that the fleet had returned without effecting much ; and now another expedition was necessary. On the arrival of the messengers, all the chiefs, who happened to be at Matavai, assembled at Otoo's house, where I actually was at the time, and had the

honour to be admitted into their council. One of the messengers opened the business in a speech of considerable length, in order to excite the assembled chiefs of Otaheite to arm on the occasion. This opinion was combated by others who were against commencing hostilities. At length the party for war prevailed. Otoo, during the whole debate, remained silent. Those of the council who were for prosecuting the war, applied to me for assistance; and all of them wanted to know what part I would take. Omai was sent for to be my interpreter; but, as he could not be found, I was obliged to speak for myself, and told them, as well as I could, that as the people of Eimeo had never offended me, I could not think myself at liberty to engage in hostilities against them. With this declaration they seemed satisfied. On inquiring into the cause of the war, we were told that some years ago a brother of Waheadooa of Tieraboo, was sent to Eimeo, at the request of Maheine, a popular chief of that island, to be their king; but that he had not been there a week, before Maheine, having caused him to be killed, set up for himself in opposition to Tierataboonoe, his sister's son, who became the lawful heir; or else had been pitched upon by the people of Otaheite, to succeed to the government on the death of the other.

Towha, a man of much weight in the island, happened not to be at Matavai at this time. It however appeared that he was no stranger to what was transacted; and that he entered with more spirit into the affair than any other chief. For, early in the morning of the 1st of September, a messenger arrived from him to acquaint Otoo, that he had killed a man to be sacrificed to the Eatooa, to implore the assistance of the god against Eimeo. This act of worship was to be performed at the great morai at Attaboaroo; and Otoo's presence, it seems, was absolutely necessary on that solemn occasion. I proposed to Otoo that I might be allowed to accompany him. To this he readily consented; and we immediately set out in my boat, with my old friend Potatou,

Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Webber ; Omai following in a canoe. As soon as we landed at Attahooroo, which was about two o'clock in the afternoon, Otoo expressed his desire that the seamen might be ordered to remain in the boat ; and that Mr. Anderson, Mr. Webber, and myself, might take off our hats as soon as we should come to the morai, to which we immediately proceeded, attended by a great many men and some boys, but not one woman. We found four priests, and their attendants, or assistants, waiting for us.

The ceremonies now began. One of the priests' attendants brought a young plantain tree, and laid it down before Otoo. One of the priests, seated at the morai, now began a long prayer. During this prayer, a man who stood by the officiating priest, held in his hand two bundles, seemingly of cloth. In one of them, as we afterwards found, was the royal maro ; and the other, if I may be allowed the expression, was the ark of the Eatooa. As soon as the prayer was ended, the priests at the morai, with their attendants, went and sat down by those upon the beach, carrying with them the two bundles. Here they renewed their prayers. The dead body was now taken out of a canoe, and laid upon the beach, with the feet to the sea. The priests placed themselves around it, some sitting and others standing ; and one, or more of them, repeated sentences for about ten minutes. It was now laid in a parallel direction with the sea-shore. One of the priests then, standing at the feet of it, pronounced a long prayer, in which he was at times joined by the others, each holding in his hand a tuft of red feathers. In the course of this prayer some hair was pulled off the head of the sacrifice, and the left eye taken out, both of which were presented to Otoo wrapped up in a green leaf. He did not however touch it, but gave, to the man who presented it, the tuft of feathers which he had received from Towha. This, with the hair and eye, was carried back to the priests. During some part of this last ceremony, a king-fisher making a noise in the trees, Otoo

turned to me, saying, "That is the Eatooa!" and seemed to look upon it to be a good omen. The body was then carried a little way with its head toward the morai, and laid under a tree, near which were fixed three broad thin pieces of wood, differently but rudely carved. The bundles of cloth, were laid on a part of the morai, and the tufts of red feathers were placed at the feet of the sacrifice, round which the priests took their stations, and we were now allowed to go as near as we pleased. He, who seemed to be the chief priest, sat at a small distance, and spoke for a quarter of an hour, but with different tones and gestures, so that he seemed to expostulate with, or question the dead person, to whom he constantly addressed himself. He then chaunted a prayer, which lasted near half an hour, in a whining, melancholy tone, accompanied by two other priests, and in which Potatou and some others joined. In the course of this prayer some more hair was plucked by the priest from the head of the corpse, and put upon one of the bundles. After this the chief priest prayed alone, holding in his hand the feathers, which came from Towha. When he had finished, he gave them to another, who prayed in like manner. Then all the tufts of feathers were laid upon the bundles of cloth, which closed the ceremony at this place. The corpse was then carried up to the most conspicuous part of the morai, with the feathers, the two bundles of cloth, and the drums, the last of which beat slowly. The feathers and bundles, were laid against the pile of stones, and the corpse at the foot of them. The priests, having again seated themselves round it, renewed their prayers, while some of their attendants dug a hole about two feet deep, into which they threw the unhappy victim, and covered it over with earth and stones. While they were putting him into the grave, a boy squeaked aloud, and Omai said to me that it was the Eatooa. During this time a fire having been made, a dog was produced and killed, by twisting his neck and suffocating him. The hair was singed off, and the entrails taken

out and thrown into the fire, where they were left to consume. The body of the dog, after being besmeared with blood, and dried over the fire, was, with the liver and heart, carried and laid down before the priests, who sat praying round the grave. They continued their ejaculations over the dog for some time, while two men, at intervals, beat on two drums very loud, and a boy screamed as before in a loud shrill voice, three different times. This, as we were told, was to invite Eatooa to feast on the banquet that they had prepared for him. As soon as the priests had ended their prayers, the carcase of the dog, with what belonged to it, was laid on a scaffold, about six feet high, that stood close by, on which lay the remains of two other dogs, and of two pigs, which had lately been sacrificed, and at this time emitted an intolerable stench. This kept us at a greater distance than would otherwise have been required of us. When the dog was put upon the scaffold, the priests and attendants gave a kind of shout, which closed the ceremonies for the present. The day being now also closed, we were conducted to a house belonging to Potatou, where we were entertained and lodged for the night. Some other religious rites were performed next day ; but on this subject we think we have said enough to satisfy our readers, perhaps to disgust them. The unhappy victim, offered to the object of their worship, upon this occasion, seemed to be a middle-aged man ; and, as we were told, was a towtow ; that is, one of the lowest class of the people. But, after all my enquiries, I could not learn that he had been pitched upon, on account of any particular crime, committed by him, meriting death. Having had an opportunity of examining the appearance of the body of the poor sufferer, now offered up, I should observe that it was bloody about the head and face, and a good deal bruised upon the right temple ; which marked the manner of his being killed. And we were told, that he had been privately knocked on the head with a stone.

Whenever any one of the great chiefs thinks a human

sacrifice necessary, on any particular emergency, he pitches upon the victim. Some of his trusty servants are then sent, who fall upon him suddenly, and put him to death with a club, or by stoning him. The king is next acquainted with it, whose presence, at the solemn rites that follow, is, as I was told, absolutely necessary; and, indeed, on the present occasion, we could observe that Otoo bore a principal part. It is much to be regretted, that a practice, so horrid in its own nature, and so destructive of that inviolable right of self-preservation, which every one is born with, should be found still existing. Though we should suppose that never more than one person is sacrificed on any single occasion at Otaheite, it is more than probable that these occasions happen so frequently, as to make a shocking waste of the human race; for I counted no less than forty-nine skulls of former victims, lying before the morai, where we saw one more added to the number. And, as none of those skulls had as yet suffered any considerable change from the weather, it may hence be inferred that no great length of time had elapsed since at least this considerable number of unhappy wretches had been offered upon this altar of blood.

Human sacrifices, however, are not the only barbarous custom we find still prevailing amongst this benevolent humane people. For, besides cutting out the jaw-bones of their enemies, slain in battle, which they carry about as trophies, they in some measure offer their bodies as a sacrifice to the Eatooa. Soon after a battle in which they have been victors, they collect all the dead that have fallen into their hands, and bring them to the morai, where, with a great deal of ceremony, they dig a hole, and bury them all in it, as so many offerings to the gods; but their skulls are never after taken up. Before we parted, we were asked, if the solemnity, at which we had been present, answered our expectations; what opinion we had of its efficacy; and whether we performed such acts of worship in our own country? During the celebration of the horrid ceremony,

we had preserved a profound silence; but as soon as it was closed, we made no scruple in expressing our sentiments very freely about it to Otoo, and those who attended him; of course, therefore, I could not conceal my detestation of it, in a subsequent conversation with Towha. Omai was made use of as our interpreter; and he entered into our arguments with so much spirit, that this chief seemed to be in great wrath, especially when he was told, that if he had put a man to death in England, as he had done here, his rank would not have protected him from being hanged for it. Upon this he exclaimed, *maeno! maeno!* (vile! vile!) and would not hear another word. During this debate, many of the natives were present, chiefly the attendants and servants of Towha himself; and when Omai began to explain the punishment that would be inflicted in England upon the greatest man, if he killed the meanest servant, they seemed to listen with great attention; and were, probably, of a different opinion from that of their master on this subject.

On the 4th of September, a party of us dined ashore with Omai, who gave excellent fare, consisting of fish, fowls, pork, and puddings. After dinner I attended Otoo, who had been one of the party, back to his house, where I found all his servants very busy, getting a quantity of provisions ready for me. Amongst other articles there was a large hog, which they killed in my presence. There was also a large pudding, the whole process in making which I saw. It was composed of bread-fruit, ripe plantains, taro, and palm or pandanus nuts, each rasped, scraped, or beat up fine, and baked by itself. A quantity of juice, pressed from cocoa-nut kernels, was put into a large tray, or wooden vessel. The other articles, hot from the oven, were deposited in this vessel, and a few hot stones were also put in to make the contents simmer. Three or four men made use of sticks to stir the several ingredients, till they were incorporated one with another, and the juice of the cocoa-nut was turned to oil, so that the whole mass, at last, became of

the consistency of a hasty-pudding. Some of these puddings are excellent; and few, that we make in England, equal them. Otoo's hog being baked, and the pudding, which I have described, being made, they, together with two living hogs and a quantity of bread-fruit and cocoa-nuts, were put into a canoe, and sent on board my ship, followed by myself and all the royal family.

In the evening of the 7th, we played off some fire-works, before a great concourse of people. Some were highly entertained with the exhibition; but by far the greater number of spectators were terribly frightened, insomuch that it was with difficulty we could prevail upon them to keep together to see the end of the show. A table-rocket was the last. It flew off the table and dispersed the whole crowd in a moment; even the most resolute among them fled with precipitation.

Otoo was not more attentive to supply our wants by a succession of presents, than he was to contribute to our amusement by a succession of diversions. A party of us having gone down to Oparre on the 10th, he treated us with what may be called a play. His three sisters were the actresses; and the dresses they appeared in were new and elegant; that is, more so than we had usually met with at any of these islands. In the evening we returned from Oparre, where we left Otoo, and all the royal family; and I saw none of them till the 12th; when all, but the chief himself, paid me a visit. He, as they told me, was gone to Attahoeroo, to assist this day at another human sacrifice, which the chief of Tiaraboo had sent thither to be offered up at the morai. This second instance, in the course of a few days, was too melancholy a proof how numerous the victims of this bloody superstition are amongst this humane people. I would have been present at this sacrifice too, had I known of it in time, for now it was too late. The following evening Otoo returned from exercising this most disagreeable of all his duties as sovereign; and the next day, being now honoured

with his company, Capt. Clerke and I, mounted on horseback, took a ride round the plain of Matavai, to the very great surprise of a great train of people who attended on the occasion, gazing upon us with as much astonishment as if we had been centaurs. Omai, indeed, had once or twice before this attempted to get on horseback, but he had been as often thrown off before he could contrive to seat himself, so that this was the first time they had seen any body ride a horse. What Capt. Clerke and I began, was, after this, repeated every day while we staid, by one or another of our people. And yet the curiosity of the natives continued still unabated. They were exceedingly delighted with these animals, after they had seen the use that was made of them; and, as far as I could judge, they conveyed to them a better idea of the greatness of other nations, than all other novelties put together, that their European visitors had carried amongst them.

In the morning of the 18th, Mr. Anderson, myself, and Omai, went again with Otoo to Eparre, and took with us the sheep which I intended to leave upon the island, consisting of an English ram and ewe, and three Cape ewes, all which I gave to Otoo. After dining with Otoo, we returned to Matavai, leaving him at Oparre. This day, and also the 19th, we were very sparingly supplied with fruit. Otoo hearing of this, he and his brother, who had attached himself to Capt. Clerke, came from Oparre, between nine and ten o'clock in the evening, with a large supply for both ships. This marked his humane attention more strongly than any thing he had hitherto done for us. The next day all the royal family came with presents; so that our wants were not only relieved, but we had more provisions than we could consume.

Having got all our water on board, the ships being caulked, the rigging overhauled, and every thing put in order, I began to think of leaving the island, that I might have sufficient time to spare for visiting the others in this

neighbourhood. With this view, we removed from the shore our observatories and instruments, and bent our sails. Early in the morning of the 22nd, Otoo and his father came on board to know when I proposed sailing. For, having been informed that there was a good harbour at Eimeo, I told them that I should visit that island on my way to Huaheine; and they were desirous of taking a passage with me, and of their fleet sailing at the same time to reinforce Towha. As I was ready to take my departure, I left it to them to name the day; and the Wednesday following was fixed upon, when I was to take on board Otoo, his father, mother, and, in short, the whole family. These points being settled, I proposed setting out immediately for Oparre, where all the fleet, fitted out for the expedition, was to assemble that day, and to be reviewed. I had just time to get into my boat, when news was brought that Towha had concluded a treaty with Maheine, and had returned with his fleet to Attahooroo. This unexpected event made all farther proceedings in a military way quite unnecessary; and the war canoes, instead of rendezvouzing at Oparre, were ordered home to their respective districts. I now returned on board my ship, attended by Otoo's mother, his three sisters, and eight more women. At first, I thought this numerous train of females came into my boat with no other intention than to get a passage to Matavai. But, when we arrived at the ship, they told me that they intended to pass the night on board, for the express purpose of undertaking the cure of a disorder I had complained of; which was a pain of the rheumatic kind. I accepted the friendly offer, had a bed spread for them on the cabin floor, and submitted myself to their directions. They began to squeeze me with both hands, from head to foot, but particularly on the parts where the pain was lodged, till they made my bones crack, and my flesh became a perfect mummy. In short, after undergoing this discipline for about a quarter of an hour, I was glad to get away from them. However the operation gave me im-

mediate relief, which encouraged me to submit to another rubbing down before I went to bed ; and it was so effectual, that I found myself pretty easy all the night after. My female physicians repeated their prescription the next morning before they went ashore, and again in the evening, when they returned on board, after which I found the pains entirely removed ; and the cure being perfected, they took their leave of me the following morning. This they call *romee* ; an operation, which, in my opinion, far exceeds the flesh brush, or any thing of the kind, that we make use of externally. It is universally practised amongst these islanders ; being sometimes performed by the men, but more generally by the women.

The war with Eimeo being finally closed, all our friends paid us a visit on the 26th ; and as they knew that we were on the point of sailing, brought with them more hogs than we could take off their hands. For, having no salt left to preserve any, we wanted no more than for present use.

Our friend Omai got one good thing at this island, for the many good things he gave away. This was a very fine double sailing canoe, completely equipped, and fit for the sea. Some time before, I had made up for him a suit of English colours ; but he thought these too valuable to be used at this time, and patched up a parcel of colours, such as flags and pendants, to the number of ten or a dozen, which he spread on different parts of his vessel, all at the same time ; and drew together as many people to look at her, as a man of war would, dressed, in a European port. These streamers of Omai, were a mixture of English, French, Spanish, and Dutch, which were all the European colours that he had seen. Omai had also provided himself with a good stock of cloth and cocoa-nut oil, which are not only in greater plenty, but much better at Otaheite than at any of the Society Islands ; insomuch that they are articles of trade. Omai would not have behaved so inconsistently, and so much unlike himself, as he did in many instances, but for his sister

and brother-in-law, who, together with a few more of their acquaintance, engrossed him entirely to themselves, with no other view than to strip him of every thing he had got. And they would undoubtedly have succeeded in their scheme, if I had not put a stop to it in time, by taking the most useful articles of his property into my possession.

On the 28th, Otoo came on board, and informed me, that he had got a canoe, which he desired I would take with me, and carry home, as a present from him to his Majesty, the King of Great Britain, whom he called Earee rahie no Pretane; it being the only thing, he said, that he could send worth his acceptance. I was not a little pleased with Otoo for this mark of his gratitude. It was a thought entirely his own, not one of us having given him the least hint about it; and it shewed that he fully understood to whom he was indebted for the most valuable presents he had received. As it was too large for me to take on board, I could only thank him for his good intention; but it would have pleased him much better, if his present could have been accepted.

We were detained here some days longer than I expected, by light breezes from the west. At length, at three o'clock in the evening of the 29th, the wind came at East, and we weighed anchor. The frequent visits that we had lately paid to this island, seem to have created a full persuasion that the intercourse will not be discontinued. It was strictly enjoined me by Otoo, to request, in his name, the Earee rahie no Pretane, to send him, by the next ships, red feathers, and the birds that produce them; axes; half a dozen muskets, with powder and shot; and by no means to forget horses. If I could have prevailed upon Omai to fix himself at Otahite, I should not have left it so soon as I did. For there was not a probability of our being cheaper or better supplied with refreshments at any other place, than we continued to be here, even at the time of our leaving it. Besides, such a cordial friendship and confidence subsisted between us and the inhabitants, as could hardly be expected

any where else ; and it is a little extraordinary, that this friendly intercourse had never been once interrupted by any untoward accident, nor had there been a theft committed that deserves to be mentioned.

When the Spanish ships, which had some time before touched here, left the island, four Spaniards remained behind. Two were priests, one a servant, and the fourth made himself very popular among the natives, who distinguish him by the name of Matema. He seems to have been a person who had studied their language ; or, at least to have spoken it so as to be understood ; and to have taken uncommon pains to impress the minds of the islanders with the most exalted ideas of the greatness of the Spanish nation, and to make them think meanly of the English. He even went so far as to assure them, that we no longer existed as an independent nation ; that Pretane was only a small island, which they, the Spaniards, had entirely destroyed ; and, for me, that they had met with me at sea, and, with a few shot, had sent my ship, and every soul in her, to the bottom ; so that my visiting Otaheite, at this time, was of course very unexpected. With what design the priests staid we cannot guess. If it was to convert the people to the catholic faith, they had not succeeded in any one instance. When they had staid ten months, two ships came to Oheitepeha, took them on board, and sailed again in five days. This hasty departure shews that whatever design the Spaniards might have had upon this island, they had now laid it aside ; yet before they went away, they would have the natives believe that they still meant to return, and to bring with them houses, all kinds of animals, and men and women, who were to settle, live and die on the island. Otoo said if the Spaniards should return, he would not let them come to Matavai Fort, which, he said, was ours. It was easy to see that the idea pleased him ; little thinking that the completion of it would, at once, deprive him of his kingdom, and the people of their liberties. This shews with what

facility a settlement might be obtained at Otahete; which, grateful as I am for repeated good offices, I hope will never happen.

We had no sooner anchored at the neighbouring island of Eimeo, than the ships were crowded with the inhabitants, whom curiosity alone brought on board; for they had nothing with them for the purpose of barter. But, the next morning, this deficiency was supplied; several canoes then arriving from more distant parts, which brought with them abundance of bread-fruit, cocoa-nuts, and a few hogs. These they exchanged for hatchets, nails, and beads; for red feathers were not so much sought for here, as at Otahete. In the morning of the 2nd of October, Maheine, the chief of the island, paid me a visit. He approached the ship with great caution, and it required some persuasion to get him on board. This chief, who, with a few followers, had made himself independent of Otahete, is between forty and fifty years old. He is bald-headed; which is rather an uncommon appearance in these islands, at that age. He wore a kind of turban, and seemed ashamed to shew his head. They had seen us shave the head of one of their people, whom we had caught stealing; they therefore concluded that this was the punishment usually inflicted by us upon all thieves; and one or two of our gentlemen, whose heads were not overburthened with hair, we could observe, lay under violent suspicions of being tetos, or thieves,

Having employed two or three days in getting up all our spirit casks, to tar their heads, which we found necessary, to save them from the efforts of a small insect to destroy them, we hauled the ship off into the stream, on the 6th of October in the morning, intending to put to sea the next day; but an accident happened which prevented it. We had sent our goats ashore, to graze, with two men to look after them; notwithstanding which precaution, the natives had contrived to steal one of them in the evening. The loss of this goat would have been of little consequence, if it had

not interfered with my views of stocking other islands with these animals ; but this being the case, it became necessary to recover it, if possible ; and after much trouble we succeeded.

At Eimeo we abundantly supplied the ships with firewood. We had not taken in any at Otaheite, where the procuring this article would have been very inconvenient ; there not being a tree at Matavai but what is useful to the inhabitants. We also got here a good store of refreshments. There is a very striking difference in the women of this island and those of Otaheite. Those of Eimeo are of low stature, are of a dark hue, and, in general, forbidding features. If we met with a fine woman amongst them, we were sure, upon enquiry, to find that she had come from some other island.

We left Eimeo on the 12th of October, 1777, and the next morning we saw Huaheine. At noon, we anchored at the north entrance of Owharre harbour, which is on the west side of the island. Our arrival brought all the principal people of the island to our ships, on the next morning, being the 13th. This was just what I wished, as it was high time to think of settling Omai ; and the presence of these chiefs, I guessed, would enable me to do it in the most satisfactory manner. He now seemed to have an inclination to establish himself at Ulietea ; and if he and I could have agreed about the mode of bringing that plan to bear, I should have had no objection to adopt it. His father had been dispossessed by the men of Bolabola, when they conquered Ulietea, of some land in that island, and I made no doubt of being able to get it restored to the son in an amicable manner. For that purpose it was necessary that he should be on good terms with those who now were masters of the island ; but he was too great a patriot to listen to any such thing ; and was vain enough to suppose that I would reinstate him in his forfeited lands by force. This made it impossible to fix him at Ulietea, and pointed out to me Huaheine as the proper place. I, therefore, resolved to avail myself of the presence of the

chief men of the island, and to make this proposal to them. After the hurry of the morning was over, we got ready to pay a formal visit to Taireetareea, the sovereign, meaning then to introduce this business. Omai dressed himself very properly on this occasion ; and prepared a handsome present for the chief himself, and another for his Eatooa. Indeed, after he got clear of the gang that surrounded him at Otaheite, he behaved with such prudence as to gain respect. We waited some time for Taireetareea, as I would do nothing till the Earee rahie came ; but when he appeared, I found that his presence might have been dispensed with, as he was not above eight or ten years of age. Omai, who stood at a little distance from this circle of great men, began with making his offering to the gods, consisting of red feathers, cloth, &c. Each article was laid before one of the company, who, I understood, was a priest, and was delivered with a set speech or prayer, spoken by one of Omai's friends, who sat by him, but mostly dictated by himself. In these prayers he did not forget his friends in England, nor those who had brought him safe back. The Earee rahie no Pretane, Lord Sandwich, Toote, Tatee, (Cook and Clarke) were mentioned in every one of them. When Omai's offerings and prayers were finished, the priest took each article, in the same order in which it had been laid before him, and after repeating a prayer, sent it to the morai ; which, as Omai told us, was at a great distance, otherwise the offerings would have been made there. These religious ceremonies having been performed, Omai sat down by me, and we entered upon business. Omai's establishment was then proposed to the assembled chiefs. He acquainted them, " that he had been carried by us into our country, where he was well received by the great king and his Earees, and treated with every mark of regard and affection, while he staid amongst us ; that he had been brought back again, enriched by our liberality, with a variety of articles, which would prove very useful to his countrymen ; and that, besides the

two horses which were to remain with him, several new and valuable animals had been left at Otaheite, which would soon multiply, and furnish a sufficient number for the use of all the islands in the neighbourhood. He then signified to them, that it was my earnest request, in return for all my friendly offices, that they would give him a piece of land to build a house upon, and to raise provisions for himself and servants; adding, that if this could not be obtained for him in Huaheine, either by gift or by purchase, I was determined to carry him to Ulietea, and fix him there."

One of the chiefs immediately expressed himself to this effect: "that the whole Island of Huaheine, and every thing in it were mine; and that, therefore, I might give what portion of it I pleased to my friend." Omai was greatly pleased to hear this; thinking, no doubt, that I should be very liberal, and give him enough. But to offer what it would have been improper to accept, I considered as offering nothing at all; and, therefore, I now desired that they would not only assign the particular spot, but also the exact quantity of land, which they would allot for the settlement. And, after a short consultation among themselves, my request was granted by general consent; and the ground immediately pitched upon, adjoining to the house where our meeting was held. The extent along the shore of the harbour, was about two hundred yards; and its depth to the foot of the hill somewhat more; but a proportional part of the hill was included in the grant. This business being settled to the satisfaction of all parties, I set up a tent ashore, established a post, and erected the observatories. The carpenters of both ships were also set to work to build a small house for Omai, in which he might secure the European commodities that were his property. At the same time, some hands were employed in making a garden for his use.

Omai now began seriously to attend to his own affairs, and repented heartily of his ill-judged prodigality while at Otaheite. He found at Huaheine, a brother, a sister, and a

brother-in-law ; the sister being married. But these did not plunder him, as he had lately been by his other relations. I was sorry, however, to discover, that though they were too honest to do him any injury, they were of too little consequence in the island to do him any positive good. They had neither authority nor influence to protect his person, or his property ; and, in that helpless situation, I had reason to apprehend that he ran great risk of being stripped of every thing he had got from us, as soon as he should cease to have us within his reach. A man who is richer than his neighbours, is sure to be envied by numbers who wish to see him brought down to their own level. But in countries, where civilization, law, and religion, impose their restraints, the rich have a reasonable ground of security. It was very different with Omai. He was to live amongst those who are strangers, in a great measure, to any other principle of action besides the immediate impulse of their natural feelings. But, what was his principal danger, he was to be placed in the very singular situation of being the only rich man in the community to which he was to belong. And having, by a fortunate connection with us, got into his possession an accumulated quantity of a species of treasures which none of his countrymen could create by any art or industry of their own, while all coveted a share of this envied wealth, it was natural to apprehend that all would be ready to join in attempting to strip its sole proprietor. To prevent this, if possible, I advised him to make a proper distribution of some of his moveables, to two or three of the principal chiefs ; who, being thus gratified themselves, might be induced to take him under their patronage, and protect him from the injuries of others. He promised to follow my advice ; and I heard, with satisfaction, before I sailed, that this very important step had been taken. Not trusting, however, entirely to the operations of gratitude, I had recourse to the more forcible motive of intimidation. With this view, I took every opportunity of notifying to the inhabitants, that it was

my intention to return to their island again, after being absent the usual time; and that if I did not find Omai in the same state of security in which I was now to leave him, all those whom I should then discover to have been his enemies, might expect to feel the weight of my resentment.

While we lay in this harbour, we carried ashore the bread, remaining in the bread-room, to clear it of vermin. The number of cock-roaches that infested the ship at this time is incredible; the damage they did us was very considerable; and every method devised by us to destroy them proved ineffectual. According to Mr. Anderson's observations, they were of two sorts, the *blatta orientalis*, and *germanica*. The first of these had been carried home in the ship from her former voyage, where they withstood the severity of the hard winter, in 1766, though she was in dock all the time. The others had only made their appearance since our leaving New Zealand; but had increased so fast, that when a sail was loosened, thousands of them fell upon the decks. The *orientalis*, though in infinite numbers, scarcely came out but in the night, when they made every thing in the cabin seem as if in motion, from the particular noise in crawling about.

The intercourse of trade and friendly offices, was carried on between us and the natives, without being disturbed by any one accident, till the evening of the 22nd, when a man found means to get into Mr. Bayley's observatory, and to carry off a sextant unobserved. As soon as I was made acquainted with this, I went ashore, and got Omai to apply to the chiefs to procure restitution. He did so; but they took no steps towards it, being more attentive to a heeva that was then acting, till I ordered the performers of the exhibition to desist. They were now convinced that I was in earnest, and began to make some enquiry after the thief, who was sitting in the midst of them, quite unconcerned, insomuch that I was in great doubt of his being the guilty person; especially as he denied it. Omai, however, as-

During me that he was the man, I sent him on board the ship and there confined him. This raised a general ferment amongst the assembled natives; and the whole body fled, in spite of all my endeavours to stop them. Having employed Omai to examine the prisoner, with some difficulty he was brought to confess where he had hid the sextant; but, as it was now dark, we could not find it till day-light the next morning, when it was brought back unhurt. After this, the natives recovered from their fright, and began to gather about us as usual. As the thief seemed to be a very hardened fellow, I punished him with some severity. This, however, did not deter him; for, in the night, between the 24th and 25th, a general alarm was spread, occasioned, as was said, by one of our goats being stolen by this very man. On examination, we found that all was safe in that quarter. Probably, the goats were so well guarded, that he could not put his design into execution. But his hostilities had succeeded against another object; and it appeared that he had destroyed and carried off several vines and cabbage plants, in Omai's grounds; and he publicly threatened to kill him, and to burn his house, as soon as we should leave the island. To prevent the fellow's doing me and Omai any more mischief, I had him seized, and confined again on board the ship, with a view of carrying him off the island; and it seemed to give general satisfaction to the chiefs, that I meant thus to dispose of him.

Omai's house being nearly finished, many of his moveables were carried ashore on the 26th. Amongst a variety of other useless articles, was a box of toys, which when exposed to public view, seemed greatly to please the gazing multitude. But as to his pots, kettles, dishes, plates, drinking-mugs, glasses, and the whole train of our domestic accommodations, hardly any one of his countrymen would so much as look at them. Omai himself now began to think that they were of no manner of use to him; that a baked hog was more savory food than a boiled one; that a

plantain leaf made as good a dish or plate as pewter ; and that a cocoa-nut shell was as convenient a goblet as a black jack. And therefore, he very wisely disposed of as many of these articles of English furniture, for the kitchen and pantry, as he could find purchasers for, amongst the people of the ships ; receiving from them, in return, hatchets, and other iron tools, which had a more intrinsic value in this part of the world, and added more to his distinguishing superiority over those with whom he was to pass the remainder of his days.

Early in the morning of the 30th, the Bolabola man, whom I had in confinement, found means to make his escape out of the ship. Upon enquiry it appeared, that not only the sentry placed over the prisoner, but the whole watch, upon the quarter deck, where he was confined, had laid themselves down to sleep. He seized the opportunity to take the key of the irons out of the binnacle drawer, where he had seen it put, and set himself at liberty. I was not a little pleased to hear, afterward, that this fellow had transported himself to Ulietea.

As soon as Omai was settled in his new habitation, I began to think of leaving the island ; and got every thing off from the shore this evening, except the horse and mare, and a goat big with kid ; which were left in the possession of our friend, with whom we were now finally to part. I also gave him a boar and two sows of the English breed ; and he had got a sow or two of his own. The history of Omai, will, perhaps, interest a very numerous class of readers, more than any other occurrence of the voyage. Every circumstance, therefore, which may serve to convey a satisfactory account of the exact situation in which he was left, will be thought worth preserving ; and the following particulars are added, to complete the view of his domestic establishment. He had picked up, at Otaheite, four or five Toutous ; the two New Zealand youths remained with him ; and his brother, and some others, joined him at Huaheine ;

so that his family consisted already of eight or ten persons ; if that can be called a family, to which not a single female, as yet, belonged. At present Omai did not seem at all disposed to take unto himself a wife. The house that we erected for him was twenty-four feet by eighteen ; and ten feet high. It was settled that, immediately after our departure, he should begin to build a large house, after the fashion of his country, one end of which was to be brought over that which we had erected, so as to inclose it entirely, for greater security. In this work, some of the chiefs promised to assist him ; and, if the intended building should cover the ground which he marked out, it will be as large as most upon the island. His European weapons consisted of a musket, bayonet, and cartouch box ; a fowling-piece ; two pair of pistols ; and two or three swords or cutlasses. The possession of these made him quite happy ; which was my only view in giving him such presents ; for I was always of opinion, that he would have been happier without fire-arms, and other European weapons, than with them ; as such implements of war, in the hands of one, whose prudent use of them I had some grounds for mistrusting, would rather increase his danger than establish his superiority. After he had got on shore every thing that belonged to him, and was settled in his house, he had most of the officers of both ships, two or three times, to dinner ; and his table was always well supplied with the very best provisions that the island produced.

Before I sailed, I had the following inscription cut upon the outside of his house :

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 2 Novembris, 1777.

*Naves { Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.
Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.*

On the 2nd of November, at four in the afternoon, I took the advantage of a breeze which then sprung up at east, and sailed out of the harbour. Most of our friends remained

on board till the ships were under sail ; when, to gratify their curiosity, I ordered five guns to be fired. They then all took their leave, except Omai, who remained till we were at sea. In an hour or two after he went ashore, taking a very affectionate farewell of all the officers. He sustained himself with a manly resolution till he came to me. Then his utmost efforts to conceal his tears failed ; and Mr. King, who went in the boat, told me that he wept all the time in going ashore.

It was no small satisfaction to reflect, that we had brought him safe back to the very spot from which he was taken. And yet, such is the strange nature of human affairs, that it is probable we left him in a less desirable situation than he was in before his connection with us. Omai, from being much caressed in England, lost sight of his original condition ; and never once considered in what way his acquisitions, either of knowledge or riches, would be esteemed by his countrymen, at his return ; which were the only things he could have to recommend him to them now, more than before, on which he could build his future greatness or happiness. Rank seems to be the very foundation of all distinction here, and, of its attendant, power ; and so pertinaciously, or rather blindly, adhered to, that, unless a person has some degree of it, he will certainly be despised and hated, if ever he assumes the appearance of exercising any authority. This was really the case, in some measure, with Omai ; though his countrymen were pretty cautious of expressing their sentiments while we remained amongst them. Had he made a proper use of the presents he brought with him from England, this, with the knowledge he had acquired by travelling so far, might have enabled him to form the most useful connections. We have already given instances of his childish inattention to this obvious means of advancing his interest. His schemes seemed to be of a higher, though ridiculous nature ; indeed, I may say meaner ; for revenge, rather than a desire of becoming great, ap-

peared to actuate him from the beginning. This, however, may be excused, if we consider it is common to his countrymen. His father was, doubtless, a man of considerable property in Ulitea, when that island was conquered by those of Bolabola; and, with many others, sought refuge in Huaheine, where he died, and left Omai, with some other children; who, by that means, became totally dependant. In this situation, he was taken up by Capt. Furneaux, and carried to England. Whether he really expected, from his treatment there, that any assistance would be given him against the enemies of his father and his country, or whether he imagined that his own personal courage, and superiority of knowledge, would be sufficient to dispossess the conquerors of Ulitea, is uncertain; but from the beginning of the voyage, this was his constant theme. He would not listen to our remonstrances on so wild a determination; but flew into a passion, if moderate and reasonable measures were proposed for his advantage. As we advanced, however, on our voyage, he became more sensible of his error; and by the time we reached the Friendly Islands, had even such apprehensions of his reception at home, that he would fain have staid behind at Tongataboo, under Feenou's protection. At these islands he squandered away much of his European treasure, very unnecessarily. At Matavai, he continued the same inconsistent behaviour, till I absolutely put a stop to his profusion.

Whether the remains of his European wealth, which, after all his improvident waste, was still considerable, will be more prodently administered by him, or whether the steps I took, as already explained, to insure him protection in Huaheine, shall have proved effectual, must be left to the decision of future navigators of this ocean; with whom it cannot but be a principal object of curiosity to trace the future fortunes of our traveller. Whatever faults belonged to Omai's character, they were more than over balanced by his great good nature and docile disposition. During the whole

time he was with me, I very seldom had reason to be displeased with his general conduct. His grateful heart always retained the highest sense of the favours he had received in England ; nor did he ever forget those who honoured him with their protection and friendship, during his stay there. He had a tolerable share of understanding, but wanted application and perseverance to exert it ; so that his knowledge of things was very general, and, in many instances, imperfect. He was not a man of much observation. There were many useful arts, as well as elegant amusements, amongst the people of the Friendly Islands, which he might have conveyed to his own ; where they probably would have been readily adopted, as being so much in their own way ; but I never found that he used the least endeavour to make himself master of any one. This kind of indifference is, indeed, the characteristic foible of his nation. We are not, therefore, to expect that Omai will be able to introduce many of our arts and customs amongst them, or much improve those to which they have been long habituated. I am confident, however, that he will endeavour to bring to perfection, the various fruits and vegetables we planted, which will be no small acquisition. But the greatest benefit these islands are likely to receive from Omai's travels, will be in the animals that have been left upon them ; which, probably, they never would have got, had he not come to England. When these multiply, of which I think there is little doubt, Otaheite, and the Society Islands, will equal, if not exceed, any place in the known world, for provisions.

Omai's return, and the substantial proofs he brought back with him of our liberality, encouraged many to offer themselves as volunteers to attend me to Pretane. I took every opportunity of expressing my determination to reject all such applications. If there had been the most distant probability of any ship being again sent to New Zealand, I would have brought the two youths of that country home with me ; as both of them were very desirous of continuing with us.

Tiarooa the eldest, was an exceedingly well disposed young man, with strong natural sense, and capable of receiving any instruction. He seemed to be fully sensible of the inferiority of his own country to these islands, and resigned himself, though perhaps with reluctance, to end his days in ease and plenty, in Huaheine. But the other was so strongly attached to us, that he was taken out of the ship, and carried ashore by force. He was a witty, smart boy; and, on that account, much noticed on board. But notwithstanding this, Omai, who was very ambitious of remaining the only great traveller, being afraid lest I might be prevailed upon to put others in a situation of rivalling him, frequently put me in mind that Lord Sandwich had told him no others of his countrymen were to come to England.

The boat which carried Omai ashore, never to join us again, having returned to the ship, we hoisted her in, and immediately stood over for Ulietea, where I intended to touch next. At ten o'clock at night, we brought to, till four the next morning, when he made sail round the south end of the island, for the harbour of Ohamaneno. We met with calms and light airs of wind, from different directions, by turns; so that, at noon, we were still a league from the entrance of the harbour. While we were thus detained, my old friend Oreo, chief of the island, with his son, and Pootoe, his son-in-law, came off to visit us. Being resolved to push for the harbour, I ordered all the boats to be hoisted out, and sent them a-head to tow, being assisted by a slight breeze from the southward. This breeze failed too soon, and being succeeded by one from the east, which blew right up the harbour, we were obliged to come to an anchor at its entrance at two o'clock, and to warp in, which employed us till night set in. As soon as we were within the harbour, the ships were surrounded with canoes filled with people, who brought hogs and fruit to barter with us for our commodities; so that wherever we went we found plenty.

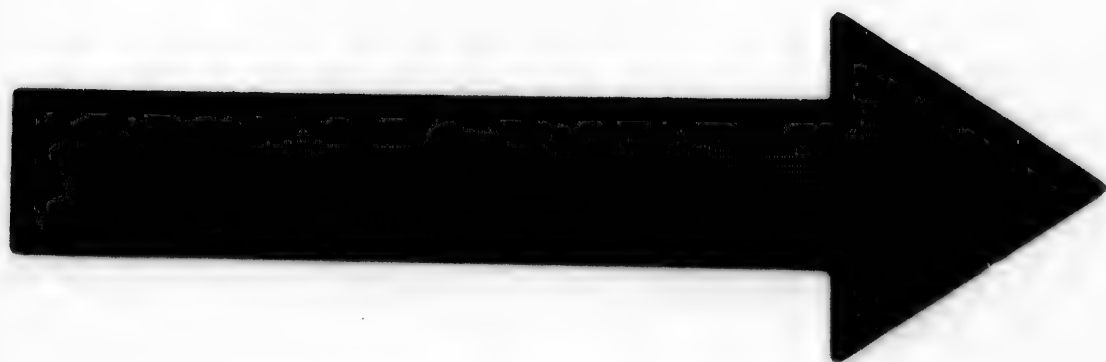
Next morning, being the 4th, I moored the ship's head and stern close to the north shore, at the head of the harbour; hauled up the cables on deck, and opened one of the ballast-ports. From this a slight stage was made to the land, being at the distance of about twenty feet, with a view to get clear of some of the rats that continued to infest us. The *Discovery* moored alongside the south shore for the same purpose. While this work was going forward, I returned Oreo's visit. The present I made him on the occasion, consisted of a linen gown, a shirt, a red feathered cap from Tongataboo, and other things of less value. I then brought him and some of his friends on board to dinner. On the 6th, we set up the observatories, and got the necessary instruments on shore.

Nothing worthy of note happened till the night between the 12th and 13th, when John Harrison, a marine, who was sentinel at the observatory, deserted; carrying with him his musket and accoutrements. Having in the morning got intelligence which way he had moved off, a party was sent after him; but they returned in the evening, after an ineffectual enquiry and search. The next day I applied to the chief to interest himself in this matter. He promised to send a party of his men after him, and gave me hopes that he should be brought back the same day. But this did not happen; and I had reason to suspect that no steps had been taken by him. We had at this time a great number of the natives about the ships, and some thefts were committed; the consequence of which being dreaded by them, very few visitors came near us the next morning. The chief himself joined in the alarm, and he and his whole family fled. I thought this a good opportunity to oblige them to deliver up the deserter; and having got intelligence that he was at a place called Hamoa, on the other side of the island, I went thither with two armed boats, accompanied by one of the natives; and, in our way, we found the chief, who also embarked with me. I landed about a mile and a half from the

place, with a few people, and marched briskly up to it, lest the sight of the boats should give the alarm, and allow the man time to escape to the mountains. But this precaution was unnecessary; for the natives there had got information of my coming, and were prepared to deliver him up.

I found Harrison, with his musket lying before him, sitting between two women, who, the moment I entered the house, rose up to plead in his behalf. As it was highly proper to discourage such proceedings, I frowned upon them, and bid them be gone. Upon this they burst into tears and walked off. Paha, the chief of the district, now came with a plantain tree, and a sucking pig, which he would have presented to me as a peace offering. I rejected it, and ordered him out of my sight; and having embarked with the deserter on board the first boat that arrived, returned to the ships. After this, harmony was again restored. The fellow had nothing to say in his defence, but that the natives had enticed him away; and this might in part be true, as it was certain that Paha, and also the two women above-mentioned, had been at the ship the day before he deserted. As it appeared that he remained on his post till within a few minutes of the time when he was to have been relieved, the punishment that I inflicted upon him was not very severe.

Though we had separated from Omai, we were still near enough to have intelligence of his proceedings; and I had desired to hear from him. Accordingly, about a fortnight after our arrival at Ulietea, he sent two of his people in a canoe, who brought me the satisfactory intelligence that he remained undisturbed by the people of the island, and that every thing went well with him, except that his goat had died in kidding. He accompanied this intelligence with a request, that I would send him another goat, and two axes. Being happy to have this additional opportunity of serving him, the messengers were sent back to Huaheine, on the 18th, with the axes, and two kids, male and female, which were spared out of the Discovery.



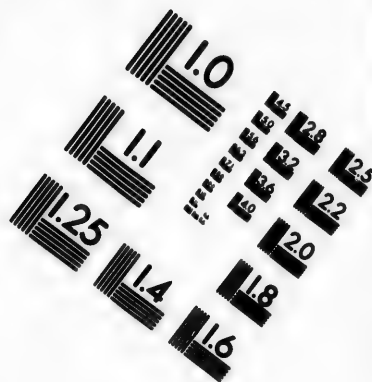
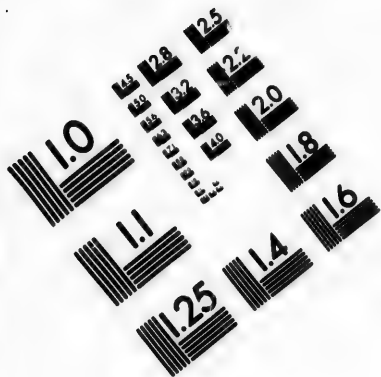
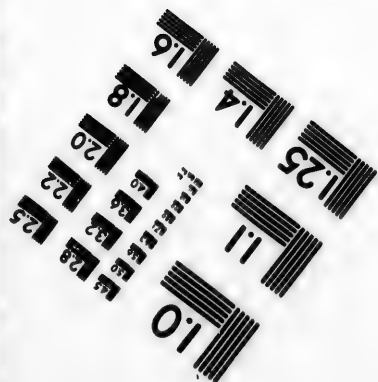
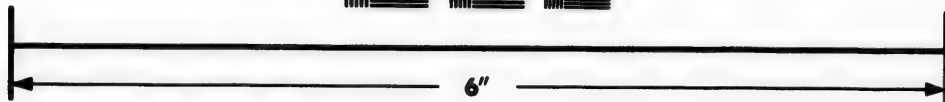
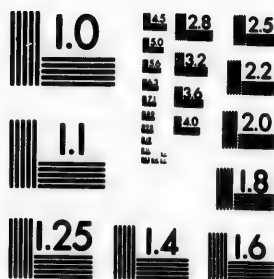


IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)



Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580
(716) 872-4503**

1.8 2.0 2.2 2.5 2.8 3.2 3.6 4.0 4.5 5.0 5.6 6.3 7.1 8.0 9.0 10.0 11.2 12.5 14.0 16.0 18.0 20.0 22.5 25.0 28.0 31.5 36.0 40.0 45.0 50.0 56.0 63.0 71.0 80.0 90.0 100.0

10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 70 71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 80 81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 90 91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 100

The next day I delivered to Capt. Clerke instructions how to proceed in case of being separated from me, after leaving these islands; and it may not be improper to give them a place here.

By Captain James Cook, Commander of his Majesty's Sloop the Resolution.

“Whereas the passage from the Society Islands, to the northern coast of America, is of considerable length, both in distance and in time, and as a part of it must be performed in the depth of winter, when gales of wind and bad weather must be expected, and may possibly occasion a separation, you are to take all imaginable care to prevent this. But if, notwithstanding all our endeavours to keep company, you should be separated from me, you are first to look for me where you last saw me. Not seeing me in five days, you are to proceed (as directed by the instructions of their lordships, a copy of which you have already received) for the coast of New Albion; endeavouring to fall in with it in the latitude of 45°. In that latitude, and at a convenient distance from land, you are to cruize for me ten days. Not seeing me in that time, you are to put into the first convenient port, in or to the north of that latitude, to recruit your wood and water, and to procure refreshments. During your stay in port, you are constantly to keep a good look-out for me. It will be necessary, therefore, to make choice of a station, situated as near the sea-coast as is possible, the better to enable you to see me, when I shall appear in the offing.

“If I do not join you before the 1st of next April, you are to put to sea, and proceed northward to the latitude of 56°; in which latitude, and at a convenient distance from the coast, never exceeding fifteen leagues, you are to cruize for me till the 10th of May. Not seeing me in that time, you are to proceed northward, and endeavour to find a passage into the Atlantic Ocean, through Hudson's or Baffin's

Bays, as directed by the above-mentioned instructions. But if you should fail in finding a passage through either of the said bays, or by any other way, as the season of the year may render it unsafe for you to remain in high latitudes, you are to repair to the harbour of St. Peter and St. Paul, in Kamtschatka, in order to refresh your people, and to pass the winter. But, nevertheless, if you find that you cannot procure the necessary refreshments at the said port, you are at liberty to go where you shall judge most proper; taking care, before you depart, to leave with the governor an account of your intended destination, to be delivered to me upon my arrival: and in the spring of the ensuing year, 1779, you are to repair back to the above-mentioned port, endeavouring to be there by the 10th of May or sooner. If, on your arrival, you receive no orders from, or account of me, so as to justify your pursuing any other measures than what are pointed out in the before-mentioned instructions, your future proceedings are to be governed by them. You are also to comply with such parts of the said instructions as have not been executed, and are not contrary to these orders. And in case of your inability, by sickness or otherwise, to carry these, and the instructions of their lordships into execution, you are to be careful to leave them with the next officer in command, who is hereby required to execute them in the best manner he can.

“ Given under my hand, on board the *Resolution*, at Ulietea, the 18th day of November, 1777.

J. COOK.”

“ *To Captain Charles Clerke.*”

While we lay moored to the shore we heeled and scrubbed both sides of the bottoms of the ships. At the same time we fixed some tin plates under the binds, first taking off the old sheathing, and putting in a piece unfilled, over which the plates were nailed. These plates I had from the ingenious Mr. Pelham, secretary to the commissioners for victualling his

majesty's navy, with a view of trying whether tin would answer the same end as copper, on the bottoms of ships.

On the 24th, in the morning, I was informed that a midshipman and a seaman, both belonging to the *Discovery*, were missing. Soon after we learnt from the natives that they went away in a canoe the preceding evening, and were, at this time, at the other end of the island. As the midshipman was known to have expressed a desire to remain at these islands, it seemed pretty certain that he and his companion had gone off with this intention; and Capt. Clerke set out in quest of them with two armed boats, and a party of marines. His expedition proved fruitless, for he returned in the evening, without having got any certain intelligence where they were. From the conduct of the natives, Capt. Clerke seemed to think that they intended to conceal the deserters; and, with that view, had amused him with false information the whole day, and directed him to search for them in places where they were not to be found. The captain judged right; for, the next morning, we were told that our runaways were at Otaha. As these two were not the only persons in the ships who wished to end their days at these favourite islands, in order to put a stop to any further desertion, it was necessary to get them back at all events; and, that the natives might be convinced that I was in earnest, I resolved to go after them myself, having observed, from repeated instances, that they seldom offered to deceive me with false information. Accordingly I set out the next morning, with two armed boats, being accompanied by the chief himself. I proceeded as he directed, without stopping any where, till we came to the middle of the east side of Otaha. There we put ashore, and *Oreo* dispatched a man before us, with orders to seize the deserters, and keep them till we should arrive with the boats. But when we got to the place where we expected to find them, we were told that they had quitted this island, and gone over to Bolabola the day before. I did not think

proper to follow them thither, but returned to the ships, fully determined, however, to have recourse to a measure which, I guessed, would oblige the natives to bring them back.

Soon after day break the chief, his son, daughter, and son-in-law, came on board the *Resolution*. The three last I resolved to detain, till the two deserters should be brought back. With this view, Captain Clerke invited them to go on board his ship; and, as soon as they arrived there, confined them in his cabin. The chief was with me when the news reached him. He immediately acquainted me with it, supposing that this step had been taken without my knowledge, and, consequently, without my approbation. I instantly undeceived him; and then he began to have apprehensions as to his own situation, and his looks expressed the utmost perturbation of mind. But I soon made him easy as to this, by telling him that he was at liberty to leave the ship whenever he pleased, and to take such measures as he should judge best calculated to get our two men back; that if he succeeded, his friends on board the *Discovery* should be delivered up, if not, that I was determined to carry them with me. I added, that his own conduct, as well as that of many of his people, in not only assisting these two men to escape, but in being, even at this very time, assiduous in enticing others to follow them, would justify any step I could take to put a stop to such proceedings. This explanation of the motives upon which I acted, and which we found mean to make Oreo and his people, who were present, fully comprehend, seemed to recover them, in a great measure, from that general consternation into which they were at first thrown. But, if relieved from apprehensions about their own safety, they continued under the deepest concern for those who were prisoners. Many of them went under the *Discovery's* stern in canoes, to bewail their captivity, which they did with long and loud exclamations. Poedooa! for so the chief's daughter was called, resounded from every quarter; and the women seemed to vie with each other in

mourning her fate with more significant expressions of their grief than tears and cries, for there were many bloody heads upon the occasion.

Oreo himself did not give way to unavailing lamentations, but instantly began his exertions to recover our deserters, by dispatching a canoe to Bolabola, with a message to Opoony, the sovereign of that island, acquainting him with what had happened, requesting him to seize the two fugitives, and send them back. The messenger, who was no less a man than the father of Pootoe, Oreo's son-in-law, before he set out came to receive my commands. I strictly enjoined him not to return without the deserters, and to tell Opoony, from me, that, if they had left Bolabola, he must send canoes to bring them back, for I suspected that they would not long remain in one place. The consequence, however, of the prisoners was so great, that the natives did not think proper to trust to the return of our people for their release; or, at least, their impatience was so great, that it hurried them to meditate an attempt which might have involved them in still greater distress, had it not been fortunately prevented. Between five and six o'clock in the evening I observed that all their canoes in and about the harbour began to move off, as if some sudden panic had seized them. I was ashore abreast of the ship at the time, and inquired in vain to find out the cause, till our people called to us from the *Discovery*, and told us, that a party of the natives had seized Capt. Clerke and Mr. Gore, who had walked out a little way from the ships. Struck with the boldness of this plan of retaliation, which seemed to counteract me so effectually in my own way, there was no time to deliberate. I instantly ordered the people to arm; and, in less than five minutes, a strong party, under the command of Mr. King, was sent to rescue our two gentlemen. At the same time, two armed boats, and a party under Mr. Williamson, went after the flying canoes, to cut off their retreat to the shore. These several detachments were hardly out of sight, before

an account arrived that we had been misinformed, upon which I sent and called them all in.

It was evident, however, from several corroborating circumstances, that the design of seizing Capt. Clerke had really been in agitation amongst the natives; nay, they made no secret in speaking of it the next day. But their first and great plan of operations was to have laid hold of me. It was my custom, every evening, to bathe in the fresh water. Very often I went alone, and always without arms. Expecting me to go as usual this evening, they had determined to seize me, and Capt. Clerke too, if he had accompanied me. But I had, after confining Oreo's family, thought it prudent to avoid putting myself in their power; and had cautioned Capt. Clerke and the officers not to go far from the ships. In the course of the afternoon the chief asked me three several times, if I would not go to the bathing-place, and when he found, at last, that I could not be prevailed upon, he went off with the rest of his people, in spite of all that I could do or say to stop him. But as I had no suspicion, at this time, of their design, I imagined that some sudden fright had seized them, which would, as usual, soon be over. Finding themselves disappointed as to me, they fixed on those who were more in their power. It was fortunate for all parties that they did not succeed, and not less fortunate that no mischief was done on the occasion; for not a musket was fired except two or three to stop the canoes. To that firing, perhaps, Messrs. Clerke and Gore owed their safety; * for, at that very instant, a party of the natives, armed with clubs, were advancing toward them, and, on hearing the report of the muskets, they dispersed. This conspiracy, as it may be called, was first discovered by a girl, whom one of the officers had brought from

* Perhaps they owed their safety principally to Capt. Clerke's walking with a pistol in his hand, which he once fired. This circumstance is omitted both in Capt. Cook's and Mr. Anderson's journal, but it is here mentioned on the authority of Capt. King.

Huaheine. She, overhearing some of the Ulieteans say, that they would seize Capt. Clerke and Mr. Gore, ran to acquaint the first of our people that she met with. Those who were charged with the execution of the design, threatened to kill her as soon as we should leave the island, for disappointing them. Being aware of this, we contrived that her friends should come, some days after, and take her out of the ship, to convey her to a place of safety, till they could have an opportunity of sending her back to Huaheine.

On the 27th, our observatories were taken down, and every thing we had ashore carried on board; the moorings of the ships were cast off, and we transported them a little way down the harbour, where they came to an anchor again. Toward the afternoon the natives began to shake off their fears, gathering round and on board the ships as usual, and the awkward transactions of the day before seemed to be forgotten on both sides. The following night the wind blew in hard squalls from south to east, attended with heavy showers of rain. In one of the squalls, the cable by which the Resolution was riding, parted just without the hawse. We had another anchor ready to let go, so that the ship was presently brought up again. In the afternoon the wind became moderate, and we hooked the end of the best small bower cable, and got it again into the hawse. Oreo, the chief, being uneasy, as well as myself, that no account had been received from Bolabola, set out this evening for that island, and desired me to follow him the next day with the ships. This was my intention, but the wind would not admit of our getting to sea. But the same wind which kept us in the harbour, brought Oreo back from Bolabola, with the two deserters. They had reached Otaha the same night they deserted; but, finding it impossible to get to any of the islands to the eastward (which was their intention), for want of wind, they had proceeded to Bolabola, and from thence to the small island Toobaee, where they were taken by the father of Pootoe, in consequence of the first message sent to

Opoony. As soon as they were on board, the three prisoners were released. Thus ended an affair which had given me much trouble and vexation. Nor would I have exerted myself so resolutely on the occasion, but for the reasons before mentioned, and to save the son of a brother officer from being lost to his country.

The wind continued constantly between the north and west, and confined us in the harbour till eight o'clock in the morning of the 7th of December, when we took the advantage of a light breeze which then sprung up at north-east, and, with the assistance of all the boats, got out to sea, with the *Discovery* in company. During the last week we had been visited by people from all parts of the island, who furnished us with a large stock of hogs and green plantains. So that the time we lay wind-bound in the harbour was not entirely lost; green plantains being an excellent substitute for bread, as they will keep good a fortnight or three weeks. Besides this supply of provisions, we also completed our wood and water.

The inhabitants of *Ulietea* seemed in general smaller and blacker than those of the other neighbouring islands, and appeared also less orderly, which, perhaps, may be considered as the consequence of their having become subject to *Bolabola*. *Oreo*, their chief, is only a sort of deputy of the sovereign of that island; and the conquest seems to have lessened the number of subordinate chiefs resident among them; so that they are less immediately under the inspection of those whose interest it is to enforce due obedience to authority. *Ulietea*, though now reduced to this humiliating state, was formerly, as we were told, the most eminent of this cluster of islands; and, probably, the first seat of government; for they say, that the present royal family of *Otaheite* is descended from that which reigned here before the late revolution. *Ooroo*, the dethroned monarch of *Ulietea*, was still alive when we were at *Huaheine*, where

he resides, a royal wanderer, furnishing, in his person, an instance of the instability of power ; but, what is more remarkable, of the respect paid by these people to particular families, and to the customs which have once conferred sovereignty, for they suffer Ooroo to preserve all the ensigns which they appropriate to majesty, though he has lost his dominions. We saw a similar instance of this while we were at Ulietea. One of the occasional visitors I now had was my old friend Oree, the late chief of Huaheine. He still preserved his consequence, came always at the head of a numerous body of attendants, and was always provided with such presents as were very acceptable. This chief looked much better now than I had ever seen him during either of my former voyages. I could account for his improving in health as he grew older, only from his drinking less copiously of the ava in his present station as a private gentleman, than he had been accustomed to do when he was regent.

As soon as we had got clear of the harbour, we took our leave of Ulietea, and steered for Bolabola. The chief, if not sole object had in view by visiting that island was, to procure from its monarch, Opoony, one of the anchors which Monsieur de Bougainville had lost at Otaheite. This having afterwards been taken up by the natives there, had, as they informed me, been sent by them as a present to that chief. My desire to get possession of it did not arise from our being in want of anchors ; but having expended all the hatchets, and other iron tools, which we had brought from England, in purchasing refreshments, we were now reduced to the necessity of creating a fresh assortment of trading articles, by fabricating them out of the spare iron we had on board ; and, in such conversions, and in the occasional uses of the ships, great part of that had been already expended. I thought that M. de Bougainville's anchor would supply our want of this useful material ; and I made

no doubt that I should be able to tempt Opoony to part with it.

Oreo, and six or eight men more from Ulietea, took a passage with us to Bolabola. Indeed most of the natives in general, except the chief himself, would have gladly taken a passage with us to England. At sunset, being the length of the south point of Bolabola, we shortened sail, and spent the night making short boards. At day-break, on the 8th, we made sail for the harbour, which is on the west side of the island. The wind was scant, so that we had to ply up, and it was nine o'clock before we got near enough to send away a boat to sound the entrance, for I had thoughts of running the ships in, and anchoring for a day or two. When the boat returned, the master, who was in her, reported, that though at the entrance of the harbour the bottom was rocky, there was good ground within, and the depth of water twenty-seven and twenty-five fathoms; and that there was room to run the ships in, the channel being one third of a mile broad. In consequence of this report, we attempted to work the ships in. But the tide, as well as the wind, being against us, after making two or three trips, I found that it could not be done till the tide should turn in our favour. Upon this I gave up the design of carrying the ships into the harbour; and having ordered the boats to be got ready, I embarked in one of them, accompanied by Oreo and his companions, and was rowed in for the island. We landed where the natives directed us, and soon after I was introduced to Opoony in the midst of a great concourse of people. Having no time to lose, as soon as the necessary formality of compliments was over, I asked the chief to give me the anchor, and produced the present I had prepared for him, consisting of a linen night-gown, a shirt, some gauze handkerchiefs, a looking-glass, some beads, and other toys, and six axes. At the sight of these last there was a general outcry. I could only guess the cause, by Opoony's absolutely refusing to receive my pre-

sent till I should get the anchor. He ordered three men to go and deliver it to me ; and, as I understood, I was to send by them what I thought proper in return. With these messengers we set out in our boat for an island, lying at the north side of the entrance into the harbour, where the anchor had been deposited. I found it to be neither so large nor so perfect as I expected. It had originally weighed seven hundred pounds, according to the mark that was upon it ; but the ring, with part of the shank and two palms were now wanting. I was no longer at a loss to guess the reason of Opoony's refusing my present. He doubtless thought that it so much exceeded the value of the anchor in its present state, that I should be displeased when I saw it. Be this as it may, I took the anchor as I found it, and sent him every article of the present that I at first intended. Having thus completed my negociation, I returned on board, and having hoisted in the boats, made sail from the island to the north.

While the boats were hoisting in, some of the natives came off in three or four canoes, to see the ship, as they said. They brought with them a few cocoa-nuts, and one pig, which was the only one we got at the island. I make no doubt, however, that if we had stayed till the next day, we should have been plentifully supplied with provisions ; but as we had already a very good stock, both of hogs and of fruit on board, and very little of any thing left to purchase more, I could have no inducement to defer, any longer, the prosecuting of our voyage,

The harbour of Bolabola, called Oteavanoa, situated on the west side of the island, is one of the most capacious that I ever met with ; and though we did not enter it, it was a satisfaction to me, that I had an opportunity of employing my people to ascertain its being a very proper place for the reception of ships. The high double-peaked mountain, which is in the middle of the island, appeared to be barren on the east side ; but on the west side, has trees or

bushes on its most craggy parts. The lower grounds, all round, towards the sea, are covered with cocoa palms and bread-fruit trees, like the other islands of this ocean ; and the many little islets that surrounded it on the inside of the reef, add both to the amount of its vegetable productions, and to the number of its inhabitants. But, still, when we consider its very small extent, being not more than eight leagues in compass, it is rather remarkable, that its people should have attempted, or have been able to achieve the conquest of Ulietea and Otaha, the former of which islands is, of itself, at least double its size. In each of my three voyages, we had heard much of the war that produced this great revolution. The result of our inquiries, as to the circumstances attending it, may amuse the reader ; and I give it as a specimen of the history of our friends, in this part of the world, as related to us by themselves.

Ulietea, and Otaha, which joins it, lived long in friendship, or, as the natives express it, were considered as two brothers, inseparable by any interested views. They also admitted the island of Huaheine as their friend, though not so intimate. Otaha, however, like a traitor, leagued with Bolabola, and they resolved jointly to attack Ulietea ; whose people called in their friends of Huaheine, to assist them against these two powers. The men of Bolabola were encouraged by a priestess, or rather prophetess, who foretold that they should be successful ; and, as a proof of the certainty of her prediction, she desired, that a man might be sent to the sea, at a particular place, where, from a great depth, a stone would ascend. He went, accordingly, in a canoe to the place mentioned ; and was going to dive to see where this stone lay, when, behold, it started up to the surface spontaneously into his hand ! The people were astonished at the sight ; the stone was deposited as sacred in the house of the Eatooa ; and is still preserved at Bolabola, as a proof of this woman's influence with the divinity. Their spirits being thus elevated with the hopes of victory, the

canoes of Bolabola set out to engage those of Ulietea and Huaheine, which being strongly fastened together with ropes, the encounter lasted long, and would probably, notwithstanding the prediction and the miracle, have ended in the overthrow of the Bolabola fleet, if that of Otal'a had not, in the critical moment, arrived. This turned the fortune of the day, and their enemies were defeated with great slaughter. The men of Bolabola, prosecuting their victory, invaded Huaheine two days after, which they knew must be weakly defended, as most of its warriors were absent. Accordingly, they made themselves masters of that island. But many of its fugitives having got to Otaheite, there told their lamentable story; which so grieved those of their countrymen, and of Ulietea, whom they met with in that island, that they obtained some assistance from them. They were equipped with only ten fighting canoes; but, though their force was so inconsiderable, they conducted the expedition with such prudence, that they landed at Huaheine at night, when dark, and, falling upon the Bolabola men by surprise, killed many of them, forcing the rest to fly. So that, by this means they got possession of their island again, which now remains independent, under the government of its own chiefs. Immediately after the defeat of the united fleets of Ulietea and Huaheine, a proposal was made to the Bolabola men by their allies of Otaha, to be admitted to an equal share of the conquests. The refusal of this broke the alliance; and, in the course of the war, Otaha itself, as well as Ulietea, was conquered; and both now remain subject to Bolabola, the chiefs who govern them being only deputies of Opoony, the sovereign of that island. In the reduction of the two islands, five battles were fought, at different places, in which great numbers were slain on both sides.

Such was the account we received. I have remarked, how very imperfectly these people recollect the exact dates of past events; and with regard to this war, though it happened not many years ago, we could only guess at the time

of its commencement and its conclusion, from collateral circumstances, furnished by our own observation, as the natives could not satisfy our inquiries with any precision. The final conquest of Ulietea, which closed the war, we know, had been made before I was there in the *Endeavour*, in 1769; but we may infer, that peace had not been very long restored, as we could then see the marks of recent hostilities having been committed upon that island. Some additional light may be thrown upon this inquiry, by attending to the age of Taireetareea, the present chief of Huaheine. His looks shewed that he was not above ten or twelve years old; and we were informed that his father had been killed in one of the battles. As to the time when the war began, we had no better rule for judging than this, that the young people of about twenty years of age, of whom we made enquiries, could scarcely remember the first battles; and I have already mentioned that Omai's countrymen, whom we found at Wateoo, knew nothing of the war; so that its commencement was subsequent to their voyage.

Ever since the conquest of Ulietea and Otaha, the Bolabola men have been considered by their neighbours as invincible; and such is the extent of their fame, that even at Otaheite, which is almost out of their reach, if they are not dreaded, they are, at least, respected for their valour. It is said that they never fly in battle, and that they always beat an equal number of the other islanders. But, besides these advantages, their neighbours seem to ascribe a great deal to the superiority of their god, who, they believed, detained us at Ulietea by contrary winds, as being unwilling that we should visit an island under his special protection. How high the Bolabola men are now in estimation at Otaheite, may be inferred from Monsieur de Bougainville's anchor having been conveyed to them. To the same cause we must ascribe the intention of transporting to their island the Spanish bull. And they already got possession of a third European curiosity, the male of another animal, brought to

Otaheite by the Spaniards. We had been much puzzled, by the imperfect description of the natives, to guess what this could be ; but Capt. Clerke's deserters, when brought back from Bolabola, told me, that the animal had been there shewn to them, and that it was a ram. It seldom happens but that some good arises out of evil, and if our two men had not deserted I should not have known this. In consequence of this information, at the same time I landed to meet Opoony, I carried ashore a ewe, which we had brought from the Cape of Good Hope ; and I hope that by this present I have laid the foundation for a breed of sheep at Bolabola. I also left at Ulietea, under the care of Oreo, an English boar and sow, and two goats. So that not only Otaheite, but all the neighbouring islands, will, in a few years, have their race of hogs considerably improved ; and, probably, be stocked with all the valuable animals which have been transported thither by their European visitors. When once this comes to pass, no part of the world will equal these islands in variety and abundance of refreshments for navigators. Indeed, even in their present state, I know no place that excels them. After repeated trials in the course of several voyages we find, when they are not disturbed by intestine broils, but live in amity with one another, which has been the case for some years past, that their productions are in the greatest plenty ; and, particularly, the most valuable of all the articles, their hogs.

If we had had a larger assortment of goods, and a sufficient quantity of salt on board, I make no doubt that we might have salted as much pork as would have served both ships near twelve months. But our visiting the Friendly Islands, and our long stay at Otaheite and the neighbourhood, quite exhausted our trading commodities, particularly our axes, with which alone, hogs, in general, were to be purchased. And we had hardly salt enough to cure fifteen puncheons of meat : of these, five were added to our stock of provisions at the Friendly Islands, and the other ten

at Otaheite. Capt. Clerke also salted a proportionable quantity for his ship. The process was the same that had been adopted by me in my last voyage; and it may be worth while to describe it. The hogs were killed in the evening; as soon as they were cleaned, they were cut up, the bone taken out, and the meat salted when it was hot. It was then laid in such a position as to permit the juices to drain from it, till the next morning, when it was again salted, packed into a cask, and covered with pickle. Here it remained four or five days, or a week; after which it was taken out and examined, piece by piece, and if there was any found to be in the least tainted, as sometimes happened, it was separated from the rest, which was repacked into another cask, headed up, and filled with good pickle. In about eight or ten days time it underwent a second examination; but this seemed unnecessary, as the whole was generally found to be perfectly cured. A mixture of bay and of white salt answers the best, but either of them will do alone. Great care should be taken that none of the large blood vessels remain in the meat; nor must too great a quantity be packed together, at the first salting, lest the pieces in the middle should heat, and, by that means, prevent the salt from penetrating them. This once happened to us, when we killed a larger quantity than usual. Rainy sultry weather is unfavourable for salting meat in tropical climates. Perhaps the frequent visits Europeans have lately made to these islanders, may be one great inducement to their keeping up a large stock of hogs, as they have had experience enough to know, that, whenever we come, they may be sure of getting from us what they esteem a valuable consideration for them. At Otaheite they expect the return of the Spaniards every day, and they will look for the English two or three years hence, not only there, but at the other islands. It is to no purpose to tell them that you will not return; they think you must; though not one of

them knows, or will give himself the trouble to inquire, the reason of your coming.

I own I cannot avoid expressing it as my real opinion, that it would have been far better for these poor people, never to have known our superiority in the accommodations and arts that make life comfortable, than, after once knowing it, to be again left and abandoned to their original incapacity of improvement. Indeed they cannot be restored to that happy mediocrity in which they lived before we discovered them, if the intercourse between us should be discontinued. It seems to me that it has become in a manner incumbent on the Europeans to visit them once in three or four years, in order to supply them with those conveniences we have introduced among them, and have given them a predilection for. The want of such occasional supplies will probably be felt very heavily by them, when it may be too late to go back to their old less perfect contrivances, which they now despise, and have discontinued since the introduction of ours. For by the time that the iron tools, of which they are now possessed, are worn out, they will have almost lost the knowledge of their own. A stone hatchet is, at present, as rare a thing amongst them as an iron one was eight years ago, and a chissel of bone or stone is not to be seen. Spike nails have supplied the place of these last, and they are weak enough to fancy that they have got an inexhaustible store of them; for these were not now at all sought after. Sometimes, however, nails much smaller than a spike would still be taken in exchange for fruit. Knives happened, at present, to be in great esteem at Ulietea, and axes and hatchets remained unrivalled by any other of our commodities at all the islands. With respect to articles of mere ornament, these people are as changeable as any of the polished nations of Europe; so that what pleases their fancy, while a fashion is in vogue, may be rejected, when another whim has supplanted it. But our iron tools are so strikingly useful, that they will, we may con-

fidently pronounce, continue to prize them highly; and be completely miserable, if, neither possessing the materials, nor trained up to the art of fabricating them, they should cease to receive supplies of what may now be considered as having become necessary to their comfortable existence.

Otaheite, though not comprehended in the number of what we have called the Society Islands, being inhabited by the same race of men, agreeing in the same leading features of character and manners, it was fortunate, that we happened to discover this principal island before the others; as the friendly and hospitable reception we there met with, of course, led us to make it the principal place of resort, in our successive visits to this part of the Pacific Ocean. By the frequency of this intercourse, we have had better opportunities of knowing something about it and its inhabitants, than about the other similar but less considerable islands in its vicinity. Of these, however, we have seen enough to satisfy us, that all that we observed and have related of Otaheite, may, with trifling variations, be applied to them.

After leaving Bolabola, I steered to the northward, close-hauled, with the wind between north-east and east; hardly ever having it to the southward of east, till after we had crossed the line, and had got into north latitudes. So that our course, made good, was always to the west of north, and, sometimes, no better than north-west.

Though seventeen months had now elapsed since our departure from England, during which, we had not, upon the whole, been unprofitably employed, I was sensible, that with regard to the principal object of my instructions, our voyage was, at this time, only beginning; and, therefore, my attention to every circumstance that might contribute toward our safety and our ultimate success, was now to be called forth anew. With this view I had examined into the state of our provisions at the last islands; and, as soon as I had left them, and got beyond the extent of my former dis-

coveries, I ordered a survey to be taken of all the boat-swain's and carpenter's stores that were in the ships, that I might be fully informed of the quantity, state, and condition of every article ; and, by that means, know how to use them to the greatest advantage.

Before I sailed from the Society Islands, I lost no opportunity of inquiring of the inhabitants, if there were any islands in a north or north-west direction from them ; but I did not find that they knew of any. In the night, between the 22nd and 23rd, we crossed the line in the longitude of $203^{\circ} 15'$ east. Here the variation of the compass was $6^{\circ} 30'$ east nearly. On the 24th, about half an hour after day-break, land was discovered bearing north-east by east half east. Upon a nearer approach, it was found to be one of those low islands so common in this ocean ; that is, a narrow bank of land inclosing the sea within. A few cocoa-nut trees were seen in two or three places ; but, in general, the land had a very barren appearance. At noon, it extended from north-east by east, to south by east half east, about four miles distant. The wind was at east-south-east ; so that we were under a necessity of making a few boards, to get up to the lee or west side ; where we found from forty to twenty and fourteen fathoms water, over a bottom of fine sand ; the least depth about half a mile from the breakers, and the greatest about one mile. The meeting with soundings determined me to anchor, with a view to try to get some turtles ; for the island seemed to be a likely place to meet with them, and to be without inhabitants. Accordingly we dropped anchor in thirty fathoms ; and then a boat was dispatched to examine whether it was practicable to land ; of which I had some doubt, as the sea broke in a dreadful surf all along the shore. When the boat returned, the officer, whom I had entrusted with this examination, reported to me that he could see no place where a boat could land ; but that there was great abundance of fish in the shoal water, without the breakers.

At day-break, the next morning, I sent two boats, one from each ship, to search more accurately for a landing-place; and, at the same time, two others to fish at a grappling near the shore. These last returned about eight o'clock, with upward of two hundred weight of fish. Encouraged by this success, they were dispatched again after breakfast; and I then went in another boat, to take a view of the coast and attempt landing; but this I found to be wholly impracticable. Toward noon, the two boats, sent on the same search, returned. The master, who was in that belonging to the *Resolution*, reported to me, that about a league and a half to the north, was a break in the land, and a channel into the lagoon, consequently, that there was a fit place for landing; and that he had found the same soundings off this entrance, as we had where we now lay. In consequence of this report the ships weighed anchor, and, after two or three trips, came to again in twenty fathoms water, over a bottom of fine dark sand, before a small island that lies at the entrance of the lagoon, and on each side of which there is a channel leading into it; but only fit for boats. The water in the lagoon itself is all very hallow.

On the 26th, in the morning, I ordered Capt. Clerke to send a boat, with an officer, to the south-east part of the lagoon, to look for turtles; and Mr. King and I went each in a boat to the north-east part. I intended to have gone to the most easterly extremity, but the wind blew too fresh to allow it, and obliged us to land more to leeward, on a sandy flat, where we caught one turtle; the only one that we saw in the lagoon. We walked, or rather waded, through the water to an island; where finding nothing but a few birds, I left it, and proceeded to the land that bounds the sea to the north-west, leaving Mr. King to observe the sun's meridian altitude. I found this land to be even more barren than the island I had been upon; but walking over to the sea-coast, I saw five turtles close to the

shore. One of these we caught, and the rest made their escape. Not seeing any more, I returned on board, as did Mr. King soon after, without having seen one turtle. We, however, did not despair of getting a supply ; for some of Capt. Clerke's officers, who had been ashore on the land to the southward of the channel leading into the lagoon, had been more fortunate, and caught several there.

In the morning of the 27th, the pinnace and cutter, under the command of Mr. King, were sent to the south-east part of the island, within the lagoon ; and the smaller cutter to the northward, where I had been the day before ; both parties being ordered upon the same service, to catch turtles. Capt. Clerke having had some of his people on shore all night, they had been so fortunate as to turn between forty and fifty on the sand, which were brought on board with all expedition this day. And in the afternoon, the party I had sent northward returned with six. They were sent back again, and remained there till we left the island ; having in general pretty good success.

On the 28th, I landed in company with Mr. Bayly, on the island which lies between the two channels into the lagoon, to prepare the telescopes for observing an approaching eclipse of the sun ; which was one great inducement to my anchoring here. About noon, Mr. King returned with one boat and eight turtles ; leaving seven behind to be brought by the other boat, whose people were employed in catching more ; and, in the evening, the same boat was sent with water and provisions for them. Mr. Williamson now went to superintend this duty in the room of Mr. King, who remained on board to attend the observation of the eclipse. The next day, Mr. Williamson dispatched the two boats back to the ship, laden with turtles. At the same time, he sent me a message, desiring that the boats might be ordered round by sea, as he had found a landing-place on the south-east side of the island, where most of the turtles were caught ; so that by sending the boats thither, the trouble

would be saved of carrying them over the land to the inside of the lagoon, as had been hitherto done. The boats were accordingly dispatched to the place which he pointed out.

On the morning of the 30th, the day when the eclipse was to happen, Mr. King, Mr. Bayly, and myself, went ashore on the small island above-mentioned, to attend the observation. The sky was over-cast till past nine o'clock, when the clouds about the sun dispersed long enough to take its altitude, to rectify the time by the watch we made use of. After this, it was again obscured till about thirty minutes past nine; and then we found that the eclipse had begun. We now fixed the micrometers to the telescopes, and observed or measured the uneclipsed part of the sun's disk. At these observations I continued about three-quarters of an hour before the end, when I left off; being, in fact unable to continue them any longer, on account of the great heat of the sun, increased by the reflection from the sand. The sun was clouded at times; but it was clear when the eclipse ended, the time of which was observed as follows:

By	{	Mr. Bayly	}	at	{	0 26 8	}	} Apparent Time, P. M.
	{	Mr. King	}		{	0 26 1	}	
	{	Myself	}		{	0 25 37	}	

Mr. Bayly and I observed with the large achromatic telescopes, and Mr. King with a reflector. As Mr. Bayly's telescope and mine were of the same magnifying power, I ought not to have differed so much from him as I did. Perhaps it was, in part, if not wholly, owing to a protuberance in the moon, which escaped my notice, but was seen by both the other gentlemen.

In the afternoon, the boats and turtling party, at the south-east part of the island, all returned on board, except a seaman belonging to the *Discovery*, who had been missing two days. There were two of them at first who had lost their way; but disagreeing about the most probable track to bring them back to their companions, they had separated; and one of them joined the party, after having been absent twenty-

four hours, and been in great distress. Not a drop of fresh water could be had, for there is none upon the whole island ; nor was there a single cocoa-nut tree on that part of it. In order to allay his thirst, he had recourse to the singular expedient of killing turtles, and drinking their blood. His mode of refreshing himself, when weary, of which he said he felt the good effects, was equally whimsical. He undressed himself, and lay down for some time in the shallow water upon the beach. It was a matter of surprise to every one, how these two men could contrive to lose themselves. The land over which they had to travel, from the sea-coast to the lagoon, where the boats lay, was not more than three miles across ; nor was there any thing to obstruct their view ; for the country was a flat, with a few shrubs scattered upon it ; and from many parts of it the masts of the vessels could easily be seen. But this was a rule of direction they never once thought of ; nor did they recollect in what quarter of the island the ships had anchored ; and they were as much at a loss how to get back to them, or to the party they had straggled from, as if they had just dropped from the clouds. Considering how strange a set of beings the generality of seamen are when on shore, instead of being surprised that these two men should thus lose their way, it is rather to be wondered at that no more of the party were missing. Indeed, one of those who landed with me, was in a similar situation ; but he had sagacity enough to know that the ships lay to leeward, and got on board almost as soon as it was discovered he had been left behind.

As soon as Capt. Clerke knew that one of the stragglers was still in this awkward situation, he sent a party in search of him ; but neither the man nor the party having come back, the next morning I ordered two boats into the lagoon, to go different ways, in prosecution of the search. Not long after Capt. Clerke's party returned with their lost companion ; and my boats having now no object left, I called them back by signal. This poor fellow must have suffered far greater

distress than the other straggler ; not only as having been lost a longer time, but as we found that he had been too squeamish to drink turtle's blood.

Having some cocoa-nuts and yams on board, in a state of vegetation, I ordered them to be planted on the little island where we had observed the eclipse, and some melon-seeds were sown in another place. I also left on the little island a bottle, containing the following inscription ;

Georgius Tertius, Rex, 31 Decembris, 1777.

Naves { Resolution, Jac. Cook, Pr.
Discovery, Car. Clerke, Pr.

On the 1st of January, 1778, I sent boats to bring on board all our parties from the land, and the turtles they had caught. Before this was completed it was late in the afternoon ; so that I did not think proper to sail till next morning. We got at this island, for both ships, about three hundred turtles, weighing, one with another, about ninety or a hundred pounds. They were all of the green kind ; and perhaps as good as any in the world. We also caught, with hook and line, as much fish as we could consume during our stay. The soil of this island, in some places, is light and black, evidently composed of decayed vegetables, the dung of birds, and sand. There are other places, again, where nothing but marine productions, such as broken coral stones and shells are to be seen. These are deposited in long narrow ridges, lying in a parallel direction with the sea coast, not unlike a ploughed field ; and must have been thrown up by the waves, though at this time they do not reach within a mile of these places. This seems to furnish an incontestible proof that the island has been produced by accessions from the sea, and is in a state of increase ; for not only the broken pieces of coral, but many of the shells, are too heavy and large to have been brought by any birds, from the beach to the places where they now lie. Not a drop of fresh water was any where found, though frequently dug for. We met with several ponds of salt water, which had no

visible communication with the sea, and must, therefore, in all probability, be filled by filtering through the sand at high tides. One of the lost men found some salt on the south-east part of the island. But though this was an article of which we were in want, a man who could lose himself, as he did, and not know whether he was travelling east, west, north, or south, was not to be depended upon as a fit guide to conduct us to the place. There were not the smallest traces of any human being having ever been here before us; and, indeed, should any one be so unfortunate as to be accidentally driven upon the island, or left there, it is hard to say, that he could be able to prolong existence. There is, indeed, abundance of birds and fish; but no visible means of allaying thirst, nor any vegetable that could supply the place of bread, or correct the bad effects of an animal diet; which, in all probability, would soon prove fatal alone. On the few cocoa-trees upon the island, the number of which did not exceed thirty, very little fruit was found; and, in general, what was found, was either not fully grown, or had the juice salt, or brackish. So that a ship touching here, must expect nothing but fish and turtles; and of these an abundant supply may be depended upon.

On some parts of the land were a few low trees; under which sat infinite numbers of a new species of tern, or egg-bird. These are black above and white below, with a white arch on the forehead, and are rather larger than the common noddy. Most of them had lately hatched their young, which lay under the old ones upon the bare ground. The rest had eggs; of which they only lay one, larger than that of a pigeon, bluish and speckled with black. There were also many common boobies; a sort that are almost like a gannet; and a sooty or chocolate-coloured one, with a white belly. To this list we may add men-of-war-birds; tropic-birds; curlews; sand-pipers; a small land-bird like a hedge-sparrow; land-crabs; small lizards; and rats.

As we kept our Christmas here, I called this discovery

Christmas Island. I judge it to be about fifteen or twenty leagues in circumference. It seemed to be of a semicircular form; or like the moon in the last quarter, the two horns being the north and south points; which bear from each other nearly north by east, and south by west, four or five leagues distant.

Christmas Island, like most others in this ocean, is bounded by a reef of coral-rocks, which extends but a little way from the shore. Farther out than this reef, on the west side, is a bank of fine sand, extending a mile into the sea. On this bank is good anchorage, in any depth between eighteen and thirty fathoms. In less than the first-mentioned depth, the reef would be too near; and in more than the last, the edge of the bank would not be at a sufficient distance. During the time we lay here, the wind blew constantly a fresh gale at east, or east by south, except one or two days. We had, always, a great swell from the northward, which broke upon the reef in a prodigious surf. We had found this swell before we came to the island; and it continued for some days after we left it.

On the 2nd of January, at day-break, we weighed anchor, and resumed our course to the north; having fine weather, and a gentle breeze at east, and east-south-east, till we got into the latitude of $7^{\circ} 45'$ north, and the longitude of 205° east, where we had one calm day. This was succeeded by a north-east by east, and east-north-east wind. At first it blew faint, but freshened as we advanced to the north. In the morning of the 18th, an island made its appearance, bearing north-east by east; and, soon after, we saw more land bearing north, and entirely detached from the former. Both had the appearance of being high land.

On the 19th, at sun rise, the island first seen, bore east, several leagues distant. This being directly to windward, which prevented our getting near it, I stood for the other, which we could reach; and, not long after, discovered a third island in the direction of west-north-west, as far distant

as land could be seen. We had now a fine breeze at east by north; and I steered for the east end of the second island; which, at noon, extended from north half east, to west-north-west a quarter west, the nearest part being about two leagues distant. At this time, we were in some doubt whether or no the land before us was inhabited; but this doubt was soon cleared up, by seeing some canoes coming off from the shore toward the ships. I immediately brought to, to give them time to join us. They had from three to six men each; and, on their approach, we were agreeably surprised to find that they spoke the language of Otaheite, and of the other islands we had lately visited. It required very little address to get them to come along-side; but no intreaties could prevail upon any of them to come on board. I tied some brass medals to a rope, and gave them to those in one of the canoes, who, in return, tied some small mack-erel to the rope as an equivalent. This was repeated; and some small nails, or bits of iron, which they valued more than any other article, were given them. For these they exchanged more fish and a sweet potatoe; a sure sign that they had some notion of bartering; or, at least, returning one present for another. They had nothing else in their canoes, except some large gourd shells, and a kind of fishing net; but one of them offered for sale the piece of stuff that he wore round his waist, after the manner of the other islands. These people were of a brown colour; and, though of the common size, were stoutly made. There was little difference in the casts of their colour, but a considerable variation in their features; some of their visages not being unlike those of Europeans. The hair of most of them was cropt pretty short; others had it flowing loose; and, with a few, it was tied in a bunch on the crown of the head. In all it seemed naturally black; but most of them had stained it, as is the practice of the Friendly Islanders, with some stuff which gave it a brown or burnt colour. In general they wore their beards. They had no ornaments about their per-

sons, nor did we observe that their ears were perforated ; but some were punctured on the hands or near the groin, though in a small degree ; and the bits of cloth which they wore, were curiously stained with red, black, and white colours. They seemed very mild, and had no arms of any kind, if we except some small stones, which they had evidently brought for their own defence ; and these they threw overboard when they found that they were not wanted.

Seeing no signs of an anchoring-place at this eastern extreme of the island, I bore away to leeward, and ranged along the south-east side, at a distance of half a league from the shore. As soon as we made sail the canoes left us ; but others came off as we proceeded along the coast, bringing with them roasting pigs, and some very fine potatoes, which they exchanged, as the others had done before, for whatever was offered to them. Several small pigs were purchased for a sixpenny nail ; so that we again found ourselves in a land of plenty ; and just at the time when the turtle, which we had so fortunately procured at Christmas Island, were nearly expended. We passed several villages ; some seated near the sea, and others farther up the country. The inhabitants of all of them crowded to the shore, and collected themselves on the elevated places to view the ships. The land upon this side of the island rises in a gentle slope, from the sea to the foot of the mountains, which occupy the centre of the country, except at one place near the east end, where they rise directly from the sea, and seemed to be formed of nothing but stone, or rocks lying in horizontal strata. We saw no wood but what was up in the interior part of the island, except a few trees about the villages ; near which, also, we could observe several plantations of plantains and sugar-canes, and spots that seemed cultivated for roots.

We continued to sound, without striking ground, with a line of fifty fathoms. Night put a stop to farther researches ; and we spent it standing off and on. The next

morning we stood in for the land, and were met by several canoes filled with people ; some of whom took courage and ventured on board. In the course of my several voyages I never before met with the natives of any place so much astonished, as these people were upon entering the ship. Their eyes were continually flying from object to object ; the wildness of their looks and gestures fully expressing their entire ignorance about every thing they saw, and strongly marking to us, that, till now, they had never been visited by Europeans, nor been acquainted with any of our commodities, except iron ; which, however, it was plain, they had only heard of, or had known it in some small quantity, brought to them at some distant period. They seemed only to understand that it was a substance, much better adapted to the purposes of cutting or of boring holes, than any thing their own country produced. They asked for it by the name of hamaite, probably referring to some instrument, in the making of which iron could be usefully employed ; for they applied that name to the blade of a knife, though we were certain that they had no idea of that particular instrument ; nor could they at all handle it properly. For the same reason they frequently called iron by the name of toe, which, in their language, signifies a hatchet, or rather a kind of adze. On asking them what iron was, they immediately answered " We do not know ; you know what it is, and we only understand it as toe, or hamaite." When we shewed them some beads, they asked first, " What they were ; and then whether they should eat them." But on their being told that they were to be hung in their ears, they returned them as useless. They were equally indifferent as to a looking glass, which was offered them, and returned it for the same reason ; but sufficiently expressed their desire for hamaite and toe, which they wished might be very large. Plates of earthen-ware, china-cups, and other such things, were so new to them, that they asked if they were made of wood ; but wished to have some,

that they might carry them to be looked at on shore. They were, in some respects, naturally well bred ; or at least fearful of giving offence, asking whether they should sit down, whether they might spit upon the deck, and the like. Some of them repeated a long prayer before they came on board ; and others afterwards sung and made motions with their hands, such as we had been accustomed to see in the dances of the islands we had lately visited. At first, on entering the ship, they endeavoured to steal every thing they came near ; or rather to take it openly, as what we either should not resent, or not hinder. We soon convinced them of their mistake ; and if they, after some time, became less active in appropriating to themselves whatever they took a fancy to, it was because they found that we kept a watchful eye over them.

At nine o'clock, being pretty near the shore, I sent three armed boats, under the command of Lieut. Williamson, to look for a landing-place, and for fresh water. I ordered him, that if he should find it necessary to land in search of the latter, not to suffer more than one man to go with him out of the boats. Just as they were putting off from the ship, one of the natives having stolen the butcher's cleaver, leaped overboard, got into his canoe, and hastened to the shore, the boats pursuing him in vain.

While the boats were occupied in examining the coast, we stood on and off with the ships, waiting for their return. About noon, Mr Williamson came back, and reported that he had seen a large pond behind a beach near one of the villages, which the natives told him contained fresh water ; and that there was anchoring-ground before it. He also reported that he had attempted to land in another place, but was prevented by the natives, who, coming down to the boats in great numbers, attempted to take away the oars, musquets, and, in short, every thing that they could lay hold of ; and pressed so thick upon him, that he was obliged to fire, by which one man was killed. But this unhappy cir-

cumstance I did not know till after we had left the island ; so that all my measures were directed as if nothing of the kind had happened. Mr. Williamson told me, that after the man fell, his countrymen took him up, carried him off, and then retired from the boat ; but still made signals for our people to land, which he declined. It did not appear to Mr. Williamson, that the natives had any design to kill, or even to hurt any of his party ; but they seemed excited by mere curiosity, to get from them what they had, being at the same time, ready to give in return, any thing of their own.

The ships being stationed between three and four o'clock, I went ashore with three armed boats, and twelve marines, to examine the water, and to try the disposition of the inhabitants, several hundreds of whom were assembled on a sandy beach before the village ; behind it was a narrow valley, the bottom of which was occupied by the piece of water. The very instant I leaped on shore, the natives all fell flat upon their faces, and remained in that humble posture, till, by expressive signs, I prevailed upon them to rise : they then brought a great many small pigs, which they presented to me, with plantain trees, using much the same ceremonies that we had seen practised on such occasions, at the Society and other islands ; and a long prayer being spoken by a single person, in which others of the assembly sometimes joined. I expressed my acceptance of their proffered friendship, by giving them, in return, such presents as I had brought with me from the ship for that purpose. When this introductory business was finished, I stationed a guard upon the beach, and got some of the natives to conduct me to the water, which proved to be very good, and in a proper situation for our purpose. It was so considerable, that it may be called a lake ; and it extended farther up the country than we could see. Having satisfied myself about this point, and about the peaceable disposition of the natives, I returned on board ; and then gave orders

that every thing should be in readiness for landing and filling our water-casks in the morning ; when I went ashore with the people employed in that service, having a party of marines with us for a guard, who were stationed on the beach. As soon as we landed, a trade was set on foot for hogs and potatoes, which the people of the island gave us in exchange for nails and pieces of iron, formed into something like chissels. We met with no obstruction in watering ; on the contrary, the natives assisted our men in rolling the casks to and from the pool ; and readily performed whatever we required. Every thing going on thus to my satisfaction, and considering my presence on the spot as unnecessary, I left the command to Mr. Williamson, who had landed with me, and made an excursion into the country, up the valley, accompanied by Mr. Anderson, and Mr. Webber ; the former of whom was well qualified to describe with the pen, as the latter was to represent with his pencil, every thing we might meet with worthy of observation. A numerous train of natives followed us ; and one of them, whom I had distinguished for his activity in keeping the rest in order, I made choice of as our guide. This man, from time to time, proclaimed our approach ; and every one, whom we met, fell prostrate on the ground, and remained in that position till we had passed. This, as I afterwards understood, is the mode of paying their respect to their own great chiefs. As we ranged down the coast from the east, in the ships, we had observed at every village one or more elevated white objects, like pyramids or rather obelisks ; and one of these, which I guessed to be at least fifty feet high, was very conspicuous from the ship's anchoring station, and seemed to be at no great distance up this valley. To have a nearer inspection of it, was the principal object of my walk. Our guide perfectly understood that we wished to be conducted to it. But it happened to be so placed, that we could not get at it, being separated from us by the pool of water. However, there being another of the same kind within our reach,

about half a mile off, upon our side of the valley, we set out to visit that. The moment we got to it, we saw that it stood in a burying-ground, or morai; the resemblance of which, in many respects, to those we were so well acquainted with at other islands in this ocean, and particularly Otaheite, could not but strike us; and we also soon found, that the several parts that compose it, were called by the same names. It was an oblong space, of considerable extent, surrounded by a wall of stone, about four feet high. The space inclosed was loosely paved with smaller stones; and at one end of it, stood what I call the pyramid, but, in the language of the island, is named henananoo; which appeared to be an exact model of the larger one, observed by us from the ships. It was about four feet square at the base, and about twenty feet high. The four sides were composed of small poles interwoven with twigs and branches, thus forming an indifferent wicker-work, hollow or open within, from bottom to top. It seemed to be rather in a ruinous state; but there were sufficient remaining marks, to shew that it had originally been covered with a thin light grey cloth; which these people, it should seem, consecrate to religious purposes; as we could see a good deal of it hanging in different parts of the morai, and some of it had been forced upon me when I first landed. On each side of the pyramid were long pieces of wicker-work, called hereanee, in the same ruinous condition; with two slender poles, inclining to each other, at one corner, where some plantains were laid upon a board, fixed at the height of five or six feet. This they called herairemy, and informed us, that the fruit was an offering to their god, which makes it agree exactly with the whatta of Otaheite. Before the henananoo were a few pieces of wood, carved into something like human figures, which, with a stone near two feet high, covered with pieces of cloth, called hoho, and consecrated to Tongarooa, who is the god of these people, still more and more reminded us of what we used to meet with in the morais of the islands we had lately left. Adjoin-

ing to these, on the outside of the morai, was a small shed, no bigger than a dog-kennel, which they called hareepa-hoo ; and before it was a grave, where, as we were told, the remains of a woman lay.

On the farther side of the area of the morai, stood a house or shed, about forty feet long, ten broad in the middle, each end being narrower, and about ten feet high. This, which, though much longer, was lower than their common dwelling places, we were informed, was called hemanaa. The entrance into it was at the middle of the side, which was in the morai. On the farther side of this house, opposite the entrance, stood two wooden images, cut out of one piece, with pedestals, in all about three feet high ; neither very indifferently designed or executed. These were said to be Eatooa no Veheina, representations of goddesses. On the head of one of them was a carved helmet, not unlike those worn by the ancient warriors ; and on that of the other, a cylindrical cap, resembling the head-dress at Otaheite, called tomou ; and both of them had pieces of cloth, tied about the loins, and hanging a considerable way down. At the side of each, was also a piece of carved wood, with bits of the cloth hung on them, in the same manner ; and between, or before, the pedestals, lay a quantity of fern, in a heap. It was obvious, that this had been deposited there, piece by piece, and at different times ; for there was of it, in all states, from what was quite decayed, to what was still fresh and green.

In the middle of the house, and before the two images, was an oblong space, inclosed by a low edging of stone, and covered with shreds of the cloth so often mentioned. This, on enquiry, we found was the grave of seven chiefs, whose names were enumerated, and the place was called Heneene. We had met already with so many striking instances of resemblance, between the burying-place we were now visiting, and those of the islands we had lately come from in the south pacific, that we had little doubts in our minds, that the re-

semblance existed also, in the ceremonies practised here, and particularly in the horrid one of offering human sacrifices. Our suspicions were too soon confirmed, by direct evidence. For, on coming out of the house, just on one side of the entrance, we saw a small square place, and another still less, near it; and on asking, what these were, our guide immediately informed us, that in the one was buried a man who had been sacrificed; and in the other, a hog, which had been made an offering to the divinity. At a little distance from these, near the middle of the morai, were three more of these square inclosed places, with two pieces of carved wood at each, and upon them a heap of fern. These, we were told, were the graves of three chiefs; and before them was an oblong, inclosed space, to which our conductor also gave the name of Tangata taboo; telling us so explicitly, that we could not mistake his meaning, that three human sacrifices had been buried there; that is, one at the funeral of each chief. It was with most sincere concern, that I could trace, on such undoubted evidence, the prevalence of these bloody rites, throughout this immense ocean, amongst people disjoined by such a distance, and even ignorant of each others existence, though so strongly marked as originally of the same nation. It was no small addition to this concern, to reflect, that every appearance led us to believe, that the barbarous practice was very general here. The island seemed to abound with such places of sacrifice as this which we were now visiting, and which appeared to be one of the most inconsiderable of them; being far less conspicuous than several others which we had seen, as we sailed along the coast, and particularly than that on the opposite side of the water, in this valley, the white henananoo, or pyramid, which, we were now almost sure, derived its colour only from pieces of the consecrated cloth laid over it.

After we had examined, very carefully, every thing that was to be seen about the morai, and Mr. Webber had taken drawings of it, and of the adjoining country, we re-

turned by a different rout. I found a great crowd assembled at the beach; and a brisk trade for pigs, fowls, and roots, going on there, with the greatest good order; though I did not observe any particular person, who took the lead amongst the rest of his countrymen. At noon, I went on board to dinner, and then sent Mr. King to command the party ashore. He was to have gone upon that service in the morning, but was then detained in the ship, to make lunar observations. In the afternoon I landed again, accompanied by Capt. Clerke, with a view to make another excursion up the country. But, before this could be put in execution, the day was too far spent; so that I laid aside my intention for the present, and it so happened that I had not another opportunity.

At sun-set, I brought every body on board; having procured, in the course of the day, nine tons of water; and, by exchanges, chiefly for nails and pieces of iron, about seventy or eighty pigs, a few fowls, a quantity of potatoes, and a few plantains, and taro roots. These people merited our best commendations, in this commercial intercourse, never once attempting to cheat us, either ashore, or alongside the ships. Some of them, indeed, as already mentioned, at first betrayed a thievish disposition; or rather, they thought, that they had a right to every thing they could lay their hands upon; but they soon laid aside a conduct, which, we convinced them, they could not persevere in with impunity.

Amongst the articles which they brought to barter this day, we could not help taking notice of a particular sort of cloak and cap, which, even in countries where dress is more particularly attended to, might be reckoned elegant. The first are nearly of the size and shape of the short cloaks worn by the women in England, and by the men in Spain, reaching to the middle of the back, and tied loosely before. The ground of them is a net-work, upon which the most beautiful red and yellow feathers are so closely fixed, that the surface might

be compared to the thickest and richest velvet, which they resemble, both as to the feel, and the glossy appearance. The manner of varying the mixture is very different ; some having triangular spaces of red and yellow, alternately ; others, a kind of crescent ; and some that were entirely red, had a broad yellow border, which made them appear, at some distance, exactly like a scarlet cloak edged with gold lace. The brilliant colours of the feathers, in those that happened to be new, added not a little to their fine appearance ; and we found, that they were in high estimation with their owners ; for they would not, at first, part with one of them for any thing that we offered, asking no less a price than a musket. However, some were afterwards purchased for very large nails. Such of them as were of the best sort, were scarce ; and it should seem, that they are only used on the occasion of some particular ceremony, or diversion ; for the people who had them, always made some gesticulations, which we had seen before used by those who sung.

The cap is made almost exactly like a helmet, with the middle part, or crest, sometimes of a hand's breadth ; and it sits very close upon the head, having notches to admit the ears. It is a frame of twigs and osiers, covered with a net work, into which are wrought feathers, in the same manner as upon the cloaks, though rather closer, and less diversified ; the greater part being red, with some black, yellow, or green stripes on the sides, following the curve direction of the crest. These, probably, complete the dress, with the cloaks ; for the natives, sometimes, appeared in both together.

In the night, and all the morning, on the 22d, it rained almost continually. The wind was at south-east, south-south-east, and south ; which brought in a short, chopping sea, and as there were breakers little more than two cables length from the stern of our ship, her situation was none of the safest. The surf broke so high against the shore, that we could not land in our boats ; but the day was not wholly

lost ; for the natives ventured in their canoes, to bring off to the ships, hogs and roots, which they bartered as before. One of our visitors, on this occasion, who offered some fish hooks to sale, was observed to have a very small parcel, tied to the string of one of them, which he separated with great care, and reserved for himself, when he parted with the hook. Being asked what it was, he pointed to his belly, and spoke something of its being dead ; at the same time saying, it was bad ; as if he did not wish to answer any more questions about it. On seeing him so anxious to conceal the contents of this parcel, he was requested to open it, which he did with great reluctance, and some difficulty, as it was wrapped up in many folds of cloth. We found that it contained a thin piece of human flesh, and that these people eat their enemies.

Several canoes came off in the morning, and followed us as we stood out to sea, bartering their roots and other articles. Being very averse to believe these people to be cannibals, notwithstanding the suspicious circumstance which had happened the day before, we took occasion now to make some more inquiries about this. A small wooden instrument, beset with sharks teeth, had been purchased ; and from its resemblance to the saw or knife used by the New Zealanders, to dissect the bodies of their enemies, it was suspected to have the same use here. One of the natives being asked about this, immediately gave the name of the instrument, and told us, that it was used to cut out the fleshy part of the belly, when any person was killed. This explained and confirmed the circumstance above-mentioned, of the person pointing to his belly. The man, however, from whom we now had this information, being asked, if his countrymen eat the part thus cut out, he denied it strongly, but, upon the question being repeated, shewed some degree of fear, and swam to his canoe. Just before he reached it, he made signs, as he had done before, expressive of the use of the instrument. And an old man, who sat foremost in the canoe,

being then asked whether they eat the flesh? answered in the affirmative, and laughed, seemingly at the simplicity of such a question. He affirmed the fact, on being asked again; and also said, it was excellent food, or, as he expressed it, "savoury eating."

At seven o'clock in the evening, the boats returned, with two tons of water, a few hogs, a quantity of plantains, and some roots. Mr. King informed me, that a great number of the inhabitants were at the watering or landing place. He supposed, that they had come from all parts of the island. They had brought with them a great many fine fat hogs, to barter; but my people had not commodities with them equal to the purchase. This, however, was no great loss; for we had already got on board, as many as we could well manage for immediate use, and, wanting the materials, we could not have salted them. Mr. King also told me, that a great deal of rain had fallen ashore, whereas, out at sea, we had only a few showers; and that the surf had run so high, that it was with great difficulty our men landed, and got back into the boats.

We had light airs and calms, by turns, with showers of rain, all night; and at day-break, in the morning of the 24th, we found, that the currents had carried the ship to the north-west and north; so that the west end of the island, upon which we had been, called Atooi, by the natives, bore east, one league distant; and another island, called, Oreehoua, west by south; and the high land of a third island, called Oneeheow, from south-west by west, to west south-west. On the 25th, we tacked and stood in for Atooi road, which bore about north from us; and, soon after, we were joined by the Discovery.

X

in
of
ed
x-

ith
nd
er
He
ad.
to
ual
we
ge
not
eal
ly
it
to

of
he
to
d,
re
e-
d,
h-
d,
we

X